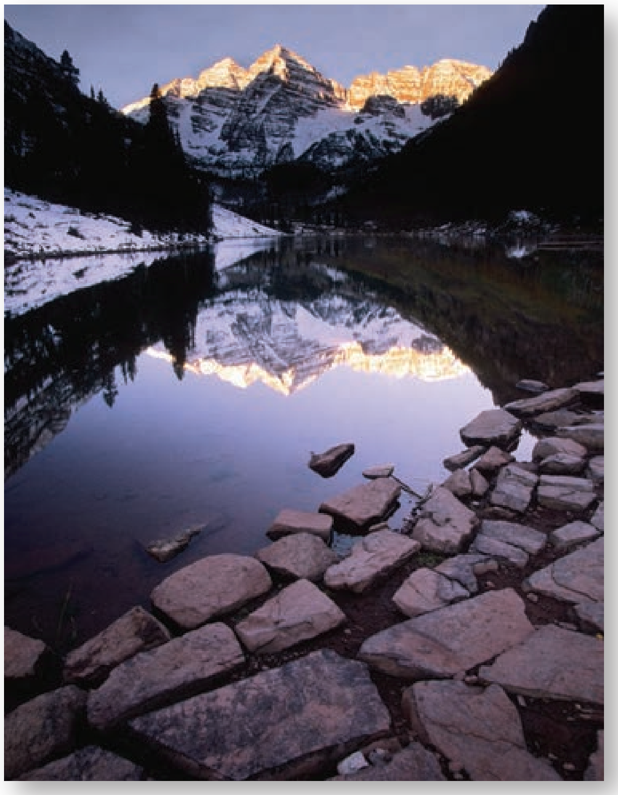
Amplify.

# Unit 6
# Geology

## Teacher Guide

GRADE 4 Core Knowledge Language Arts®

Core Knowledge®



# Unit 6
# Geology
## Teacher Guide

**GRADE 4**

Core Knowledge Language Arts®

Core Knowledge®

ISBN: 978-1-942010-01-2

Contents

# Geology

## Teacher Guide

# Introduction

## Unit 6: Geology

This introduction includes the necessary background information to teach the *Geology* unit. This unit contains 15 daily lessons, plus four Pausing Point days that may be used for differentiated instruction. You may choose to use all four days at the end of the unit, or you may use one day immediately after Lesson 7 and three days at the end of the unit. If you use one Pausing Point day after Lesson 7, you may administer Activity Page PP.1 to assess students' understanding of the content at this midpoint, or you may use the day to focus on writing, spelling, grammar, or morphology skills covered in Lessons 1–7. Each entire lesson will require a total of 90 minutes. Lesson 15 is devoted to a unit assessment. It is recommended that you spend no more than 19 days total on this unit.

Lessons and activities in this unit address various aspects of a comprehensive language arts curriculum aligned to the Common Core State Standards-English Language Arts (CCSS-ELA): reading, writing, spelling, grammar, and morphology. A chart indicating which lessons in the *Geology* unit address content from the Core Knowledge Sequence (Core Content Objectives) and the CCSS is located on the CKLA Teacher Resources website at CKLA.Amplify.com and also at CoreKnowledge.org/CKLA-files.

### Why the *Geology* Unit Is Important

The Big Idea of this unit is that the earth is composed of layers that, through heat and pressure, cause movements that result in geological features above and below the earth's surface. Tectonic plate theory explains how mountains, volcanoes, and trenches are created on land and under the sea. Information about the rock cycle, weathering, and erosion also explains how the earth is continually changing. This unit explores the relationships between these different geological processes and how they affect the landscape and related environments of the earth.

### Core Content Objectives Addressed in Core Knowledge Language Arts During Previous Grades

Students who have received Core Knowledge Language Arts (CKLA) instruction in Grades K–3 will already have pertinent background knowledge for this unit. These students may have gained relevant background knowledge during the following domains:

- *Taking Care of the Earth* (Grade K)
- *Astronomy* (Grade 1)
- *The History of the Earth* (Grade 1)
    - Identify geographical features of the earth's surface: oceans and continents

### Note

To prepare for this unit, read this entire introduction, preview the unit and content assessments, and preview the Teacher Resources section of this Teacher Guide. You may wish to collect assessment Activity Pages 15.2, PP.1, and PP.2 from students before beginning the unit.

**Note**

Students who received instruction in *The History of the Earth* in Grade 1 will build upon this knowledge in this unit.

- Explain that much of our knowledge of the earth and its history is the result of the work of many scientists
- Identify and describe the layers of the earth: crust, mantle, and core (outer and inner)
- Describe volcanoes and geysers
- Describe how heat, pressure, and time cause many changes inside the earth
- Identify the three types of rocks: igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic
- Describe how heat, pressure, and time cause the formation of igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic rocks
- Define the terms *geology* and *geologist*

• *Cycles in Nature* (Grade 2)

## Overview

The following is an overview of the unit schedule. The Teacher Guide uses the following color-coding: purple for reading lessons; red for grammar, morphology, and spelling lessons; and green for writing lessons.

| Lesson 1 | Lesson 2 | Lesson 3 | Lesson 4 | Lesson 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Core Connections** 45 min.<br>Review Prior Knowledge | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Whole Group: Chapter 2 "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates"<br>Word Work: *Crust* | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Close Reading: Chapter 2 "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates"<br>Word Work: *Exert* | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Whole Group: Chapter 3 "Earth's Shakes and Quakes"<br>Word Work: *Fault* | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Small Group: Chapter 3 "Earth's Shakes and Quakes"<br>Word Work: *Trigger* |
| **Reading** 45 min.<br>Read-Aloud: Chapter 1 "Earth's Changing Surface"<br>Word Work: *Dense* | **Grammar** 15 min.<br>Introduce Commas<br>**Morphology** 15 min.<br>Introduce Suffix *–ly*<br>**Writing** 15 min.<br>Examine Similes | **Writing** 45 min.<br>Explain a Simile | **Grammar** 15 min.<br>Practice Commas<br>**Morphology** 15 min.<br>Practice Suffix *–ly*<br>**Writing** 15 min.<br>Introduce an Informational Pamphlet | **Writing** 45 min.<br>Draft an Informational Pamphlet |

| Lesson 6 | Lesson 7 | Lesson 8 | Lesson 9 | Lesson 10 |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Reading** 45 min.<br>Whole Group: Chapter 4 "Earth's Fiery Volcanoes"<br>Word Work: *Fine* | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Read-Aloud: Chapter 5 "Mythic Volcano Spirits"<br>Word Work: *Lofty* | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Small Group: Chapter 6 "Earth's Building Blocks"<br>Word Work: *Class* | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Close Reading: Chapter 6 "Earth's Building Blocks"<br>Word Work: *Compact* | **Spelling** 15 min.<br>Assessment |
| **Grammar** 15 min.<br>Introduce Commas and Quotation Marks | **Writing** 45 min.<br>Introduce a Wiki Entry | **Writing** 45 min.<br>Draft a Wiki Entry | **Grammar** 15 min.<br>Practice Commas and Quotation Marks | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Whole Group: Chapter 7 "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change"<br>Word Work: *State* |
| **Morphology** 15 min.<br>Introduce Root *rupt* | | | **Morphology** 15 min.<br>Practice Root *rupt* | **Writing** 30 min.<br>Revise and Edit a Wiki Entry |
| **Spelling** 15 min.<br>Introduce Spelling Words | | | **Spelling** 15 min.<br>Practice Spelling Words | |

| Lesson 11 | Lesson 12 | Lesson 13 | Lesson 14 | Lesson 15 |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Reading** 45 min.<br>Close Reading: Chapter 7 "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change"<br>Word Work: *Deposit* | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Small Group: Chapter 8 "Earth's Mighty Mountains"<br>Word Work: *Sheer* | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Read-Aloud: Chapter 9 "Earth's Undersea World"<br>Word Work: *Expedition* | **Reading** 45 min.<br>Partner: Chapter 9 "Earth's Undersea World"<br>Word Work: *Firsthand* | **Spelling** 15 min.<br>Assessment |
| **Grammar** 15 min.<br>Introduce Sequencing Multiple Adjectives | **Writing** 45 min.<br>Plan a Descriptive Paragraph | **Writing** 45 min.<br>Draft a Descriptive Paragraph | **Grammar** 15 min.<br>Practice Sequencing Multiple Adjectives | **Unit Assessment**<br>75 min. |
| **Morphology** 15 min.<br>Review Suffixes *–ly* and *–y* and Roots *graph* and *rupt* | | | **Morphology** 15 min.<br>Practice Suffixes *–ly* and *–y* and Roots *graph* and *rupt* | |
| **Spelling** 15 min.<br>Introduce Spelling Words | | | **Spelling** 15 min.<br>Practice Spelling Words | |

| Pausing Point Day 1 | Pausing Point Day 2 | Pausing Point Day 3 | Pausing Point Day 4 |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Content Assessment/ Pausing Point**<br>90 min. | **Pausing Point**<br>90 min. | **Pausing Point**<br>90 min. | **Pausing Point**<br>90 min. |

## Core Connections

During the Core Connections lesson in Lesson 1, students will review information about areas of study that examine the earth in different ways, including geology, archaeology, geography, and ecology. Students will examine and ask questions that scientists working in these areas of study might ask. Students will identify the seven continents and other geographical concepts, discuss the term *habitat*, and discuss how fossils and artifacts from ancient civilizations provide information about the current world. Students will discuss how these scientific areas of study relate to geology. Then, students will examine images of geological features to think about what questions scientists studying geology might ask.

## Reading

### *Reader*

The Reader for this unit, *The Changing Earth*, includes complex text and prepares students in Grade 4 for the increased vocabulary and syntax demands aligned texts will present in later grades. *The Changing Earth* focuses on the composition of the earth and the forces that change Earth's surface. Students will learn about the theory of plate tectonics and how it explains the presence of volcanoes, mountains, underwater trenches, ridges, and other geological features. Students will also study geological processes like rock formation, weathering, and erosion in order to understand how the earth changes over time and why it looks the way it does.

The Reader also includes three selections that may be used for enrichment. Although the Teacher Guide does not include lessons for these enrichment selections, the Activity Book includes activity pages students may complete independently. Please use these selections at your discretion, considering students' needs and the time available in your school day.

There are some bolded words in the glossary that are not addressed in the reading lessons. These words are still important for students to reference as they read this Reader. These words have an asterisk (*) next to them in the glossary.

### *Pronunciation Guide*

For your reference, the Teacher Resources section includes a pronunciation guide for unique content-related words found in *The Changing Earth*. You will also find pronunciations listed by chapter in the reading lessons and on activity pages.

## Writing

In the writing lessons, students will review the stages of the writing process and engage in several short writing projects. In this unit, students will examine and explain similes; draft an informational pamphlet about tsunamis; write a wiki entry about a specific volcano; and create a descriptive paragraph about a type of rock or item in the rock cycle, incorporating literary devices they have encountered in previous Grade 4 units, such as alliteration, personification, and simile.

## Grammar

In this unit, students will learn how to use commas correctly in dates, addresses, city and state, and items in a series. They will also practice using quotation marks and commas when copying information verbatim from a source and when writing dialogue. In addition, they will identify types of adjectives and learn how to correctly sequence multiple adjectives in a sentence.

## Spelling

During this unit's spelling lessons, students will practice spelling words related to the content of the Reader as well as words related to morphology features that have been taught. Each set of spelling words will consist of between 10 and 12 words. Although the words do not follow specific spelling patterns, you may detect certain gaps or misunderstandings in students' knowledge of the CKLA code through careful analysis of their spelling errors.

## Morphology

In this unit, students will learn and review the common suffixes *–ly* and *–y*. Students will also learn and review the Latin roots *graph* and *rupt*. Oral and written activities present opportunities to apply morphology skills.

## Fluency

Helping students achieve automaticity and fluency to improve reading comprehension is an important goal in CKLA Grade 4. The optional *Fluency Supplement*, consisting of poetry, folklore, fables, and other selections, is provided online at CoreKnowledge.org/CKLA-files and at CKLA.Amplify.com. These selections provide additional opportunities for students to practice reading with fluency and expression (prosody). You may choose and use the selections at your discretion in any order. For more information about using the *Fluency Supplement*, see the Unit 1 Teacher Guide introduction.

## Assessment

Each unit includes a variety of assessment tools, including formal and informal assessments, formative and summative assessments, and progress-monitoring assessments targeting specific skills. Each unit concludes with a multipart unit assessment that assesses content knowledge (informational units only), reading comprehension, grammar, morphology, and fluency (optional). The grammar and morphology portions of the assessment address grammar and morphology skills taught throughout the unit. Specifically, the grammar portion of the unit assessment for *Geology* addresses commas, quotation marks, and sequencing multiple adjectives. The morphology portion addresses the suffixes *–ly* and *–y* as well as the roots *graph* and *rupt*. Assessment of the content knowledge students acquired by reading *The Changing Earth* is administered after Lesson 7 (optional) and as part of the Pausing Point days.

## Teacher Resources

At the back of this Teacher Guide, you will find a section titled "Teacher Resources." This section contains materials needed for instruction of this unit. Additional teacher resources for the entire year can be found in the Teacher Resources section of the Unit 1 Teacher Guide.

## Digital Components

In the Advance Preparation section of each lesson, you will be instructed to create various posters, charts, or graphic organizers for use during the lesson. Many of these items, along with other images such as maps or diagrams, are also available as digital components at CoreKnowledge.org/CKLA-files and at CKLA.Amplify.com.

## Recommended Resources

You should consider various times throughout the day when you might infuse the curriculum with authentic domain-related literature. If you are able to do so, you may recommend students select books from the Recommended Resources list. In addition, if you recommend that families read aloud with their child each night, you may wish to suggest that they choose titles from this list to reinforce the concepts covered in this unit.

You might also consider creating a classroom lending library, allowing students to borrow domain-related books to read at home with their families. The Recommended Resources list, which also includes online resources, can be found online in the digital components for this unit at CoreKnowledge.org/CKLA-files and at CKLA. Amplify.com.

# Lesson 1

## Unit 6: Geology

### CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Define *geology* as the study of the makeup of the earth and the processes that shape and change it
- ✓ Describe observations scientists made that provide evidence of changes on Earth's surface
- ✓ Explain the continental drift hypothesis, including the existence of Pangaea

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Core Connections** | | |
| Review Prior Knowledge | 45 min. | Area of Study Cards; Activity Page 1.1; Earth Image Card; web graphic organizer; Geology Image Cards |
| **Reading** | | |
| Read-Aloud: Chapter 1 "Earth's Changing Surface" | 40 min. | *The Changing Earth*; Activity Pages 1.2–1.5; Evidence Collector's Chart; scissors; glue |
| Word Work: *Dense* | 5 min. | |
| **Take-Home Material** | | |
| Reading | * | Activity Pages 1.5, 1.6; *Fluency Supplement* selection (optional) |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Core Connections**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to identify different areas of study about the earth and ask the types of questions geologists ask about the earth.

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to describe how people's knowledge of what was happening on Earth's surface has changed over time.

#### *Academic Vocabulary*

Academic vocabulary words support reading comprehension and may appear across a variety of materials, in language arts and in content areas. Understanding academic vocabulary may contribute to improved performance on assignments and assessments, as these words appear often in directions. Where applicable, general academic words are used throughout the unit, as they refer to all subjects—reading, writing, grammar, morphology, and spelling. They may appear in directions, assessments, spelling lists, activity pages, and discussion questions, among other places.

These words are underlined in lessons wherever they are included. You may wish to define these words and use them intentionally throughout the unit so students hear them used in multiple ways; it is not necessary to teach the words ahead of time.

Following the word list is a chart of applicable Spanish cognates. Providing Spanish cognates may support Spanish-speaking students in comprehending the words in English.

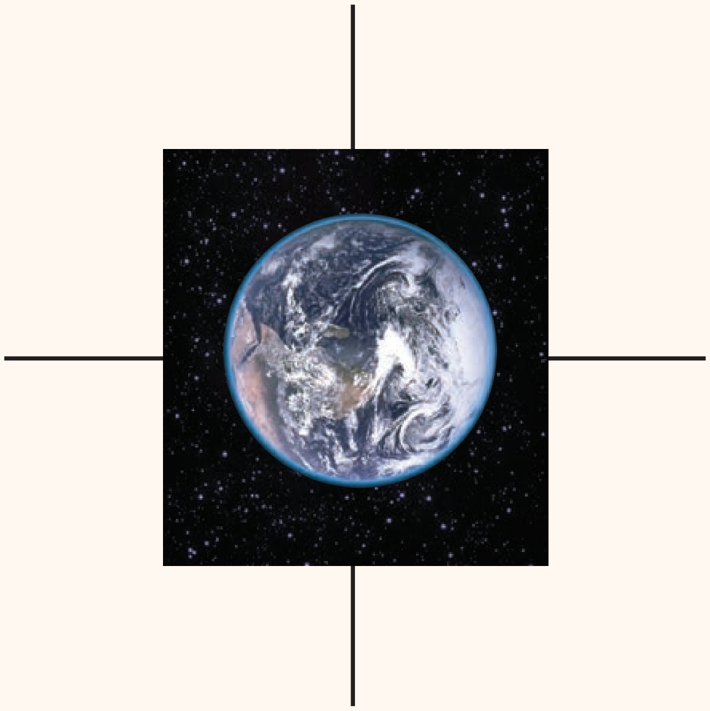
1. **analyze**, ***v.*** to closely study and think about information or ideas in order to better understand and explain them
2. **apply**, ***v.*** **1.** to put to use; **2.** to relate to
3. **cause**, **1.** ***n.*** something that produces a result or effect; **2.** ***v.*** to make something happen
4. **distinguish**, ***v.*** to recognize or identify a difference between two or more things
5. **effect**, ***n.*** a result; a change produced by a cause or something that happens
6. **evidence**, ***n.*** proof; information and facts that are helpful in forming a conclusion or supporting an idea
7. **observe**, ***v.*** to watch something with careful attention
8. **process**, ***n.*** a series of actions or steps that happen in a particular order
9. **review**, ***v.*** to look over something carefully or look over something again

| **Spanish Cognates for Academic Vocabulary in *Geology*** | |
|---|---|
| analizar | efecto |
| causa | evidencia |
| distinguir | observar |

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

### *Core Connections*

- Prepare one copy of each of the four Area of Study Cards found in Teacher Resources. Alternatively, you may access digital versions in the digital components for this unit.
- Prepare one copy of the Earth Image Card found in Teacher Resources. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit.
- Prepare and display a web graphic organizer on the board/chart paper. It should have a central circle large enough in which to place the Earth Image Card. Draw four lines out from this circle. One Area of Study Card will be placed at the end of each line.



- Prepare one copy of each of the four Geology Image Cards to display. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit.
- Prepare to group students into three groups.

*Reading*

- This lesson contains a *Think Pair Share* activity. *Think Pair Share* activities encourage student participation in class discussions by having them think through their answers to questions, rehearse their responses silently and through discussion with a peer, and share their responses aloud with the class. It is recommended that you model the *Think Pair Share* process with another adult (or a student with strong language skills) the first time you use it, and continue to scaffold students to use the process successfully throughout the year. In *Think Pair Share* activities, you will begin by asking students to listen to the question you pose. You will then allow students some time to think about the question and their response. Next, you will prompt students to discuss their responses in pairs. Finally, you will select several students to share their responses with the class.
- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

> Listen and read to learn how people's observations over time led to our modern understanding of what the earth is made of and how it has changed.

- Prepare and display an Evidence Collector's Chart on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit. This chart will be on display throughout the unit. Students will use Activity Page 1.3, which matches this chart.

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| | At some point, Pangaea broke apart and the pieces slowly moved apart over a long period of time. | | |
| | Tectonic plates move very slowly due to the heat and pressure in Earth's mantle. | | |
| | Material in the mantle moves beneath stuck rocks at a fault, causing pressure to build over time and then suddenly release as the rocks break and slip past each other, shaking the ground. | | |
| | Tremendous pressure and heat in the mantle force magma in a chamber below Earth's crust to move upward through a crack in Earth's surface. | | |
| | Rocks are created, destroyed, and recreated in a continuous cycle. | | |
| | Over time, weathering breaks rocks into smaller pieces and erosion moves these pieces to new locations. | | |
| | Tectonic plates subduct underneath one another and move up and down against each other, and magma pushes up into the crust. | | |
| | Tectonic plates interact to create seafloor spreading and underwater subduction zones. | | |

### *Fluency (optional)*

- Choose and make sufficient copies of a text selection from the online *Fluency Supplement* to distribute and review with students for additional fluency practice. If you choose to do a fluency assessment, you will assess students in Lesson 5. See the Unit 1 Teacher Guide introduction for more information on using the *Fluency Supplement*.

## CORE CONNECTIONS 45 minutes

### Review Prior Knowledge

*Introduce Areas of Study about Earth* 5 minutes

- Tell students they will begin a unit called *Geology*, and the Reader for this unit is called *The Changing Earth*. Point out that the Reader title provides a hint as to what they will be studying in this unit (i.e., how the earth changes). Explain that before reading the first chapter of the Reader, you will discuss some things they may already know about the earth that will help them understand what they will learn about in this unit.
- *Think Pair Share* Share two things with a neighbor that you know about the earth. If you aren't sure if the information you want to share is correct, talk about your ideas with your partner.
- Tell students there are many ways to study and learn different kinds of information about the earth. Explain that the following examples are areas of study about the earth that students likely have encountered in other CKLA units:
  - Geography: the study of the characteristics of the earth's surface
  - Ecology: the study of relationships between living things and their environment
  - Archaeology: the study of past human life and activities by examining bones, tools, and other objects left behind

*Examine Questions about Areas of Study* 30 minutes

- Have students turn to Activity Page 1.1. Explain that the list contains questions related to the different areas of study you just introduced. These are questions that someone studying topics in a particular area might ask. Some of the questions relate to geography, some relate to archaeology, and some relate to ecology. Ask a student to read the first question, *What are Earth's seven continents?* Explain this is a question someone studying geography might ask.
  - You may wish to provide students with the answer to the question: Asia, North America, South America, Africa, Europe, Australia, and Antarctica.
- Ask a student to read the second question, *What clues do the ruins of ancient buildings provide about the ancient Roman civilization?*
- Guide students in discussing what area a person asking this question might study, pointing out that ruins of ancient buildings are the remains of buildings built by humans long ago. Explain that this is a question that someone studying archaeology might ask.
  - You may wish to provide students with the answer to the question. Possible answers may include that ruins might suggest the purpose of the building or how it was used—as a dwelling, a place of worship, for protection, etc.

### Materials

- Area of Study Cards
- Activity Page 1.1
- Earth Image Card
- web graphic organizer
- Geology Image Cards

### Note

The previous Grade 4 units of *The Middle Ages* and *Islamic Empires* included information and activities about geography. The final unit/domain in Grade 3 focused on ecology.

- Ask a student to read the next question, *What is the name for the place where an animal or plant normally lives and grows?*
- Ask students to discuss what area a person asking this question might study. Guide students to understand that this question relates to ecology; it is about where an animal or plant lives. A habitat is the place where an animal or plant normally lives and grows.
- Explain that some information in the questions may be familiar and some information may be new. Explain that all students will be able to use the information provided to participate in the activity.
- Tell students they will work in groups to determine which questions from the list on Activity Page 1.1 relate to a particular area of study about the earth. Each group will receive a card with an area of study listed, its definition, and a related image. Group members will write the questions they decide are related to their area of study on the card. Then, as a class, students will discuss each area of study and related questions, offering explanations and justifications for their question choices.

  **Support** Before students begin working in small groups, read through the remaining questions on Activity Page 1.1.

- Divide students into three groups. Provide each group with an Area of Study Card. Select one student in each group to be the recorder, who will write the chosen questions on the card.
- Direct each group to examine its Area of Study Card and discuss the questions from the list on Activity Page 1.1 to determine which apply to the area of study on the card. Remind the recorder for each group to write the questions chosen by the group on the card.
- Circulate among groups and offer guidance as needed in helping students discuss questions and make decisions. For example, you may want to ask guiding questions to help them reach a conclusion or you may want to ask them to explain why they chose a particular question.
- When students have finished recording questions on their cards, have each group share its conclusions with the class, providing explanations and justifications for the questions chosen. Use the following chart as a reference when each group discusses information about its area of study, ensuring all students understand the questions. You may wish to ask students to answer the questions as well, providing support when needed.

## Note

Throughout this lesson, and other lessons in this Teacher Guide, you will see certain questions or activities labeled either **Support** or **Challenge**. These questions and activities are not intended to be used in all situations. The items labeled **Support** provide additional scaffolding and should be used with classes that would benefit from additional support. The items labeled **Challenge** should be used with classes that would benefit from additional enrichment opportunities.

| Area of Study | Questions | Answers |
|---|---|---|
| geography | • What are Earth's seven continents?<br>• What are the names of the oceans of the world?<br>• What are the four main directions on a map?<br>• What are names of important rivers of the world? | • Asia, North America, South America, Africa, Europe, Australia, and Antarctica<br>• Atlantic, Pacific, Indian, and Arctic<br>• north, south, east, and west<br>• the Nile, Indus, Tigris, and Yangtze Rivers |
| ecology | • What is the name of the place where an animal or plant normally lives and grows?<br>• What can cause changes in an ecosystem?<br>• How would you describe the tropical rainforest of the Amazon River?<br>• What features make up the environment? | • a habitat<br>• natural events like volcanoes and humans<br>• home to a variety of plants and animals<br>• the air, water, minerals, organisms, and all other living and nonliving factors that surround and affect an organism |
| archaeology | • What clues do the ruins of ancient buildings provide about the ancient Roman civilization?<br>• What was the city of London like in the Middle Ages?<br>• What features were common characteristics of ancient Islamic mosques?<br>• What do the pictures embroidered on the Bayeux Tapestry illustrate? | • the purpose of the building or how it was used—as a dwelling, a place of worship, for protection, etc.<br>• more and more people moved into the city; it became overcrowded and dirty<br>• domes, turrets, tile decoration<br>• the Battle of Hastings, the conquest of England by William the Conqueror, what soldiers wore for battle |

- After each group shares, place its Area of Study Card on the web graphic organizer.

### *Introduce Geology as an Area of Study* — 10 minutes

- Tell students in this unit, they will learn about another area of study about the earth called geology. Show students the Area of Study Card for geology. Read the definition of geology from the card: geology is the study of the earth's characteristics, what it is made of, and the processes that shape and change it.
- Explain that you have chosen four images related to geology. Place all images where students can see them.
- Have students take a few minutes to examine the first image, an erupting volcano. Then, ask students what questions a person studying geology might ask about what they see in the image. Record student answers on the board/chart paper. The following are examples of questions students may ask related to the image:
  - Why is the liquid coming out of the volcano bright orange and red, like it's on fire?
  - How does the liquid coming out of the volcano shoot up high in the air like that?
  - Where does the liquid come from?

- Follow the same procedures for the other three images. The following are examples of questions students may come up with related to the images:
  - Grand Canyon:
    - » How did the rocks get different colored layers on them?
    - » What shaped the rocks to look like this?
    - » Why are some rocks higher up than other rocks?
  - fossils:
    - » What shaped the things in this image?
    - » Where can you find things that look like this?
    - » What are these things made of?
  - Cappadocia houses:
    - » What are these made of?
    - » How did the rocks get carved out like this?
    - » What are these rocks used for?
- Then, as a class, choose one question about each image to record on the Area of Study Card for geology.
- Place the Area of Study Card for geology on the web graphic organizer.
- Summarize for students that all four of the areas of study on the web examine the earth in different ways. Remind students that they will be focusing on geology in this unit and they may find the answers to the questions on the Area of Study Card for geology as they progress through the unit.

*Wrap Up*

- Ask students to describe what they learned about in this lesson.
  - Answers may vary, but should include that different areas of study about the earth focus on different things.
- Ask students to describe what questions they asked related to geology.

## READING 45 minutes

### Read-Aloud: Chapter 1 "Earth's Changing Surface" 40 minutes

#### *Introduce the Reader* 5 minutes

- Ensure each student has a copy of the Reader, *The Changing Earth.*
- Read the title of the Reader with students and explain that this Reader is a nonfiction, informational book about geology. A nonfiction, informational book is explanatory, providing facts and other information about real topics. Point out that the book does include one literary chapter, which includes retellings of myths, or stories told by early people to explain unpredictable events.
- Have students turn to the table of contents. Either read several chapter titles from the table of contents aloud or have students read them. Explain that reading chapter titles in a book can be very informative. Ask students to describe the information they gather by reading the chapter titles in this table of contents.

  **Challenge** Ask students to identify which chapter might be the literary chapter. ("Mythic Volcano Spirits")

- Give students a few moments to flip through the Reader and comment on the images they see.
- Ask students to share any comments they have about the Reader.

#### *Introduce the Chapter* 5 minutes

- Tell students that you will read aloud Chapter 1, "Earth's Changing Surface." They should follow along in their Reader as you read.
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Preview the core vocabulary words before reading the chapter.
- Begin by telling students the first vocabulary word they will encounter in this chapter is *catastrophe.*
- Have them find the word on page 2 of the Reader. Explain that each vocabulary word is bolded the first time it appears in the chapter.
- Explain that the glossary contains definitions of all the vocabulary words in this Reader. Have students refer to the glossary at the back of the Reader, locate *catastrophe*, and then have a student read the definition.
- Explain the following:
  - The part of speech follows each word in an abbreviated format as follows: noun–*n*.; verb–*v*.; adjective–*adj*.; adverb–*adv*.
  - Alternate forms of the word appearing in the chapter may follow the definition. They may be a different part of speech than the original word.

#### Materials

- *The Changing Earth*
- Activity Pages 1.2–1.5
- Evidence Collector's Chart
- scissors
- glue

#### Note

As mentioned in the introduction to the unit, there are some bolded words in the Reader that are not addressed in the reading lessons. These words are still important for students to reference as they read this Reader. These words have an asterisk (*) next to them in the glossary.

## Note

We have chosen the following words as core vocabulary words to be learned and used as scientists would use them in the context of studying geology: *observation*, *evidence*, *conclude*, and *hypothesis*.

- Have students reference Activity Page 1.2 while you read each word and its meaning noting that:
  - The page number (for the first occurrence of the word in the chapter) appears in bold print after the definition.
  - Words are listed in the order in which they appear in the chapter.

1. **catastrophe**, ***n.*** a terrible, sudden event (**catastrophes**) (**2**)
2. **erupt**, ***v.*** to send out rock, lava, and ash in a sudden explosion (**erupted**, ***n.*** **eruption**) (**2**)
3. **observation**, ***n.*** **1.** the act of paying careful attention to gather information; **2.** a statement based on paying careful attention to something (**observations**) (**4**)
4. **evidence**, ***n.*** proof; information and facts that are helpful in forming a conclusion or supporting an idea (**4**)
5. **fossil**, ***n.*** the preserved remains of things that lived long ago (**fossils**) (**4**)
6. **geologist**, ***n.*** a scientist who studies the makeup of the earth and the forces and processes that shape and change it (**geologists**) (**6**)
7. **climate**, ***n.*** the average weather conditions of a particular area (**7**)
8. **conclude**, ***v.*** to decide something or form an opinion based on information you have (**concluded**, ***n.*** **conclusion**) (**7**)
9. **dense**, ***adj.*** thick or heavy (**denser**) (**8**)
10. **hypothesis**, ***n.*** an idea that has been suggested and may be true but has not yet been proven (**9**)
11. **continental drift**, ***n.*** a process in which continents slowly move over time on the surface of the earth (**9**)

| Vocabulary Chart for Chapter 1 “Earth’s Changing Surface” | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3<br>Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2<br>General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | erupt<br>fossil<br>geologist<br>hypothesis<br>continental drift | catastrophe<br>observation<br>evidence<br>climate<br>conclude<br>dense |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | fósil<br>geólogo<br>hipótesis | catástrofe<br>observación<br>evidencia<br>clima<br>denso |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | erupt | dense |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | | |

- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

> Listen and read to learn how people’s observations over time led to our modern understanding of what the earth is made of and how it has changed.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

> How did people’s understanding of what was happening on Earth’s surface change over time?

### *Read “Earth’s Changing Surface”* — 15 minutes

Read the chapter aloud, as students follow along in their Readers. As you read, stop to read the corresponding guided reading supports. Guided reading supports in brackets are directional and not intended to be read aloud. All other phrases and sentences are intended to be read aloud verbatim. Whenever asking a guided reading support question, explicitly encourage students to refer to the text and reread prior to offering an answer.

**A** [Read pages 2 and 3 aloud, as students read along silently.]

**B** *Literal* People living in Europe during the Middle Ages described the idea that the earth changes as crazy. Why might they have described this idea as crazy?

» At that time, they believed that features of the landscape had always been there. Even though they could see the changes caused by natural catastrophes like earthquakes and volcanoes, they believed these events were punishments from God, not the earth changing.

**Support** What evidence of Earth's changes did people living during the Middle Ages observe?

» Natural catastrophes such as earthquakes, landslides, and volcanoes sometimes occurred.

**Support** What did people believe was the cause of natural catastrophes?

» They believed God made the catastrophes happen as punishment for things people did.

Chapter 1

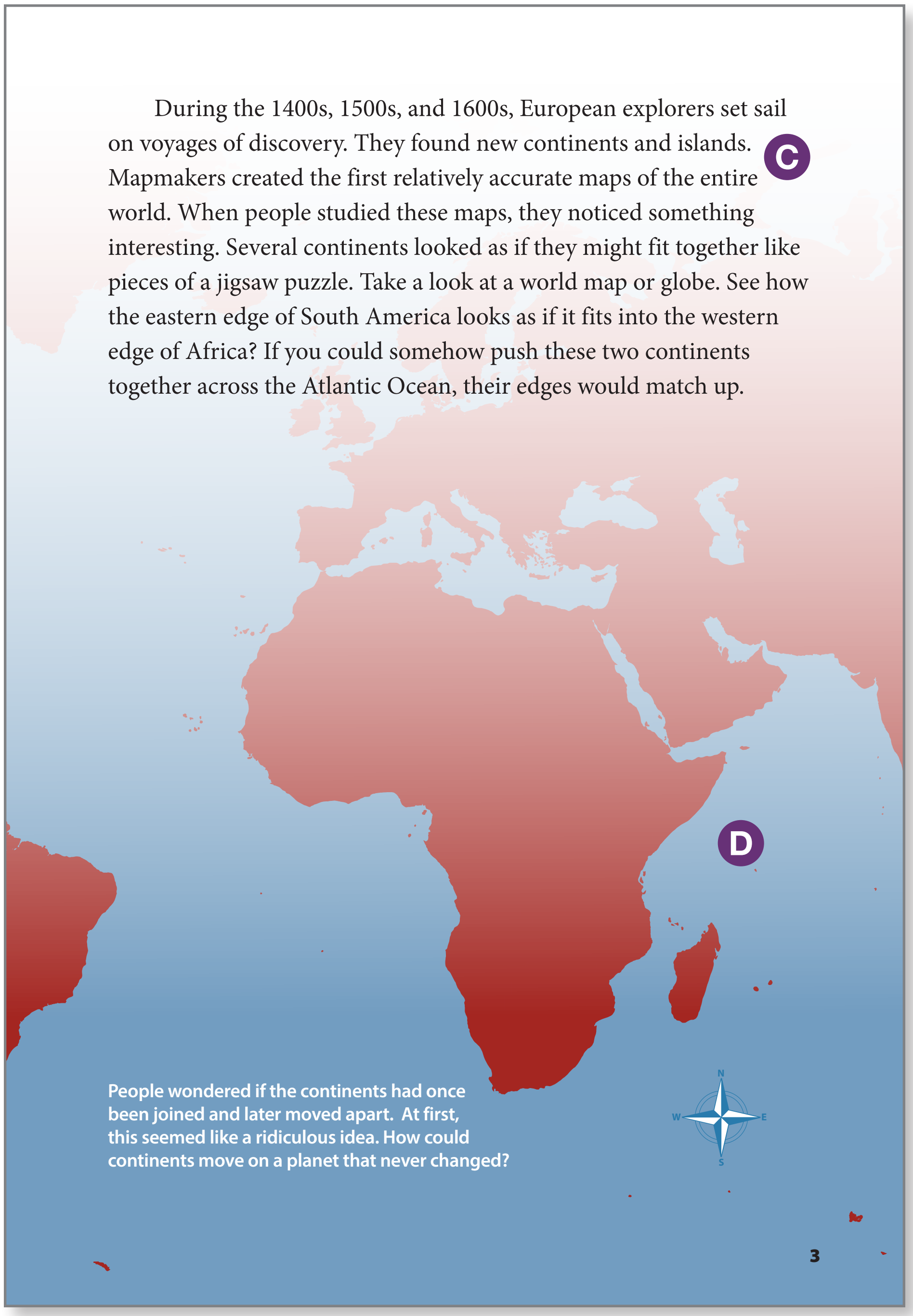
# Earth's Changing Surface

**THE BIG QUESTION**
How did people's understanding of what was happening on Earth's surface change over time?


1570 CE world map

**A** If you had lived in Europe during the Middle Ages, the idea that the earth changes would have seemed crazy. **B** At that time, people believed that mountains, valleys, and other landscape features had always been there. True, rare natural **catastrophes** sometimes occurred. Earthquakes, for example, shook the ground and triggered landslides. In some places, volcanoes **erupted** and sent up fountains of lava, or red-hot melted rock. However, people viewed these catastrophes as punishments from God, not as the earth changing.

2



During the 1400s, 1500s, and 1600s, European explorers set sail on voyages of discovery. They found new continents and islands. **C** Mapmakers created the first relatively accurate maps of the entire world. When people studied these maps, they noticed something interesting. Several continents looked as if they might fit together like pieces of a jigsaw puzzle. Take a look at a world map or globe. See how the eastern edge of South America looks as if it fits into the western edge of Africa? If you could somehow push these two continents together across the Atlantic Ocean, their edges would match up.



**People wondered if the continents had once been joined and later moved apart. At first, this seemed like a ridiculous idea. How could continents move on a planet that never changed?**

3

**C** [You may wish to remind students about early European explorers they studied in the Grade 3 *European Exploration of North America* domain and unit. Prior to this period in the history of European exploration, most Europeans were not aware that the continents of North and South America even existed. Students may remember learning about Christopher Columbus's journey in search of the Spice Islands or the Indies, and his subsequent exploration of the Americas. Students may remember hearing about the journeys of the conquistadors Juan Ponce de León, Hernando de Soto, and Francisco Vasquez de Coronado. They may also remember hearing about the explorers John Cabot, Henry Hudson, and Samuel de Champlain who explored North America.]

**D** [Ask students to look at the old map on page 2 and the modern map in the background of pages 2 and 3. Encourage students to notice the way the eastern edge of South America and the western edge of Africa appear to fit together.]

[At the top of the appropriate Reader page spreads throughout the Teacher Guide, you will find pronunciations for one or more unique content-related words found in the Reader that you and students may need assistance in pronouncing. In addition, the pronunciations for each chapter are listed on the activity pages with the chapter vocabulary.]

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Shen Kua | /shen/ /kwə/ |

**A** [Read pages 4 and 5 aloud, as students read along silently.]

## A Powerful Forces and Gradual Change

During the 1700s and 1800s, many people skilled in scientific **observation** became convinced that Earth's surface features do indeed change. They noticed how great masses of rock appeared to have been lifted up to form cliffs and mountains over time. They began to believe that once-tall mountains had been worn down by wind, rain, and ice and that, over thousands of years, valleys had been carved by rivers flowing through them. These scientists found **evidence** that seemed to show that sea levels had been higher—and lower—at different times in the past. They found layers of rock on mountain peaks that contained **fossils**, the preserved remains of things that lived long ago. These scientists observed how big rocks gradually broke down into tiny pieces called **sediments**. They saw how new rocks formed as they observed volcanic lava cool and harden.

Fossils help provide information about the history of the earth.

4

All these observations led many scientists to believe that powerful natural **forces** were at work changing Earth's surface. Most of these changes were thought to have taken place very slowly. Over long periods of time, slow, gradual changes added up to produce dramatic results. These scientists were convinced that Earth's rocky surface had changed continuously throughout the planet's long history. It had changed in the past, and Earth was changing in the present, too.

B

C

These ideas laid the foundation for the modern science of geology. Geology is the study of the makeup of the earth and the forces and processes that shape and change it. Rocks are very important in geology. That's because rocks hold clues to how Earth's surface has changed over time. Together with fossils, rocks provide information about the history of the earth.

## Shen Kua's Observations

Shen Kua was a Chinese scientist and mathematician who lived from 1031–1095 CE. He studied rocks and fossils and made many observations of Earth's surface features. Shen Kua realized that Earth's surface is shaped very slowly by powerful forces. Some forces wear rocks down. Others make new rocks and push them up to become mountains. Shen Kua reached these conclusions hundreds of years before European scientists did.

5

**B** *Literal* What conclusions did scientists make about the history of the earth based on the evidence they observed?

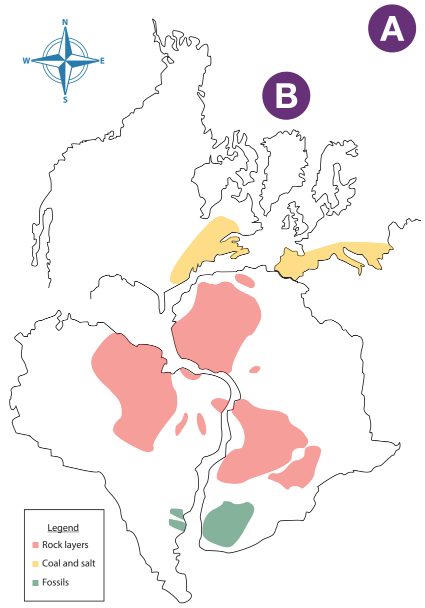
» They believed that powerful natural forces were at work changing Earth's surface; that most of these results or effects took place very slowly; and that slow gradual changes over long periods of time added up to produce dramatic results.

**C** *Evaluative* One meaning of the word *dramatic* is "very noticeable." How might the observations made by European scientists be considered dramatic results?

» Answers may vary, but should include that scientists compared observations and records made over long periods of time and noticed extreme differences when comparing information. Once-tall mountains getting smaller over time is a noticeable difference. The creation of valleys by rivers where valleys did not previously exist is a noticeable difference. Changes in sea levels are noticeable differences, given how much of Earth is water. Fossils found at the top of mountains, a place where living things likely can't survive, is a noticeable difference.

**A** [Read pages 6 and 7 aloud, as students read along silently.]

**B** [Allow students time to look at the map and notice where areas of similar rock layers are noted along the coasts of South America and Africa. Guide students to identify other areas showing similar deposits of coal and salt and similar fossil layers on different continents.]




Discoveries of rock layers, as well as coal and salt, indicated that the continents had once been joined.

## A Search for Clues

So what about the jigsaw-puzzle fit of the continents? During the 1800s and early 1900s, **geologists** studied rock layers on the continents. They made many intriguing discoveries. For example, rock layers along the northern and eastern coasts of South America match rock layers along Africa's western coast. Also, deposits of **coal** and salt in eastern North America are similar to those in southern Europe.

Geologists found fossils of an ancient fern called *Glossopteris* in similar rock layers in Africa, India, Australia, and South America. They found fossils of an ancient reptile, *Lystrosaurus*, in both southern Africa and India. In South America and Africa, fossils of another ancient reptile, *Cynognathus*, turned up directly across the Atlantic Ocean from each other.

These discoveries seemed to indicate that the continents had once been joined—but how? Furthermore, how had they become separated? Several scientists proposed explanations, but they were quite far-fetched. One involved a gigantic eruption from the center of the earth that ripped all the land apart. Another suggested that part of Earth's land broke away to become the moon and what was left became the

6

continents. Few people paid much attention to these ideas. A better explanation was needed, one with evidence to support it. In the early 1900s, Alfred Wegener provided just that.

### Enter Alfred Wegener

Born and educated in Germany, Alfred Wegener was interested in many scientific subjects, including weather, astronomy, and cold, polar regions. Around 1910, Wegener read a scientific paper about similar fossils and rock formations found on different continents. He was intrigued by the mystery of the matching continents and he wanted to solve this mystery.

Alfred Wegener

C

Wegener gathered evidence. He pulled together discoveries made by many other scientists about rock formations, fossils, and mountain ranges. Polar explorers had recently unearthed fossils of *Glossopteris* in Antarctica. Similar fossils had previously been found in other parts of the world. This seemed to indicate that ice-covered Antarctica might once have been joined to South America, Africa, India, and Australia. It also meant that Antarctica had once had a **climate** warm enough for ferns to grow.

From this evidence, Wegener **concluded** that all the present-day continents had been joined as one huge landmass long ago. He understood, as with any new discovery, that his conclusions might be altered or challenged in the future by more evidence. Nonetheless, he believed that the existing evidence supported his conclusions.

7

**C** *Evaluative* Why was it intriguing to Wegener and other geologists that different continents had similar fossils and rock formations?

» Similar fossils and rock formations were found on different continents that are now separated by great distances across large oceans. Fossils of an ancient fern were found in ice-covered Antarctica; the discovery of fossils of this ancient plant in Antarctica seems odd since this type of fern does not currently grow in the cold, ice-covered climate of Antarctica. Finding similarities across continents and evidence of living things from the past might mean the continents were once joined and/or in different locations than they were in Wegener's time. If the continents were once joined and/or in different locations than at the time, scientists wanted to figure out how such drastic changes could have happened.

**Support** What similarities did geologists observe as they examined fossils on different continents?

» Fossils of the ancient reptile *Lystrosaurus* were found in southern Africa and India; fossils of the ancient reptile *Cynognathus* were found in South America and Africa; fossils of the ancient fern *Glossopteris* were found in Africa, India, Australia, and South America.

**Support** Why was it surprising to find fossils of ferns on the continent of Antarctica?

» Antarctica is ice-covered today and was also ice-covered in Wegener's time; it must have once been warm enough for ferns to grow there.

**Support** What similarities did geologists observe as they examined rock formations on different continents?

» Rock formations along the northern and eastern coasts of South America match those along Africa's western coast. Deposits of coal and salt in eastern North America are very similar to those in southern Europe.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
| --- | --- |
| Pangaea | /pan*jee*ə/ |

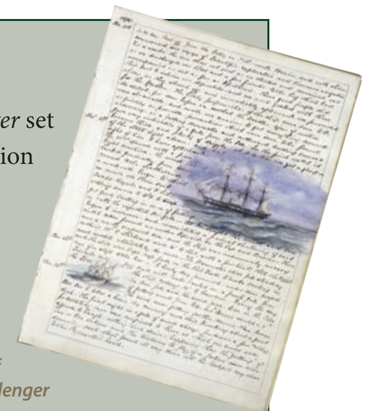
**A** [Read pages 8 and 9 aloud, as students read along silently.]

**A** **Continents that Drift**

If Wegener's conclusions were correct, then how had the continents moved apart? An important clue came from the ocean. The ocean was still largely unexplored in Wegener's day. In the 1870s, however, scientists discovered that much of the ocean bottom was made of basalt, a heavy, **dense** rock that is formed when lava cools and hardens. Lava is magma that has erupted up above Earth's crust from deep underground. Most rocks that make up the continents are lighter and less dense than basalt.

## Seafloor Discoveries

In 1872, the research ship HMS *Challenger* set out on a four-year mission to gather information about the ocean floor. The ship visited every ocean except the Arctic Ocean. Scientists on board dredged up mud, rocks, and ocean creatures from the seafloor.

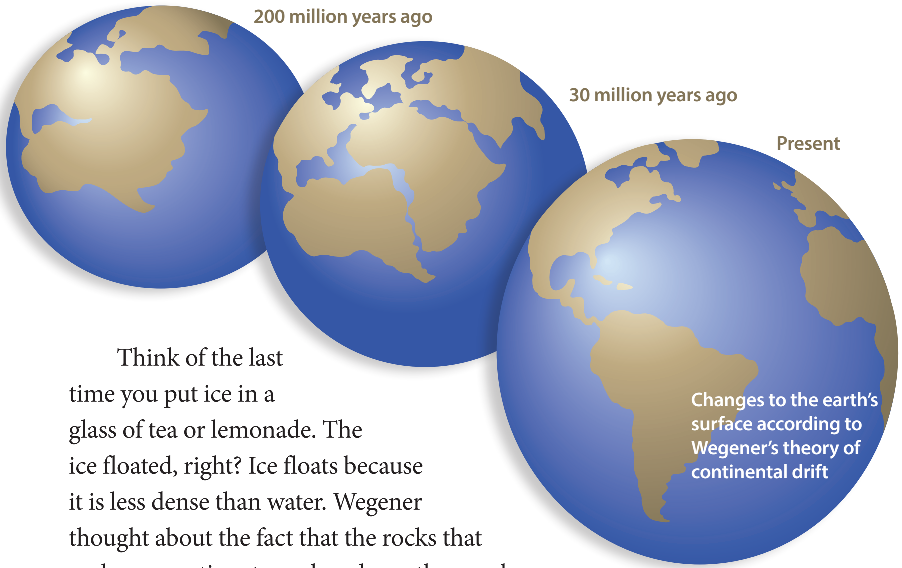


Journal of HMS *Challenger*

*Challenger* scientists also took soundings, or measures of water depth, by lowering weighted lines into the water. They measured out the line until the weight landed on the bottom. The scientists used the soundings to make rough maps of the seafloor in different places. They discovered that the seafloor has vast plains, tall mountain ranges, and deep valleys.

HMS *Challenger*

8



Changes to the earth's surface according to Wegener's theory of continental drift

Think of the last time you put ice in a glass of tea or lemonade. The ice floated, right? Ice floats because it is less dense than water. Wegener thought about the fact that the rocks that make up continents are less dense than rocks on the seafloor. "What if continents were like enormous pieces of ice?" he wondered. "Could they float over the denser rocks of the ocean bottom and move around?"

In 1915, Wegener published a book titled *The Origins of Continents and Oceans*. In it, he presented his **hypothesis** about how the earth's continents had moved over time. He called the process **continental drift**.

Wegener proposed that millions of years ago, Earth had one huge landmass. He described it as a supercontinent and named it Pangaea, from the Greek word *pangaia*, meaning "all the Earth." At some point, Pangaea broke up, and the pieces—the continents—very slowly **drifted** away from each other. As the continents moved, mountain ranges pulled apart. Rock formations split. New oceans filled in the widening gaps between the landmasses. Groups of plants and animals that had once lived together were separated. As continents drifted, their climates changed. Antarctica's climate, for example, grew so cold that the continent's plants and animals died. Only their fossils remained, buried under snow and ice.

9

**B** *Literal* You have learned that a simile is a literary device that compares things using *like* or *as*. The author uses a simile on page 9 to compare the movement of continents to pieces of ice in a drink. How did Wegener think the movement of the continents was similar to pieces of ice in a drink?

» Ice is less dense than water so ice floats in a drink, which is made with water. Rocks that make up the continents are less dense than rocks on the ocean bottom. Wegener thought maybe because continents were less dense than the rocks on the bottom of the ocean, continents might float above the denser rocks of the ocean bottom and move around, similar to the way ice floats in a drink.

**C** *Literal* What was Wegener's hypothesis about continental drift?

» Wegener proposed that millions of years ago, Earth was one huge landmass called Pangaea. Over time, Pangaea broke apart and the pieces slowly drifted apart, separating rock formations and plant and animal groups. New oceans filled the gaps between the landmasses and climates changed as continents drifted.

**A** [Read page 10 aloud, as students read along silently.]

**B** *Literal* How did other scientists in the early 1900s respond to Wegener's hypothesis?

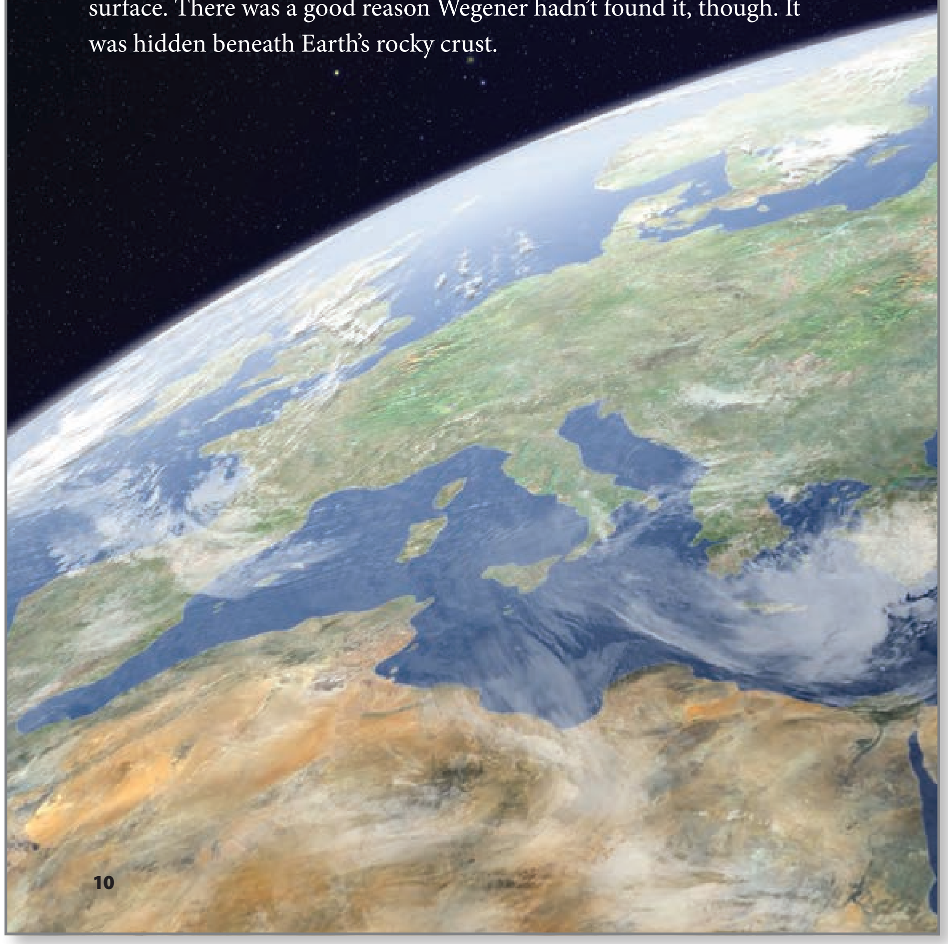
» They criticized Wegener's ideas and rejected his hypothesis.

*Literal* Why did scientists respond this way?

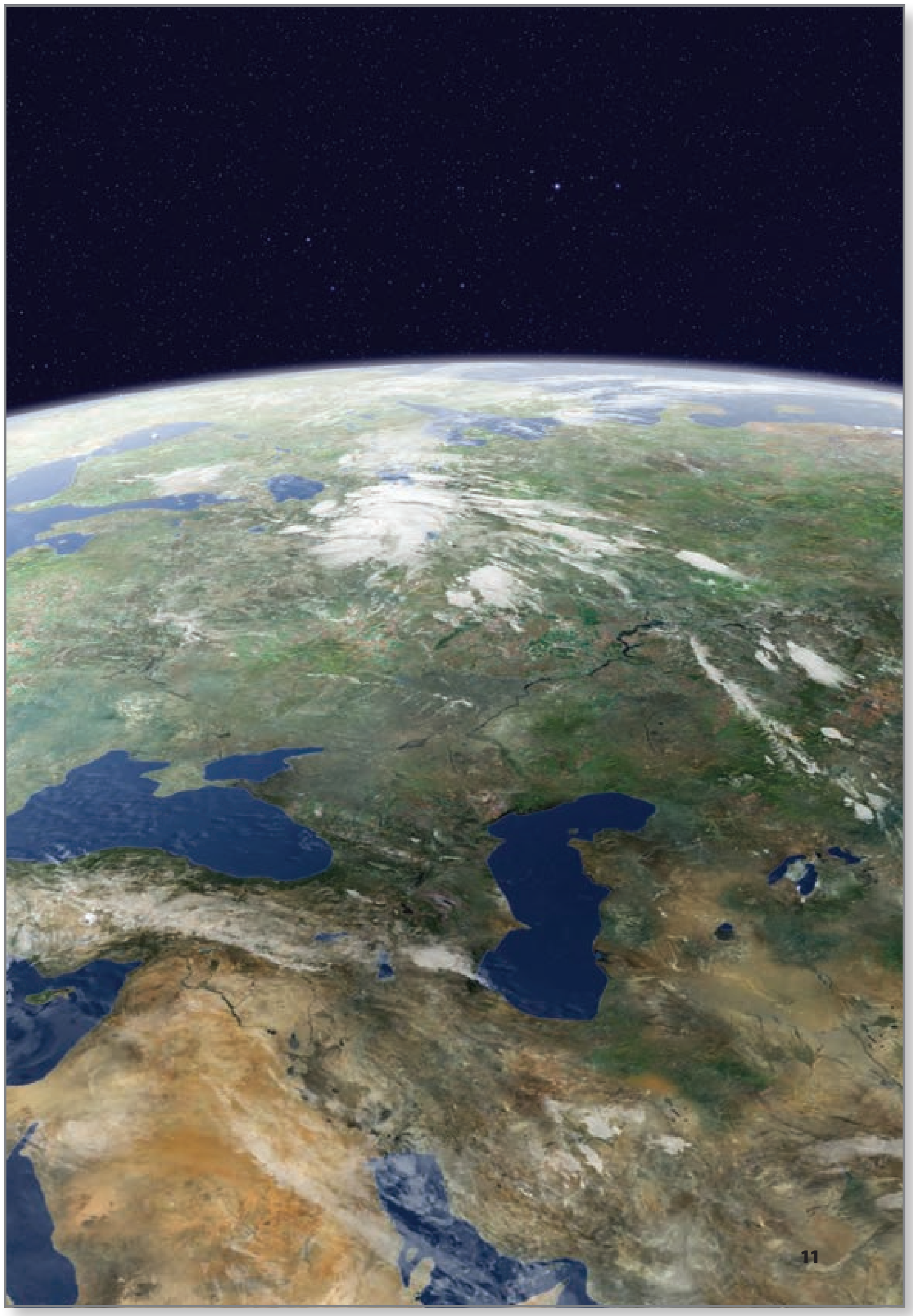
» Wegener had not identified how continents moved.

**A** **The Missing Puzzle Piece**

Wegener's continental drift hypothesis explained the fit of the continents. It explained how matching rocks, fossils, and land features ended up in different places. It explained how the climate had changed on some continents, too. Yet other scientists criticized Wegener's **B** ideas and rejected his hypothesis. Why? It didn't explain how drifting continents actually moved. He had not identified a natural process powerful enough to slowly move enormous pieces of land across Earth's surface. There was a good reason Wegener hadn't found it, though. It was hidden beneath Earth's rocky crust.



10


11

## Note

Questions 1 and 2 and Activity Pages 1.3 and 1.5 relate to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* **15 minutes**

For each question, have students cite the specific passage in the text that provides the information needed to answer the question. If students have difficulty responding to the questions, reread pertinent passages of the chapter and/or refer to specific images or graphics. If students give one word answers, and/or fail to use appropriate vocabulary in their responses, acknowledge correct responses by expanding students' responses using richer and more complex language. Have students answer in complete sentences by restating the question in their responses. It is highly recommended that students answer at least one question in writing and that several students share their writing as time allows.

- Use the following questions to discuss the chapter.

1. *Literal* During the 1700s and 1800s, which observations were made from evidence gathered over long periods of time that indicated Earth's surface features do change?
   » Answers may vary, but should include: evidence gathered over long periods of time showed once-tall mountains were worn down by wind, rain, and ice; valleys had been carved by rivers flowing through them; evidence of sea levels being higher and lower at different times in the past; fossils found in layers of rock on mountain peaks; big rocks gradually broke down into sediments; lava cooled and hardened.
2. *Evaluative* How did evidence of change on the earth's surface over time help Wegener develop his continental drift hypothesis?
   » He examined patterns in the evidence, leading him to conclude that Pangaea had broken apart and the continents had slowly drifted away from each other. Evidence such as rock layers along the northern and eastern coasts of South America matching rock layers along Africa's west coast indicated those two continents had once been joined; deposits of coal and salt in North America were very similar to deposits in southern Europe, indicating those two continents had once been joined; fossils of the same kinds of animals and plants were found on different continents, indicating the continents had once been joined.

- Have students turn to Activity Pages 1.3 and 1.4 and refer to the displayed Evidence Collector's Chart.
- Tell students after reading each chapter in *The Changing Earth*, they will examine a cause of change on the earth from the chapter, listed in the chart on Activity Page 1.3 (and in the chart on display). Remind students a cause is something that produces a result or effect. Tell them a cause is also a reason or explanation that geologists have hypothesized based on observations. (Students will not add information to the chart for Chapter 5, "Mythic Volcano Spirits," a literary chapter.)
- Tell students after examining the cause statement, they will review information in the chapter to determine what effect the cause produced. Tell students evidence represents the effect of a cause.

- Tell students after determining what evidence is presented in the chapter that is a result of the cause, they will examine a collection of images on Activity Page 1.4. The images represent evidence of a variety of causes in *The Changing Earth*. These images are examples of evidence geologists examine to determine how powerful forces above and below Earth's surface work to change the earth. Students must determine which image represents evidence of the cause statement for that specific chapter. Students will cut that image out and glue it to the chart in the "What evidence is there?" column. Then, students will write a few key words about the image.
- Note for students that each image has a small letter in the corner. Tell students they will gather a letter from each image as they add images to the chart. At the end of the unit, students will examine a geology riddle and unscramble the collected letters to answer the riddle.
- Tell students they will record the chapter number in the far left column to indicate which chapter the information in each row relates to.
- Call on a student to read aloud the information under "What is the cause?" in the first row.
- Explain that students must determine what evidence is in the chapter about Pangaea breaking apart. Have students look back through the chapter to find information about Pangaea breaking apart. (last paragraph on page 9)
- Have students examine the images on Activity Page 1.4. Engage students in a discussion about the images, talking about what is represented in the images and which image best represents evidence of the breaking apart of Pangaea and movement of its pieces. (image showing similar patterns of fossil and rock formations on different continents)
- Ensure students understand why the correct image is the one showing evidence of similar fossil and rock patterns on different continents. (The image shows the continents closer together, somewhat like they would have been as Pangaea, and how the similar patterns are spread across different continents, showing evidence of how the pieces slowly moved apart over time.)
- Have students cut out the correct image and glue it to the chart in the correct row in the "What evidence is there?" column. Have students write the following information for chapter number, key words, and letter in the chart on Activity Page 1.3:

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | *Movement of tectonic plates caused Pangaea to break apart and the pieces to slowly move apart over a long period of time.* | *image: patterns of similar fossil and rock patterns on different continents*<br><br>*key words:* similar rocks, fossils on different continents | N |

- Tell students that there will be many examples of evidence and causes in each chapter, but they will focus on information most closely related to The Big Question in each chapter.

- Have students turn to Activity Page 1.5. Ensure students understand the directions and tell them they will complete Activity Page 1.5 for homework.

## Word Work: *Dense* 5 minutes

Word Work is a brief, explicit vocabulary exercise, based on the work of Beck, McKeown, and Kucan (2002). The criteria used in selecting a word for the exercise include: (1) the relative importance of understanding the word for overall comprehension of the text selection; (2) whether the meaning of the word is difficult to deduce from the content and context of the text; and (3) the usefulness of the word, either as general academic vocabulary (also called Tier 2 words) or as domain vocabulary (also called Tier 3 words).

1. In the chapter you heard and read, "Basalt is a heavy, dense rock formed from cooled, hardened lava."
2. Say the word *dense* with me.
3. *Dense* means thick or heavy.
4. The dense fog blocked our view of the mountaintop.
5. What are some other examples of *dense*? Be sure to use the word *dense* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "______ is dense because ______."]
6. What part of speech is the word *dense*?
   » adjective

[Use a *Making Choices* activity for follow-up.] I am going to read several sentences. If the sentence I read is about something that is dense, say, "That is dense." If the sentence that I read is not about something that is dense, say, "That is not dense."

1. The fox took cover in the bushes where he was hidden from view.
   » That is dense.
2. The bread was sliced very thin.
   » That is not dense.
3. In the jungle, the tree coverage was so thick, we couldn't see the sky.
   » That is dense.
4. When we flew on a plane, we could not see the ground below because of the clouds.
   » That is dense.
5. On a clear day, you can see for miles.
   » That is not dense.

## TAKE-HOME MATERIAL

### Reading

- Have students take home Activity Page 1.5 to read and complete for homework and Activity Page 1.6 to use as a reference throughout the unit.
- Have students take home a text selection from the *Fluency Supplement* if you are choosing to provide additional fluency practice.

### Materials

- Activity Pages 1.5, 1.6
- *Fluency Supplement* selection (optional)

# Lesson 2

## Unit 6: Geology

### CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Identify Earth's layers and explain the characteristics of each
- ✓ Explain the theory of plate tectonics and describe the different ways tectonic plates move
- ✓ Explain how seafloor spreading causes mid-ocean ridges and ocean trenches

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Reading** | | |
| Whole Group: Chapter 2 "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates" | 40 min. | *The Changing Earth*; Activity Pages 1.3–1.5, 2.1; Evidence Collector's Chart; scissors; glue |
| Word Work: *Crust* | 5 min. | |
| **Grammar** | | |
| Introduce Commas | 15 min. | Commas Poster; Activity Page 2.2 |
| **Morphology** | | |
| Introduce Suffix *–ly* | 15 min. | Suffixes Poster; Activity Page 2.3 |
| **Writing** | | |
| Examine Similes | 15 min. | Activity Page 2.4; *The Changing Earth* |
| **Take-Home Material** | | |
| Grammar; Morphology | * | Activity Pages 2.2, 2.3 |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to identify evidence of Earth's layers and tectonic plates interacting to change the surface of the earth.

**Grammar**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to identify the correct location of commas in dates, addresses, city and state, and items a series.

**Morphology**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to distinguish between root words and words with the suffix *–ly* and use those words correctly in sentences.

**Writing**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to explain similes related to geology concepts.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

### *Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

| |
|---|
| Read to learn how new evidence led geologists to develop the theory of plate tectonics. |

- Display the Evidence Collector's Chart from Lesson 1.

### *Grammar*

- Prepare and display a Commas Poster with the following information for use during the grammar lesson. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit. This poster will be on display throughout the unit.

| Commas |
|---|
| A **comma** is a punctuation mark used to separate words or numbers in dates and addresses, as well as to separate a series of words in a sentence. |

- Write the following examples on the board/chart paper.

| |
|---|
| His little sister was born on January 2 1992. |
| The Declaration of Independence is dated July 4 1776. |
| During summer vacation, I visited my relatives in Birmingham Alabama. |
| The White House<br>1600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW<br>Washington DC 20500 |
| At their boundaries, tectonic plates can move apart collide or slide sideways past one another. |
| We went to a museum a park a theater and a restaurant on our trip. |

### *Morphology*

- If you did not do so in the previous unit, prepare and display a Suffixes Poster with the following information for use during the morphology lesson. Leave enough space at the bottom to list suffixes and their meanings throughout the year. Select a convenient place in the classroom to display the poster, as it will be used and displayed throughout the school year in the same way you are using the Prefixes and Roots posters. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit.

| Suffixes |
| --- |
| A **suffix** is a syllable or syllables placed at the end of a root word to change the word's meaning and/or to form a different word. |

- Select a place in the classroom to display the poster for the rest of the year.

## READING — 45 minutes

### Whole Group: Chapter 2 "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates" — 40 minutes

**Materials**

- *The Changing Earth*
- Activity Pages 1.3–1.5, 2.1
- Evidence Collector's Chart
- scissors
- glue

#### *Review* — 5 minutes

- As a class, review Activity Page 1.5 that students completed for homework. Discuss the examples of evidence students wrote. Encourage students to use content and academic vocabulary as they talk about their examples of evidence observed by scientists.
  - Answers may vary, but may include: many examples of similar fossils and rock layers were found on different continents that are now separated by great distances across large oceans; fossils of the ancient fern *Glossopteris* were found in ice-covered Antarctica, which today does not have a climate warm enough for this fern to grow; fossils of the ancient reptile *Lystrosaurus* were found in southern Africa and India; fossils of the ancient reptile *Cynognathus* were found in South America and Africa; fossils of the ancient fern *Glossopteris* were found in Africa, India, Australia, and South America; rock formations along the northern and eastern coasts of South America match those along Africa's western coast; and deposits of coal and salt in eastern North America are very similar to those in southern Europe.

#### *Introduce the Chapter* — 5 minutes

- Tell students they will read Chapter 2, "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Preview the core vocabulary words before reading the chapter.
- Begin by telling students the first vocabulary word they will encounter in this chapter is *crust*. Tell students this word is explained later in the chapter and included in the glossary so it won't be previewed in this lesson.
- Tell students the next vocabulary word they will encounter in this chapter is *seismic wave*.
- Have them find the word on page 13 of the Reader. Explain that each vocabulary word is bolded the first time it appears in the chapter.

- Explain that the glossary contains definitions of all the vocabulary words in this Reader. Have students refer to the glossary at the back of the Reader, locate *seismic wave*, and then have a student read the definition.
- Explain the following:
  - The part of speech follows each word in an abbreviated format as follows: noun–*n.*; verb–*v.*; adjective–*adj.*; adverb–*adv.*
  - Alternate forms of the word appearing in the chapter may follow the definition. They may be a different part of speech than the original word.
- Have students reference Activity Page 2.1 while you read each word and its meaning noting that:
  - The page number (for the first occurrence of the word in the chapter) appears in bold print after the definition.
  - Words are listed in the order in which they appear in the chapter.

1. **seismic wave**, ***n.*** a surge of energy traveling out from an earthquake's source through the earth (**seismic waves**) (**13**)
2. **pressure**, ***n.*** the weight or force produced when something presses or pushes against something else (**15**)
3. **basalt**, ***n.*** heavy, dense rock formed from cooled, hardened lava (**16**)
4. **magma**, ***n.*** melted rock in Earth's mantle (**17**)
5. **lava**, ***n.*** red-hot melted rock that has erupted above Earth's crust from deep underground (**17**)
6. **basin**, ***n.*** a large area in the earth that is lower than the area around it (**basins**) (**17**)
7. **ocean trench**, ***n.*** a narrow, extremely deep valley formed when the seafloor dips down as one tectonic plate slides under another (**ocean trenches**) (**17**)
8. **theory**, ***n.*** an explanation for why something happens based on evidence (**17**)
9. **plate tectonics**, ***n.*** a theory that Earth's crust and the solid top part of the mantle are broken up into sections that fit together but move against each other (**17**)
10. **exert**, ***v.*** to cause a force to be felt or have an effect (**exerts**) (**19**)

## Note

Magma, lava, and basalt are related to each other. Magma is completely melted rock. Lava is magma that comes out onto Earth's surface. Basalt is rock formed when lava cools and solidifies.

| Vocabulary Chart for Chapter 2 "Earth's Layers and Moving Parts" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3<br>Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2<br>General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | seismic wave<br>basalt<br>magma<br>lava<br>basin<br>ocean trench<br>plate tectonics | pressure<br>theory<br>exert |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | basalto<br>lava<br>tectónica de placas | |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | basin | pressure |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | on the right track<br>driving force | |

- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

> Read to learn how new evidence led geologists to develop the theory of plate tectonics.

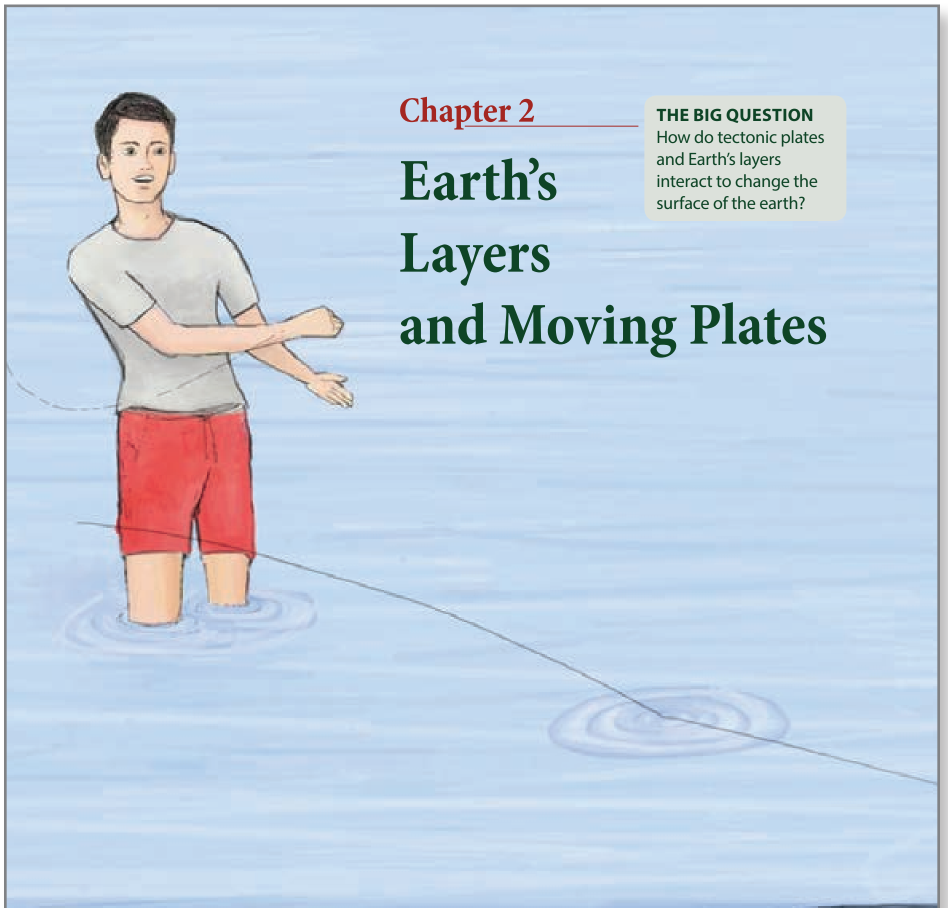
- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

> How do tectonic plates and Earth's layers interact to change the surface of the earth?

### *Read "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates"* **20 minutes**

Guided reading supports in brackets are intended to guide you in facilitating discussion and should not be read verbatim to students. Guided reading supports not in brackets should be read aloud verbatim.

**A** [Have students read pages 12 and 13 silently.]



Chapter 2

# Earth's Layers and Moving Plates

**THE BIG QUESTION**
How do tectonic plates and Earth's layers interact to change the surface of the earth?

**A** Alfred Wegener's continental drift hypothesis explained many of the "why" questions. It explained why the edges of some continents fit together like puzzle pieces. It explained why continents separated by vast oceans have similar types of rock formations and fossils. What the hypothesis couldn't explain was "how." How could a mass of solid rock as large as Asia or North America move thousands of miles across Earth's surface? It would take an enormously powerful force to do that. Geologists in Wegener's day didn't know of any force on Earth's surface powerful enough to move continents.

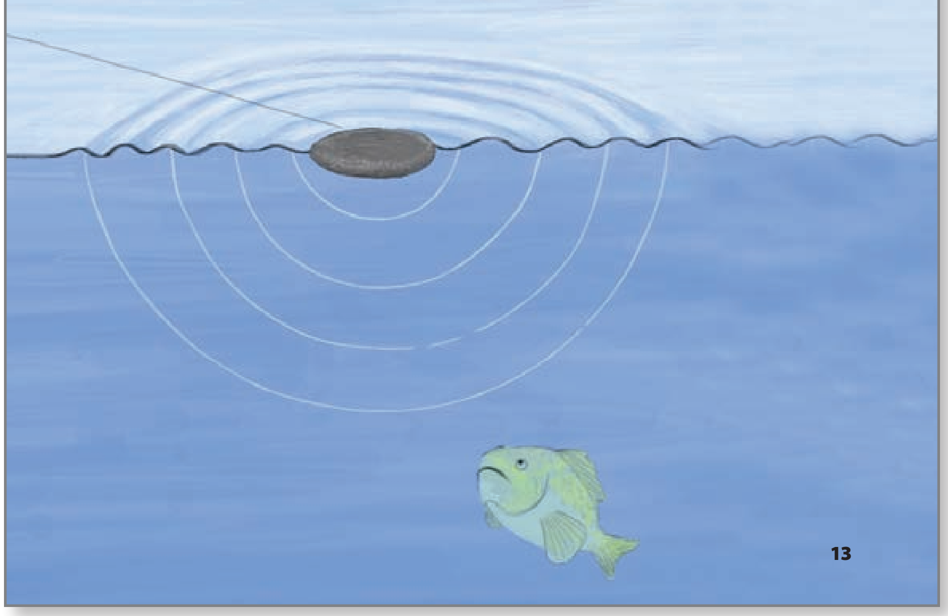
12

As a result, most geologists rejected the idea of continental drift. For decades, Wegener's hypothesis was harshly criticized. Still, a few geologists thought Wegener was on the right track. What if the driving force behind continental drift was below Earth's surface? How can you discover what lies beneath Earth's **crust**? Oddly enough, earthquakes helped scientists answer these questions.

## What Waves Reveal

Have you ever tossed a small rock into a pond? Little waves travel out from the spot where the rock hits the water's surface. Although you can't see them, waves travel through the water below the surface, too.

An earthquake is a bit like a rock plunking into water. During an earthquake, the ground shakes. The shaking is caused by waves of energy traveling out from the earthquake's source through the earth. Scientists call these **seismic waves**. Powerful seismic waves can travel very long distances. They can travel through Earth's crust and deep into its interior. **B**



13

**B** *Inferential* How is a small rock thrown into water like seismic waves?

» Seismic waves travel out through the earth from the source of an earthquake. A small rock thrown into water makes waves that travel out from the spot where the rock hit the water. Both seismic waves and waves created when a small rock hits water travel out from a source.

**Support** What happens when a small rock hits water?

» Little waves travel out from the spot where the rock hits the water's surface. Waves also travel below the surface but you can't see them.

**Support** What happens during an earthquake?

» Waves of energy travel out from the earthquake's source through the earth and cause the ground to shake.

**A** [Have students read pages 14 and 15 silently.]

**B** *Literal* What did scientists learn from studying seismic waves?

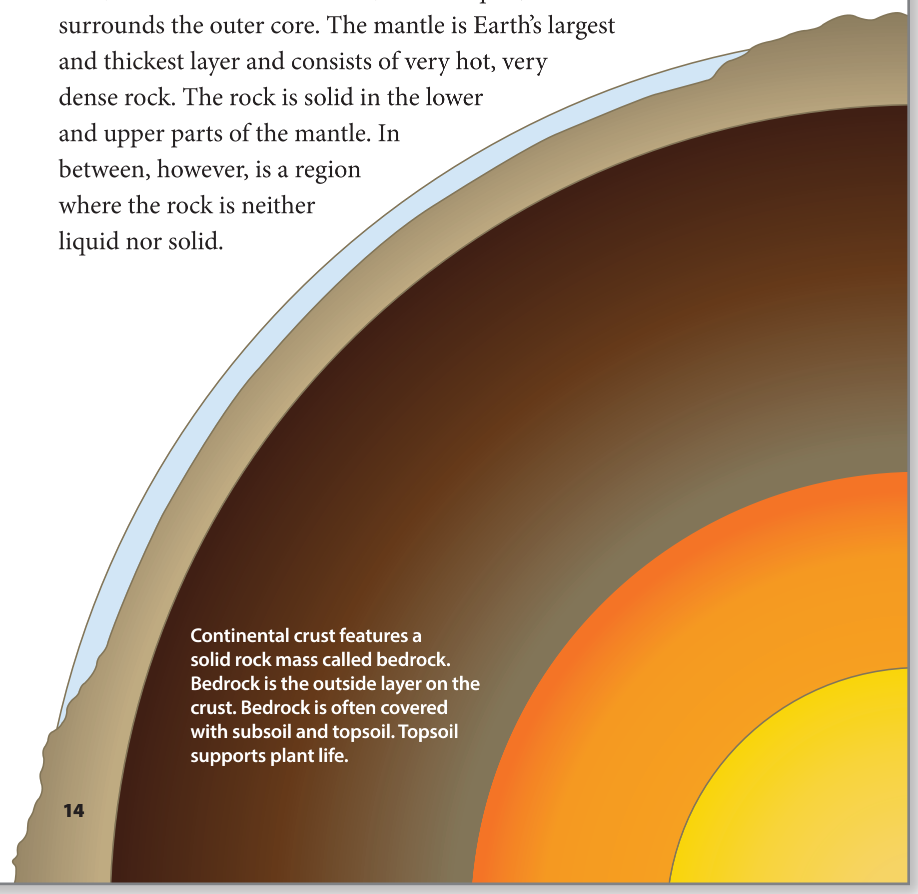
» By studying seismic waves, scientists were able to identify Earth's four main layers: the inner core, the outer core, the mantle, and the crust.

**C** *Literal* Name and describe characteristics of each layer, while referring to the image that spans pages 14 and 15. [Explicitly call students' attention to the fact that the text provides very clear definitions of the inner core, outer core, mantle, and crust. Point out that by carefully reviewing both the text and the image, students should be able to easily answer this question.]

» The inner core is solid and made of very hot metal; the outer core is made of hot liquid metal; the mantle is the earth's largest and thickest layer, made of very hot, very dense rock; the top and bottom parts of the mantle are solid, but the region in the middle is neither liquid nor solid; this material does slowly move; the crust is the thin, rocky outer layer of the earth; there are two types of crust: oceanic crust and continental crust; the oceanic crust is covered by ocean water; most of the continental crust is dry land, but some of the crust around the edges is covered by water; oceanic crust is thinner but heavier than continental crust.

**A** Around the time Alfred Wegener was thinking about continental drift, scientists were studying Earth's interior using seismic waves. How? Using instruments called **seismographs**, they tracked seismic waves traveling through the planet. Seismic waves move in slightly different ways as they move through different materials. For instance, they travel faster through solids than liquids. Studying seismic waves **B** helped scientists identify Earth's four main layers.

**C** Earth's deepest layer is a solid **inner core** of very hot metal. This metal may be nearly as hot as the sun's surface. The next layer, the **outer core**, is also made of hot metal, but it's liquid, not solid. The **mantle** surrounds the outer core. The mantle is Earth's largest and thickest layer and consists of very hot, very dense rock. The rock is solid in the lower and upper parts of the mantle. In between, however, is a region where the rock is neither liquid nor solid.

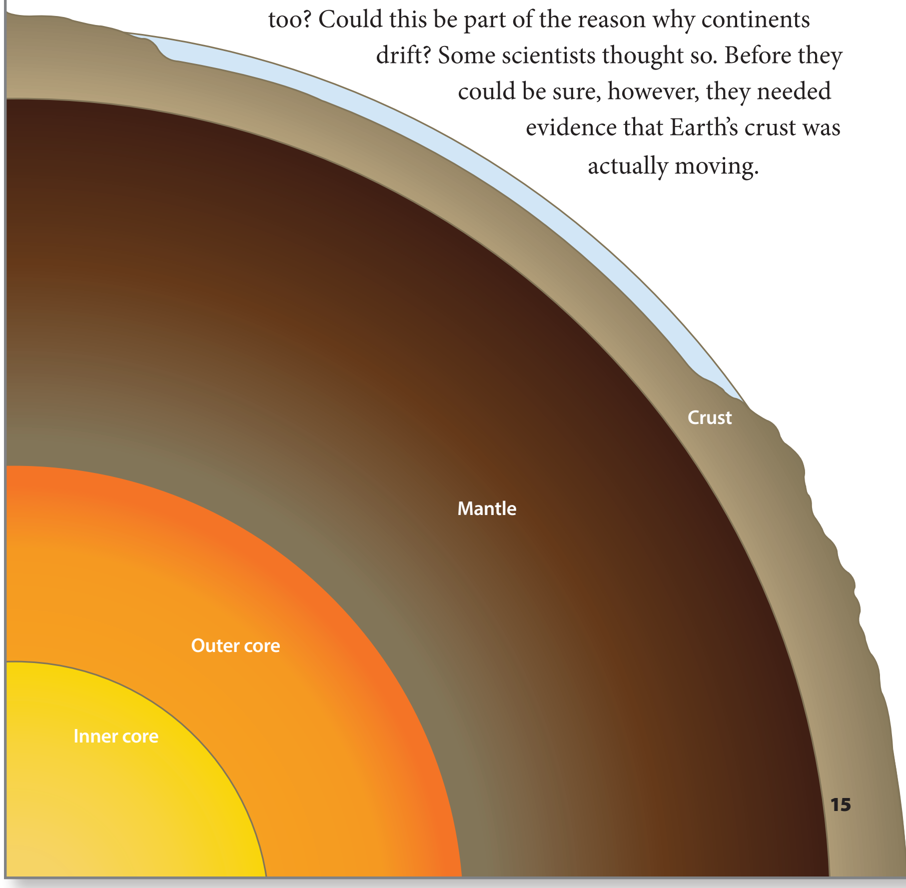


Continental crust features a solid rock mass called bedrock. Bedrock is the outside layer on the crust. Bedrock is often covered with subsoil and topsoil. Topsoil supports plant life.

14

The slow movement and behavior of this material, caused by heat and **pressure**, have an impact on Earth's surface. Above the mantle is Earth's outermost layer, the thin, rocky crust. There are two types of crust: oceanic crust and continental crust. Oceanic crust is covered by ocean water. Most of the continental crust is dry land, but some of the crust around the edges is covered by water. Oceanic crust is thinner but heavier than continental crust.

For scientists interested in continental drift, it was the slowly **D** moving material in the middle of the mantle that caught their attention. Did material movement in the mantle contribute to crust movement, too? Could this be part of the reason why continents drift? Some scientists thought so. Before they could be sure, however, they needed evidence that Earth's crust was actually moving.




15

**D** *Evaluative* Why was this new knowledge about Earth's layers important for scientists?

» Answers may vary, but may include: learning about Earth's layers and their characteristics led scientists to new questions; they thought the new information about the mantle and the crust might hold answers to the mystery of continental drift; they were inspired to learn more about how the mantle and the crust interacted with each other; and they were inspired to look for evidence that the earth's crust was actually moving.

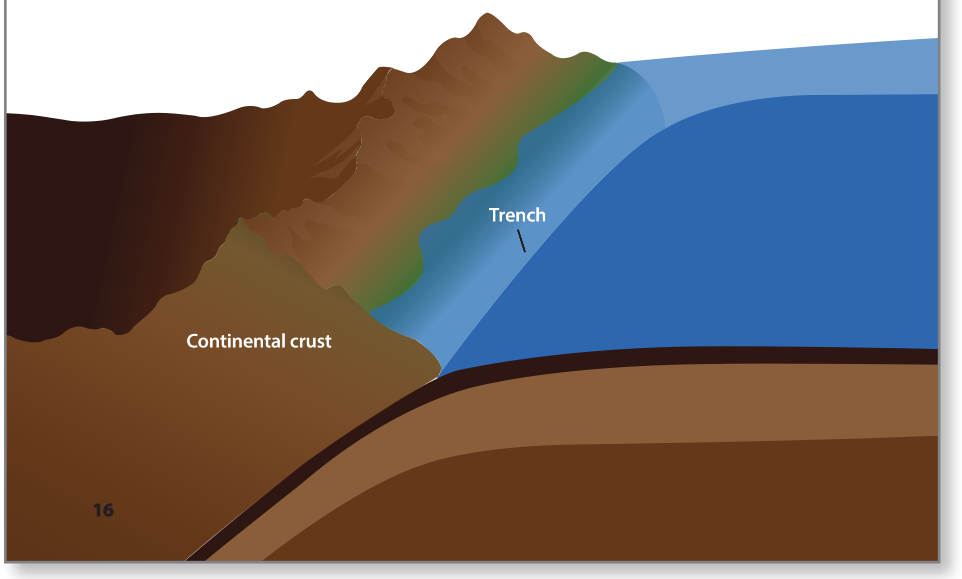
A [Have students read pages 16 and 17 silently.]

## A Clues from the Seafloor

During the 1940s and 1950s, new technology enabled scientists to make detailed maps of the seafloor. The maps revealed long chains of underwater mountains, called mid-ocean ridges, in all of Earth's oceans. There was a split, or rift, that ran down the center of these ridges. The rift was like a seam in a pants leg, where two pieces of fabric come together.

Scientists dredged up rock samples from mid-ocean ridges. All the rocks were **basalt**. Mid-ocean ridges seemed to be like long, skinny strings of volcanoes running along the seafloor.

Scientists collected rocks at various distances from the rift along a mid-ocean ridge. They discovered that rocks from the edge of the rift had formed very recently. Rocks farther away from the rift were older. The farther scientists got from the rift, on either side, the older the rocks were.



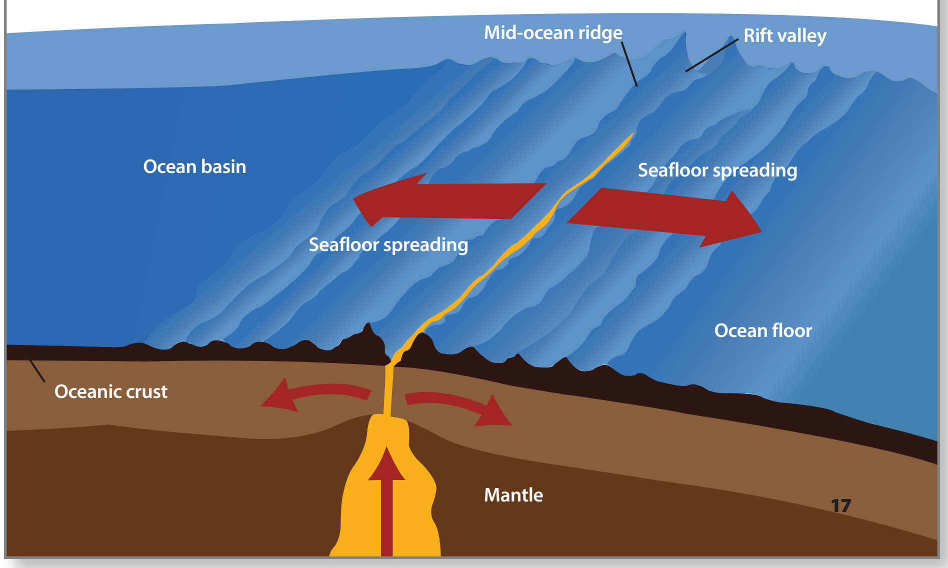

16

The scientists concluded that mid-ocean ridges form along huge cracks in Earth's crust. **Magma** beneath the crust erupts through these cracks as **lava**. The lava cools into basalt, creating new oceanic crust on either side of the rift.

As new crust is added, older crust gets pushed outward, away from the rift. Inch by inch, year after year, oceanic crust spreads outward into ocean **basins** on either side of mid-ocean ridges. Scientists called this process seafloor spreading. They theorized that as the seafloor slowly spreads, continents bordering the ocean slowly move apart. Here was one explanation of how continents could drift!

Scientists knew the earth wasn't getting bigger. If new crust forms **B** along mid-ocean ridges, then old crust must be destroyed somewhere else. Scientists guessed that deep **ocean trenches** are places where crust is sinking down into the mantle.

In the 1960s, scientists formed a new **theory** about how Earth's surface changes. They called the theory **plate tectonics**.




17

**B** *Literal* Why did scientists suspect that ocean trenches were part of the answer to the puzzle of continental drift?

» Scientists knew the earth wasn't getting any bigger; they guessed that if new crust was being created along mid-ocean ridges, then old crust must be destroyed somewhere else; new maps of the seafloor revealed incredibly deep valleys along the edges of several ocean basins; scientists guessed that deep ocean trenches are places where crust is sinking down into the mantle.

**A** [Have students read pages 18 and 19 silently.]

**B** *Literal* How does the theory of plate tectonics provide an explanation for how continents can move?

» According to the theory of plate tectonics, the earth's crust and the solid top part of the mantle are broken up into huge rocky slabs called tectonic plates that fit tightly together. As the material in the mantle beneath the tectonic plates slowly moves due to heat and pressure, it exerts enormous pressure on the plates above. The pressure is great enough to <u>cause</u> the plates, which include continents, to move very, very slowly.


**A** **Moving Plates**

Scientists are still learning about plate tectonics. The theory of plate tectonics states that Earth's crust, together with the solid top of the **B** mantle, is broken up into sections. These huge, rocky slabs are called

18


tectonic plates. Tectonic plates fit tightly together. They aren't fixed in place though; they can move. They move because of heat and pressure in the mantle. As the material in the mantle slowly moves, it **exerts** enormous pressure on the overlying plates. All that pressure forces the plates to move as well—very, very slowly.

Earth's tectonic plates have been slowly moving and interacting for billions of years. They interact mostly along their edges, or boundaries. Plate boundaries are where two or more tectonic plates meet.

19

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Inge Lehmann | /ing*gə/ /lee*mon/ |

**A** [Have students read pages 20 and 21 silently.]

**B** *Literal* What is subduction?

» Subduction is the name of the process when an oceanic plate slides under a continental plate.

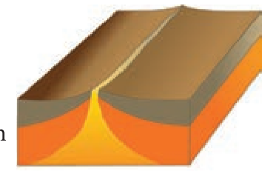
**Support** How does subduction create both high mountains and deep ocean trenches?

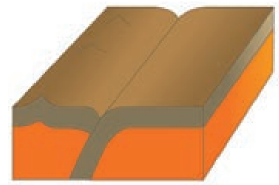
» In some places, the crust at the edges of tectonic plates gradually crumples and is pushed higher and higher, creating mountains. In other places, one plate slides underneath the other, creating a deep ocean trench.

## A Matter of Time

**A**

At some boundaries, tectonic plates are moving apart. As the plates separate, molten rock flows up from the mantle into the space between them, creating new crust. Mid-ocean ridges are an example of this type of plate interaction. Tectonic plates along the mid-ocean ridge in the Atlantic Ocean are moving apart at a rate of about 0.8 to 2 inches per year. That may not seem like much, but it adds up. Two hundred million years ago, the landmasses of North America and Europe were joined. So were South America and Africa. Thanks to separating plates, these continents now lie on opposite sides of a vast ocean.


Tectonic plates move apart.

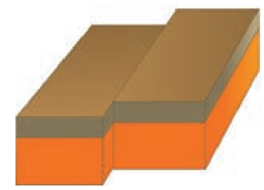

Tectonic plates collide.

At other plate boundaries, tectonic plates are **colliding**, or crashing together. In some places, colliding plates slowly crash into each other. The crust at their edges gradually crumples and is pushed higher and higher, creating mountains. In other places, one of the colliding plates slides under the other. Two plates are colliding this way along the western coast of South

**B**

America. A heavier oceanic plate is sliding under a lighter continental plate. Scientists call this process **subduction**. Subduction has created a deep ocean trench off the coast of Chile and Peru. It has also had a role in creating the towering Andes Mountains along the western edge of South America. Similar plate interactions have formed mountain ranges throughout Earth's long history.

Finally, tectonic plates slide sideways past one another. It's never a smooth process. Plate edges press together hard. They often get stuck while the


Tectonic plates slide sideways past one another.

20

pressure keeps building. Eventually the pressure gets too great. The stuck edges break free, causing the plates to jerk past each other.

### Providing the Answers

The theory of plate tectonics answered many questions in geology. It explained how Wegener's Pangaea broke apart. It explained how the continents have been slowly rearranged over millions of years. The movement of the plates also explained mid-ocean ridges, deep ocean trenches, patterns in the locations of mountains, and many other features on Earth's surface. The theory has become the cornerstone of modern geology.

As plates move, interesting things happen. Most of the time, they happen incredibly slowly. Sometimes, though, the effects of plate movements are sudden and dramatic. Think earthquakes and volcanoes!

### Core Conclusions

You may never have heard of the Danish scientist Inge Lehmann. Among seismologists, however, she is famous. Around 1900, scientists thought the earth had just three layers: an outer crust, a solid mantle, and a liquid core. **C** Lehmann studied seismograph records of earthquakes. She analyzed how seismic waves changed as they traveled through Earth's interior. Lehmann collected thousands of records organized in boxes—there were no computers back then! She saw patterns in how seismic waves behaved as they moved through Earth. Lehmann concluded that Earth's core has two parts: a liquid outer core and a solid inner core. In 1936, she announced her findings and changed our view of Earth!

21

**C** **Challenge** In her work, Danish scientist Inge Lehmann did many things that contribute to a good science process. What important steps did she take to come to her conclusion?

» Lehmann studied seismograph records of earthquakes and analyzed them to learn how seismic waves changed as they traveled through Earth's interior. She collected thousands of records and was able to see patterns in how the seismic waves moved as they traveled through the earth.

## Note

Question 1 and Activity Page 1.3 relate to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* — 10 minutes

- Use the following question to discuss the chapter.

1. *Evaluative* Why did scientists have to rely on evidence to figure out the theory of plate tectonics?
   » Answers may vary, but should include: some of the evidence scientists studied that could provide clues about changes to the earth was left a very long time ago. For example, the older rock farther away from mid-ocean ridges was deposited a long time ago, and scientists would have to use some kind of tool or test to figure out how old the rock was. Mountains existed and scientists had to examine them as they were to look for clues about changes to the earth. Some of the evidence scientists studied that could provide clues about changes to the earth came from inside the earth or deep beneath the ocean. For example, scientists analyzed seismic waves to learn about the layers and materials inside the earth. Scientists saw deep ocean trenches that were the result of a process creating them deep beneath the ocean.

- Have students turn to Activity Pages 1.3 and 1.4 and refer to the displayed Evidence Collector's Chart.
- Remind students that this chart is being used throughout the unit to collect evidence of changes to the earth related to specific causes of geologic change. The evidence represents what geologists examine to determine how powerful forces above and below Earth's surface work to change the earth.
- Have a student read aloud the information under "What is the cause?" in the second row. Explain that students must determine what evidence is in the chapter about tectonic plates moving very slowly due to the heat and pressure in Earth's mantle. (pages 18 and 19)
- Have students refer to the remaining images on Activity Page 1.4. Engage students in a discussion about the images, talking about which image represents evidence of tectonic plate movement as presented in the chapter. (map showing continents as they are today)
- Ensure students understand why the map showing the continents as they are today is the correct image. (The image shows where the continents exist now, which is evidence of tectonic plate movement because the continents are no longer together as Pangaea.)
- Have students cut out the correct image, glue it to the chart in the "What evidence is there?" column, and write the following information for chapter number, key words, and letter in the chart:

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | *Tectonic plates move very slowly due to heat and pressure in Earth's mantle.* | *image: map of continents as they look today*<br><br>*key words:* continents rearranged over time | E |

## Word Work: *Crust* 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "How can you discover what lies beneath Earth's crust?"
2. Say the word *crust* with me.
3. *Crust* means Earth's outermost layer, featuring a rocky surface.
4. Earth's crust is made up of continental crust on land and oceanic crust under water.
5. What are some other examples of a statement you could make about Earth's crust? Be sure to use the word *crust* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "Earth's crust . . . "]
6. What part of speech is the word *crust*?
   » noun

[Use a *Multiple-Meaning Word* activity for follow-up. Tell students the word *crust* is a word with multiple meanings. Share the following with students.]

Meaning #1: crust—Earth's outermost layer, featuring a rocky surface

Meaning #2: crust—the hard outer layer that covers something

I am going to read several sentences. Listen to the context, or the text surrounding *crust*, in the sentence for clues as to which meaning is being used. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #1, hold up one finger. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #2, hold up two fingers.

1. The rocky surface of the mountain is part of the crust.
   » 1
2. Some people throw away the crust from their sandwich but it is my favorite part.
   » 2
3. Oceanic crust is thinner but heavier than continental crust.
   » 1
4. The freezing rain left a crust on the snow already on the ground.
   » 2
5. The pie's crust was lightly browned and crisp.
   » 2

## GRAMMAR

15 minutes

### Materials

- Commas Poster
- Activity Page 2.2

### Introduce Commas

- Tell students that today they will focus on commas.
- Refer to and read the Commas Poster you prepared in advance.
- Tell students that commas are used in sentences for many reasons. Explain that you will focus on three common uses of the comma: in a date, an address or city and state, and items in a series.
- Tell students that first, you will focus on the usage of the comma within a date.
- Explain that when a date is written out with the month, day, and year, a comma is used to set apart the day and the year.
- Refer to the first example on the board/chart paper.

| |
|---|
| His little sister was born on January 2 1992. |

- Explain that the comma should be placed between the day (*2*) and the year (*1992*) in the date. Then insert the comma in the correct location. (*January 2, 1992*)
- Refer to the second example on the board/chart paper.

| |
|---|
| The Declaration of Independence is dated July 4 1776. |

- Ask students where the comma should be placed in the date in this sentence. (between the day, *4*, and the year, *1776*) Then insert the comma in the correct location. (*July 4, 1776*)
- Next, tell students that a comma goes in a particular place within an address or when writing out the name of a city and state.
- Explain that when an address or city and state is written out—or in the case of Washington, DC, the district—a comma is used to set apart the city and the state. Refer to the third example on the board/chart paper.

> During summer vacation, I visited my relatives in Birmingham Alabama.

- Explain that the comma should be placed between the city (*Birmingham*) and the state (*Alabama*). Then insert the comma in the correct location. (*Birmingham, Alabama*) Note for students that if the state abbreviation *AL* had been used instead of the full state name, the comma would still go between the city and the state.
- Refer to the fourth example on the board/chart paper.

> The White House
> 1600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW
> Washington DC 20500

- Explain that a comma should be placed between the city (*Washington*) and the state or district (*DC*). Then insert the comma in the correct location. (*Washington, DC*)
- Tell students that lastly, you will focus on using a comma within items in a series.
- Explain that when multiple items are listed in a series in a sentence, a comma is used to set apart each item in the series.
- Refer to the fifth example on the board/chart paper.

> At their boundaries, tectonic plates can move apart collide or slide sideways past one another.

- Explain that a comma should be placed after each item in the series except for the last item. A comma goes after *apart* and after *collide* but not after *another*. Then insert the commas in the correct locations. (*At their boundaries, tectonic plates can move apart, collide, or slide sideways past one another.*)
- Refer to the sixth sentence on the board/chart paper.

> We went to a museum a park a theater and a restaurant on our trip.

## Note

The comma following *vacation* is provided in the third example because students have not yet been formally taught about the use of commas to separate clauses in sentences. If students ask about the comma following *vacation*, explain that commas can also be used in especially long sentences to separate thoughts or parts from one another.

- Ask students where the commas should be placed in this sentence. (after *museum*, *park*, and *theater*) Then insert the commas in the correct locations. (*We went to a museum, a park, a theater, and a restaurant on our trip.*)
- Have students turn to Activity Page 2.2 and guide them through the first two sentences, making sure they add commas in the appropriate locations. Have students complete Activity Page 2.2 for homework, or if you feel they need more assistance, complete the activity page as a teacher-guided activity.

## MORPHOLOGY 15 minutes

### Materials

- Suffixes Poster
- Activity Page 2.3

### Introduce Suffix –*ly*

- Refer to the Suffixes Poster you displayed in the classroom and read it with students.
- Tell students that the suffix they will study this week is –*ly*. Explain that –*ly* is of Latin origin. Write the suffix –*ly* on the poster and point out that it is pronounced /lee/.
- Tell students that the suffix –*ly* means "in a ______ way" with the blank being the word to which –*ly* is added. Write the meaning of the suffix on the poster.
- Tell students that when –*ly* is added to the end of an adjective, the word becomes an adverb.
- Tell students that adverbs describe verbs. The adverbs created with the suffix –*ly* describe how a verb happens.
- Write *careful* on the board/chart paper. Briefly discuss the meaning of the word and then use it in a sentence. (*Careful* means paying attention to avoid risks, mistakes, or accidents. His parents always tell him to be *careful* and look both ways before he crosses the street.)
- Add the suffix –*ly* to *careful* and have students read the new word; then discuss the meaning of the new word. (*Carefully* means in a careful way or in a way that involves paying attention to avoid risks, mistakes, or accidents.)
- Share the following example of *carefully* used in a sentence.

| |
|---|
| The floor was wet and slippery, so I walked carefully to avoid falling. |

- Have students provide sentences using the word *carefully*. (Answers may vary.)
- Ask students for synonyms of *carefully*. (*wisely*, *cautiously*, *safely*)
- Write *speedy* on the board/chart paper. Briefly discuss the meaning of the word and then use it in a sentence. (*Speedy* means moving fast. I was surprised by how *speedy* the cars actually were as they raced around the track.)

- Explain that when you add the suffix *–ly* to an adjective ending in *–y*, you must first change the *–y* to an *–i*, and then add *–ly*.
- Change the *–y* in *speedy* to an *–i* and add the suffix *–ly*. Have students read the new word; then discuss the meaning of the new word. (*Speedily* means in a speedy way or in a way that is moving fast.)
- Share the following example of *speedily* used in a sentence.

| |
|---|
| I was late for my dentist appointment, so I walked speedily to the office. |

- Have students provide sentences using the word *speedily.* (Answers may vary.)
- Ask students for synonyms of *speedily*. (*quickly*, *swiftly*, *rapidly*)
- Continue in this manner for the remaining *–ly* words, using the following chart as a guide.

| English Root Word | Meaning | Affixed Word | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| accidental | (adjective) happening unexpectedly, not on purpose | accidentally | (adverb) in an accidental way; in a way that is unexpected or not on purpose | I accidentally dropped my new flower vase and broke it. |
| loud | (adjective) noisy | loudly | (adverb) in a loud or noisy way | He was listening to music so loudly that I could hear it even though he was wearing headphones. |
| easy | (adjective) not hard to do or get | easily | (adverb) in an easy way; in a way that is not hard to do or get | We were able to complete the 100-piece puzzle easily so we tried working on a 200-piece puzzle next. |
| temporary | (adjective) lasting for a short or limited time, not permanent | temporarily | (adverb) in a temporary way; in a way that lasts for a short or limited time | The children are staying at their grandparents' house temporarily while their parents travel for work. |

- Have students turn to Activity Page 2.3. Briefly review the directions. Complete the first two sentences together as a class. Have students complete the rest of Activity Page 2.3 for homework, or if you feel they need more assistance, complete the entire activity page as a teacher-guided activity.

## Note

You will not write the information in the shaded columns on the board/chart paper, as that information is intended for use during oral instruction. Complete as many examples as time permits.

## WRITING

15 minutes

### Examine Similes

- Tell students that today they will examine similes.
- Remind students that they have already learned what a simile is—a literary device that compares things using *like or as*.
- Have students turn to Activity Page 2.4. Direct students' attention to the column headers in the chart on Activity Page 2.4. Explain that the first column includes similes from the Reader; the second column asks students to determine what things are being compared using a simile; the third column asks students to explain what the simile means.
- Direct students' attention to the simile from the text in the first row. (*What if continents were like enormous pieces of ice?*)

  **Support** Have students turn to page 9 in the Reader and silently read the first paragraph, which contains this information.

- Ask students what the simile listed in the chart is comparing. Guide them to understand that the simile is comparing continents to pieces of ice floating in a drink. Guide students to write this information in the chart on Activity Page 2.4 under the "What is the simile comparing?" column.
- Then, discuss with students what the simile means. (The rocks that make up the continents are less dense than the rocks on the ocean bottom so Wegener wondered if continents could float above the rocks on the ocean bottom just like ice floats in a drink, which is made with water, because ice is less dense than water.)

  **Support** Remind students that *dense* means thick or heavy. Ice floats in water because it is not as thick or heavy as water.

  **Support** If students need help putting the simile meaning into words, provide the following sentence starter.

  – ______ helps me understand ______ because . . . (Pieces of ice floating in a drink helps me understand continents because the rocks that make up continents are less dense than the rocks on the ocean bottom, so Wegener wondered if continents could float above the rocks on the ocean bottom like ice floats in a drink.)

- Guide students to record the meaning of the simile in the chart on Activity Page 2.4 under the "What does the simile mean?" column.
- Using the following chart, guide students to analyze the remaining similes and fill in the appropriate information. You may wish to have students complete the last simile on their own before discussing the answer.

### Materials

- Activity Page 2.4
- *The Changing Earth*

**Support** You may wish to point out the familiar idea or item in each simile: a rock plunking into water and a seam in a pants leg.

| Page | Simile from Text | What is the simile comparing? | What does the simile mean? |
|---|---|---|---|
| *13* | *An earthquake is a bit like a rock plunking into water.* | an earthquake and a rock in water | Seismic waves travel out through the earth from the source of an earthquake just as a rock is a source of waves traveling out from the spot it hit the water. |
| *16* | *The rift was like a seam in a pants leg, where two pieces of fabric come together.* | a rift in mid-ocean ridges and a seam in a pants leg | The seam in a pants leg dips down where the two pieces of fabric come together so the seam lies a little bit lower than the pieces of fabric. The rift down the center of the mid-ocean ridges, where tectonic plates are moving apart, dips down between the ridges; the rift lies a little bit lower than the ridges themselves. |

### *Wrap Up*

- Ask a student to explain what a simile is.

## TAKE-HOME MATERIAL

### Grammar; Morphology

- Have students complete Activity Pages 2.2 and 2.3 for homework.

### Materials

- Activity Pages 2.2, 2.3

# Lesson 3

## Unit 6: Geology

## CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

✓ Identify Earth's layers and explain the characteristics of each

✓ Explain the theory of plate tectonics and describe the different ways tectonic plates move

✓ Explain how seafloor spreading causes mid-ocean ridges and ocean trenches

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Reading** | | |
| Close Reading: Chapter 2 "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates" | 40 min. | *The Changing Earth*; Activity Page 3.1 |
| Word Work: *Exert* | 5 min. | |
| **Writing** | | |
| Explain a Simile | 45 min. | Activity Page 2.4; writing journal |
| **Take-Home Material** | | |
| Reading | * | Activity Page 3.1 |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to explain how Earth's tectonic plates and layers interact to change the surface of the earth.

**Writing**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to write a detailed explanation of a simile.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

*Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

> Read to closely examine the author's words, sentences, and literary devices for a deeper understanding of how Earth's tectonic plates and layers interact to change the surface of the earth.

*Grammar; Morphology*

- Collect Activity Pages 2.2 and 2.3 to review and grade as there are no grammar or morphology lessons today.

## READING 45 minutes

### Close Reading: Chapter 2 "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates" 40 minutes

*Review* 5 minutes

- Give students a few moments to look back at the headings, images, and captions in Chapter 2, "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates." Allow students to look at the Reader as you discuss the following questions.
  - What are tectonic plates?
    » Tectonic plates are huge rocky slabs, or sections, that are made up of Earth's crust together with the solid top part of the mantle; they are not fixed in place and can move due to heat and pressure in the mantle beneath them.
  - Describe the different ways tectonic plates can move.
    » Tectonic plates can move apart at mid-ocean ridges due to a process called seafloor spreading; they can collide and create mountains as the crust crumples and is pushed higher and higher; an oceanic plate can slide beneath a continental plate in a process called subduction; and tectonic plates can slide past one another after the pressure builds up and the stuck edges break free.

*Review the Chapter* 5 minutes

- Tell students they will reread Chapter 2, "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

> Read to closely examine the author's words, sentences, and literary devices for a deeper understanding of how Earth's tectonic plates and layers interact to change the surface of the earth.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

> How do tectonic plates and Earth's layers interact to change the surface of the earth?

### Materials

- *The Changing Earth*
- Activity Page 3.1

**Note**

Close reading lessons present excellent opportunities to ensure that English learners and other students who need additional support fully comprehend a reading selection.

### *Close Reading*

The practice of close reading involves directing students' attention to specific aspects of a text. The guided reading supports in this close reading of Chapter 2, "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates," are intended to provide this focus and are labeled as follows:

- *VOC* indicates questions or comments that focus on vocabulary to explain meanings or check student understanding and may highlight multiple-meaning words or idioms.
- *SYN* indicates questions or comments that focus on syntax to explain complex sentences and syntactic structure.
- *COMP* indicates questions or comments that focus on students' understanding of the text. These questions require text-based responses and are sequenced to build a gradual understanding of the key details of the text. Students may provide multiple responses using different pieces of evidence, grounding inferences logically in the text.
- *LIT* indicates questions or comments that focus on literary devices, which are techniques an author uses to produce a specific effect such as alliteration, similes, metaphors, etc.

Not all question types will be included in each close reading lesson.

These labels and their explanations are for your reference and are not intended to be shared with students. Also, guided reading supports in brackets are intended to guide you in facilitating discussion and should not be read verbatim to students. Guided reading supports not presented in brackets should be read aloud verbatim.

There are many ways for students to respond to the questions. Vary how you elicit students' responses to promote student engagement. For example:

- Have students work in pairs. Following each question, direct students to consult with their partner about the correct response before one student responds.
- Have students work in small groups of three or four students. Following each question, direct students to consult with others in their group about the correct response before one student responds.
- Following a question, have all students provide a written response before one student responds orally.

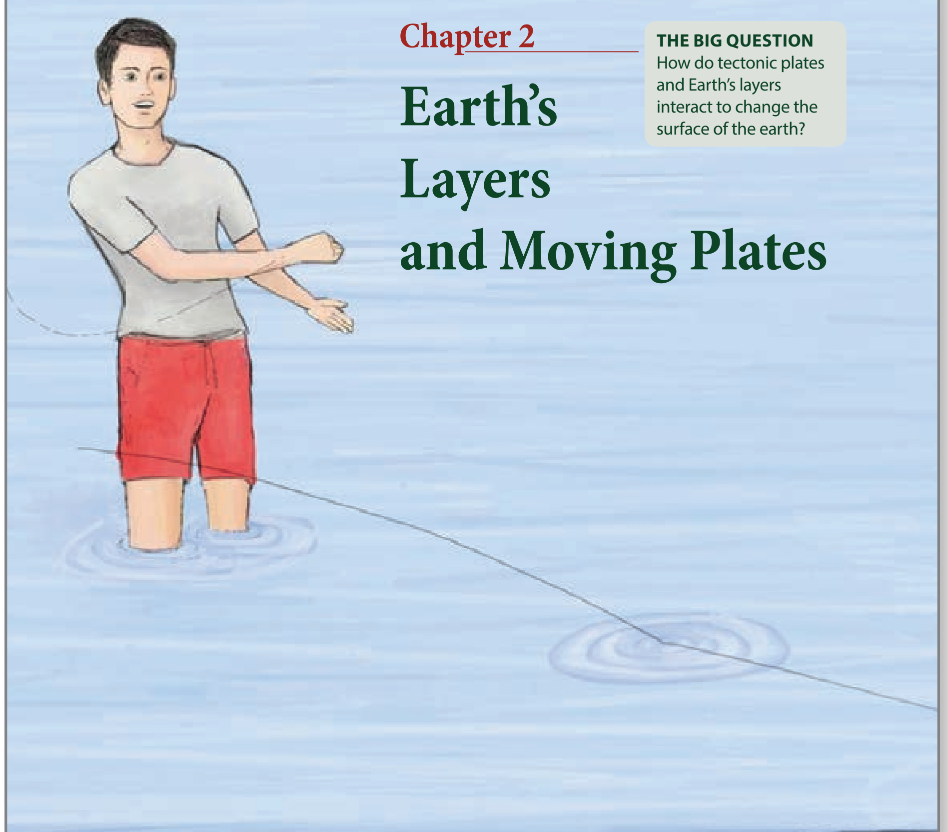
### *Read "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates"* **25 minutes**

- Read the title of the chapter as a class, "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates." As you read portions of the chapter, pause to explain or clarify the text at each point indicated.

Chapter 2

# Earth's Layers and Moving Plates

THE BIG QUESTION
How do tectonic plates and Earth's layers interact to change the surface of the earth?



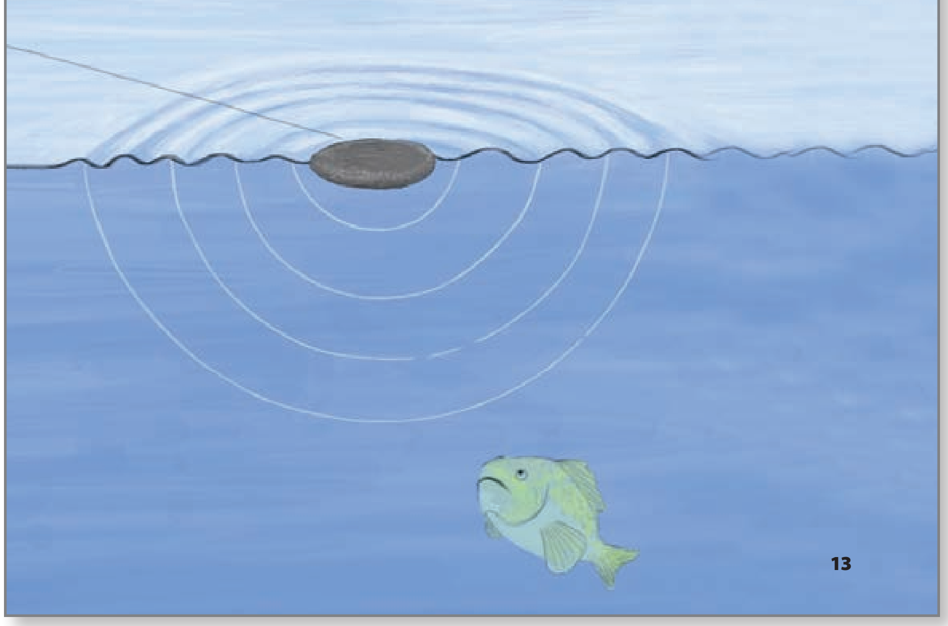
Alfred Wegener's continental drift hypothesis explained many of the "why" questions. It explained why the edges of some continents fit together like puzzle pieces. It explained why continents separated by vast oceans have similar types of rock formations and fossils. What the hypothesis couldn't explain was "how." How could a mass of solid rock as large as Asia or North America move thousands of miles across Earth's surface? It would take an enormously powerful force to do that. Geologists in Wegener's day didn't know of any force on Earth's surface powerful enough to move continents.

**A** As a result, most geologists rejected the idea of continental drift. **B** For decades, Wegener's hypothesis was harshly criticized. Still, a few geologists thought Wegener was on the right track. What if the driving **C** force behind continental drift was below Earth's surface? How can you discover what lies beneath Earth's **crust**? Oddly enough, earthquakes helped scientists answer these questions.

### What Waves Reveal

Have you ever tossed a small rock into a pond? Little waves travel out from the spot where the rock hits the water's surface. Although you can't see them, waves travel through the water below the surface, too.

An earthquake is a bit like a rock plunking into water. During an earthquake, the ground shakes. The shaking is caused by waves of energy traveling out from the earthquake's source through the earth. Scientists call these **seismic waves**. Powerful seismic waves can travel very long distances. They can travel through Earth's crust and deep into its interior.



13

**A** Silently read the first paragraph on page 13.

**B** *VOC Inferential* How does the author's choice of wording explain that many geologists did not support Wegener's hypothesis of continental drift?

» The author uses the word *rejected* to indicate how most geologists responded to Wegener's hypothesis. *Rejected* means refused to believe or accept something. In addition, the author uses the words *harshly criticized* to describe how most geologists felt about Wegener's hypothesis. *Criticized* means expressed disapproval or talked about the problems something has. *Harshly* means in a severe or unkind way. If most geologists rejected Wegener's hypothesis and also harshly criticized it, they refused to believe it was true and they also expressed disapproval or talked about the problems it had in a severe, unkind way.

**C** *VOC Inferential* You have learned an idiom is a phrase that does not make sense using the meaning of the individual words, but that has a meaning of its own. The author uses an idiom in this paragraph, *on the right track*. *On the right track* means doing something right or doing something that is likely to lead to success. What does the author mean by "a few geologists thought Wegener was on the right track"?

» The author notes that a few geologists thought Wegener was on the right track with his idea of continental drift, meaning a few geologists thought Wegener's idea about continental drift was accurate.

**A** Silently read the paragraph that begins *Earth's deepest layer . . .*

**B** *COMP Literal* Which parts of Earth's layers are described as solid and which parts are described as liquid?

» The inner core is solid; both the lower part and the top part of the mantle are solid; the crust is solid; the material in between the lower and upper parts of the mantle is neither liquid nor solid; the outer core is liquid.

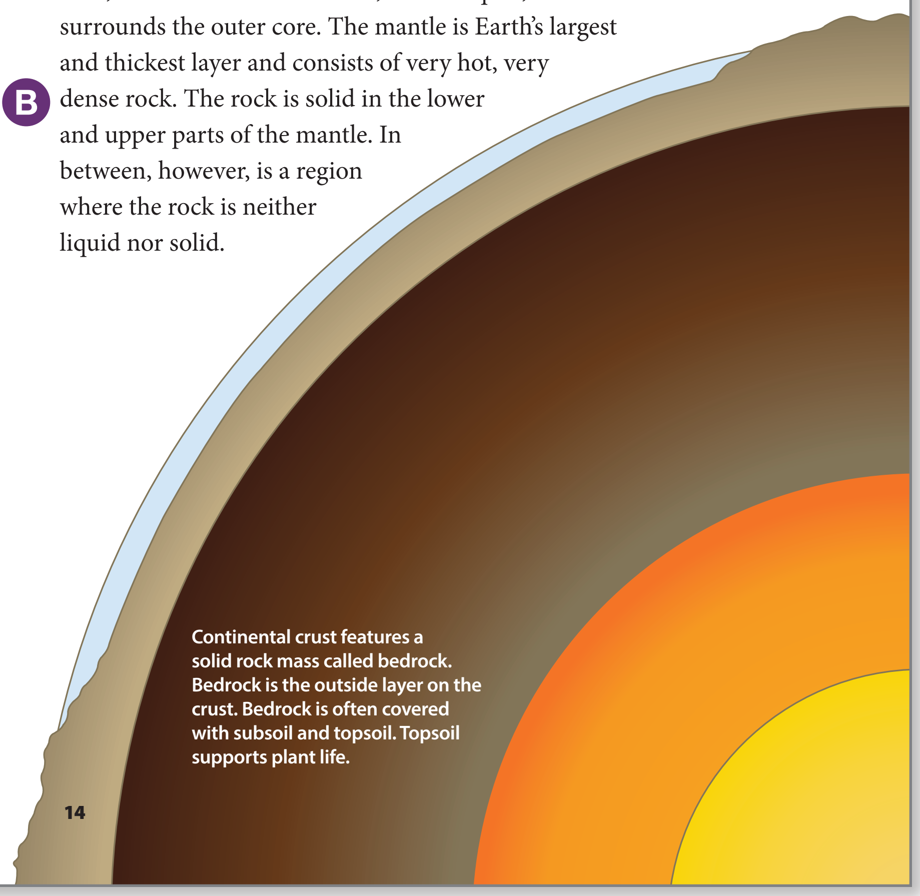
*Inferential* What information in the text helps you determine whether Earth's crust is liquid or solid?

» The words *rocky crust* imply the crust is solid, since we know rocks are solid.

**Support** *Solid* refers to material that takes up a definite amount of space and has a definite shape. A brick or block of wood has a definite shape. *Liquid* refers to material that takes up a definite amount of space but does not have a definite shape; it can change its shape. Water or syrup can change shape.

Around the time Alfred Wegener was thinking about continental drift, scientists were studying Earth's interior using seismic waves. How? Using instruments called **seismographs**, they tracked seismic waves traveling through the planet. Seismic waves move in slightly different ways as they move through different materials. For instance, they travel faster through solids than liquids. Studying seismic waves helped scientists identify Earth's four main layers.

**A** Earth's deepest layer is a solid **inner core** of very hot metal. This metal may be nearly as hot as the sun's surface. The next layer, the **outer core**, is also made of hot metal, but it's liquid, not solid. The **mantle** surrounds the outer core. The mantle is Earth's largest and thickest layer and consists of very hot, very **B** dense rock. The rock is solid in the lower and upper parts of the mantle. In between, however, is a region where the rock is neither liquid nor solid.

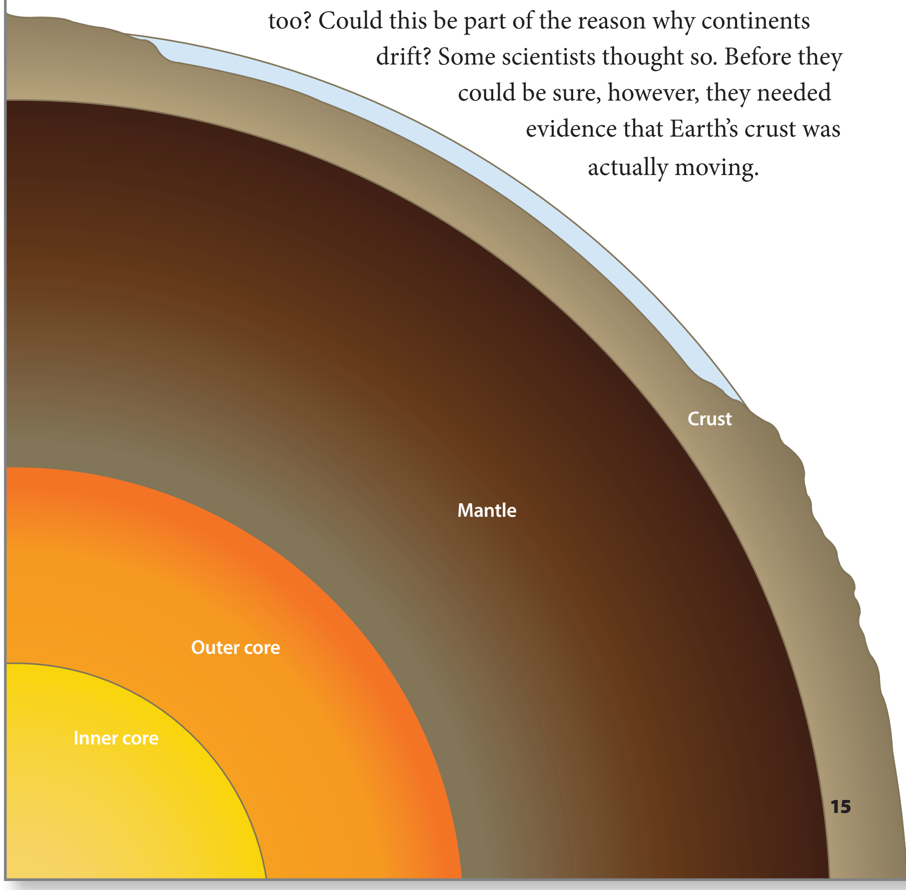


Continental crust features a solid rock mass called bedrock. Bedrock is the outside layer on the crust. Bedrock is often covered with subsoil and topsoil. Topsoil supports plant life.

14

The slow movement and behavior of this material, caused by heat and **pressure**, have an impact on Earth's surface. Above the mantle is Earth's outermost layer, the thin, rocky crust. There are two types of crust: oceanic crust and continental crust. Oceanic crust is covered by ocean water. Most of the continental crust is dry land, but some of the crust around the edges is covered by water. Oceanic crust is thinner but heavier than continental crust.

**C** For scientists interested in continental drift, it was the slowly moving material in the middle of the mantle that caught their attention. **D** Did material movement in the mantle contribute to crust movement, too? Could this be part of the reason why continents drift? Some scientists thought so. Before they could be sure, however, they needed evidence that Earth's crust was actually moving.




15

**C** Silently read the second paragraph on page 15.

**D** *VOC Evaluative* *Caught their attention* is an idiom meaning attracted the interest of. Why do you think the author uses *caught their attention* in the last paragraph?

» Answers may vary, but may include the idea that the only thing scientists noticed as moving was material in the mantle. The movement attracted their interest, making them wonder if the mantle's very slowly moving material led to movement in the crust.

**A** Silently read page 16 and the first paragraph at the top of page 17.

**B** *VOC Inferential* The word *revealed* means made known or brought something into view. Why do you think the author chose to use the word *revealed* when stating *maps revealed long chains of underwater mountains*?

» Because the seafloor is covered with water and because of the water depth, scientists could not see the seafloor without the help of technology. The maps created with the help of technology showed long chains of underwater mountains, which scientists did not previously know were there. The maps made these underwater chains known to scientists.

**C** *LIT Evaluative* The author uses a simile to describe the rift down the center of the mid-ocean ridges. How is the rift like the seam in a pants leg?

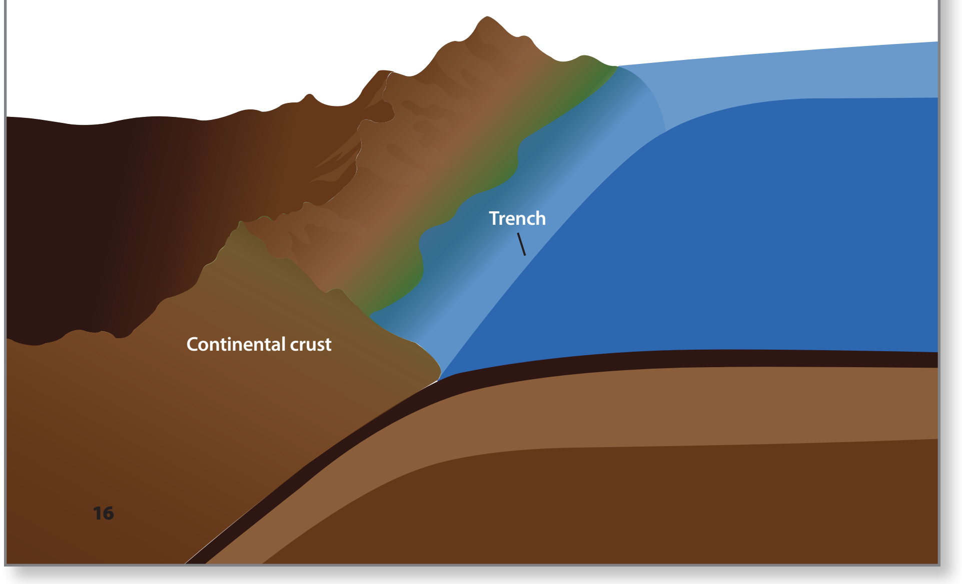
» The seam in a pants leg dips down where the two pieces of fabric come together, so the seam lies a little bit lower than the pieces of fabric. The rift down the center of the mid-ocean ridges, where tectonic plates are moving apart, dips down between the ridges; the rift lies a little bit lower than the ridges themselves.

## Clues from the Seafloor

**A** During the 1940s and 1950s, new technology enabled scientists to make detailed maps of the seafloor. The maps revealed long chains **B** of underwater mountains, called mid-ocean ridges, in all of Earth's oceans. There was a split, or rift, that ran down the center of these **C** ridges. The rift was like a seam in a pants leg, where two pieces of fabric come together.

Scientists dredged up rock samples from mid-ocean ridges. All the rocks were **basalt**. Mid-ocean ridges seemed to be like long, skinny strings of volcanoes running along the seafloor.

Scientists collected rocks at various distances from the rift along a mid-ocean ridge. They discovered that rocks from the edge of the rift had formed very recently. Rocks farther away from the rift were older. The farther scientists got from the rift, on either side, the older the rocks were.



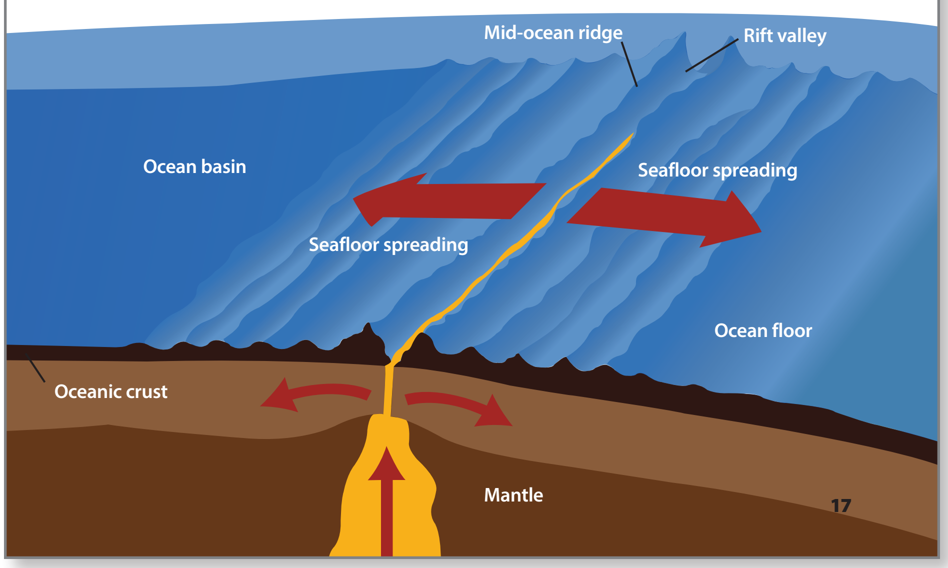

16

The scientists concluded that mid-ocean ridges form along huge **D** cracks in Earth's crust. **Magma** beneath the crust erupts through these cracks as **lava**. The lava cools into basalt, creating new oceanic crust on either side of the rift.

As new crust is added, older crust gets pushed outward, away from the rift. Inch by inch, year after year, oceanic crust spreads outward into ocean **basins** on either side of mid-ocean ridges. Scientists called this process seafloor spreading. They theorized that as the seafloor slowly spreads, continents bordering the ocean slowly move apart. Here was one explanation of how continents could drift!

Scientists knew the earth wasn't getting bigger. If new crust forms along mid-ocean ridges, then old crust must be destroyed somewhere else. Scientists guessed that deep **ocean trenches** are places where crust is sinking down into the mantle.

In the 1960s, scientists formed a new **theory** about how Earth's surface changes. They called the theory **plate tectonics**.




**D** *COMP Literal* You have learned that *conclude* means to decide something or form an opinion based on information you have. What did scientists conclude about mid-ocean ridges?

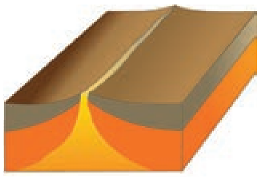
» Mid-ocean ridges form along huge cracks in Earth's crust.

*COMP Evaluative* What information on page 16 provides evidence for the scientists' conclusion?

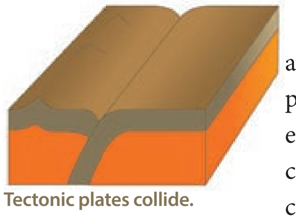
» Maps revealed long chains of underwater mountains or mid-ocean ridges; these ridges have a rift or split that runs down their centers; rock samples taken from various distances from the rift show that the rocks farther away from the rift are older.

## A Matter of Time

At some boundaries, tectonic plates are moving apart. As the plates separate, molten rock flows up from the mantle into the space between them, creating new crust. Mid-ocean ridges are an example of this type of plate interaction. Tectonic plates along the mid-ocean ridge in the Atlantic Ocean are moving apart at a rate of about 0.8 to 2 inches per year. That may not seem like much, but it adds up. Two hundred million years ago, the landmasses of North America and Europe were joined. So were South America and Africa. Thanks to separating plates, these continents now lie on opposite sides of a vast ocean.

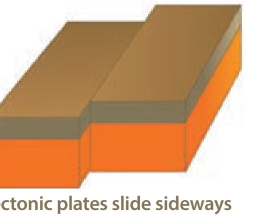


Tectonic plates move apart.



Tectonic plates collide.

At other plate boundaries, tectonic plates are **colliding**, or crashing together. In some places, colliding plates slowly crash into each other. The crust at their edges gradually crumples and is pushed higher and higher, creating mountains. In other places, one of the colliding plates slides under the other. Two plates are colliding this way along the western coast of South America. A heavier oceanic plate is sliding under a lighter continental plate. Scientists call this process **subduction**. Subduction has created a deep ocean trench off the coast of Chile and Peru. It has also had a role in creating the towering Andes Mountains along the western edge of South America. Similar plate interactions have formed mountain ranges throughout Earth's long history.



Tectonic plates slide sideways past one another.

Finally, tectonic plates slide sideways past one another. It's never a smooth process. Plate edges press together hard. They often get stuck while the

20

pressure keeps building. Eventually the pressure gets too great. The stuck edges break free, causing the plates to jerk past each other.

### Providing the Answers

**A** The theory of plate tectonics answered many questions in geology. It explained how Wegener's Pangaea broke apart. It explained how the continents have been slowly rearranged over millions of years. The movement of the plates also explained mid-ocean ridges, deep ocean trenches, patterns in the locations of mountains, and many other features on Earth's surface. The theory has become the cornerstone of modern geology. **B**

As plates move, interesting things happen. Most of the time, they happen incredibly slowly. Sometimes, though, the effects of plate movements are sudden and dramatic. Think earthquakes and volcanoes!

### Core Conclusions

You may never have heard of the Danish scientist Inge Lehmann. Among seismologists, however, she is famous. Around 1900, scientists thought the earth had just three layers: an outer crust, a solid mantle, and a liquid core. Lehmann studied seismograph records of earthquakes. She analyzed how seismic waves changed as they traveled through Earth's interior. Lehmann collected thousands of records organized in boxes—there were no computers back then! She saw patterns in how seismic waves behaved as they moved through Earth. Lehmann concluded that Earth's core has two parts: a liquid outer core and a solid inner core. In 1936, she announced her findings and changed our view of Earth!

21

**A** Silently read the first paragraph under the heading "Providing the Answers."

**B** *VOC Evaluative* *Cornerstone* means foundation or an idea of basic importance that supports something. What does the author mean by the statement *The theory has become the cornerstone of modern geology*?

» Answers may vary, but could include: plate tectonics is now considered a theory of basic importance to the area of study called geology; plate tectonics is the foundation that supports the study of geology, and the theory occupies an important place in the study of geology; the theory of plate tectonics is the basic idea that explains how and why the earth changes.

## Note

Question 1 and Activity Page 3.1 relate to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* — 5 minutes

- Use the following question to discuss the chapter.

1. *Evaluative* Why might the earth's mantle be the most important layer for scientists to study for understanding changes on the earth's surface?
   » Answers may vary but should include: the earth's mantle has three layers, the middle of which contains a slowly moving material. This material is what causes tectonic plates to slowly move over time, changing the earth's surface. Magma erupts from the mantle through cracks in the earth's crust, creating new crust around rifts along mid-ocean ridges. The new crust pushes old crust outward, resulting in seafloor spreading. In addition, the material in the mantle exerts enormous pressure on tectonic plates, slowly forcing them to move. Sometimes tectonic plates collide, crumpling their edges and pushing crust higher. Other times, one plate slides under another plate, which is called subduction. The mantle contains the slowly moving material that causes tectonic plates to move, which is an important feature of the earth, so studying the mantle is an important thing for scientists to do.

- Tell students they will take home Activity Page 3.1 to read and complete.

## Word Work: *Exert* — 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "As the material in the mantle slowly moves, it exerts enormous pressure on the overlying plates."
2. Say the word *exert* with me.
3. *Exert* means to cause a force to be felt or have an effect.
4. The backhoe had to exert a lot of force to lift and move the large boulder to a new location.
5. What are some other examples of exerting a lot of effort or force? Be sure to use the word *exert* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "______ exerted a lot of effort to ______."]
6. What part of speech is the word *exert*?
   » verb

[Use a *Discussion* activity for follow-up.] Talk with your partner about a time when you, or someone you know, exerted a lot of force or effort to create an effect. Be sure to use the word *exert* in complete sentences as you discuss this with your partner.

## WRITING 45 minutes

### Explain a Simile

*Review Similes* 5 minutes

- Have students explain what a simile is. (A simile is a literary device that compares things using *like or as.)*
- Have students turn to Activity Page 2.4 and explain the similes they analyzed during the previous lesson.

**Support** Use the following chart as needed to help students explain the similes they analyzed.

| Page | Simile from Text | What is the simile comparing? | What does the simile mean? |
|---|---|---|---|
| *9* | *What if continents were like enormous pieces of ice?* | continents in oceans and pieces of ice in a drink | The rocks that make up continents are less dense than the rocks on the ocean bottom so Wegener wondered if continents could float above the rocks on the ocean bottom just like ice floats in a drink, which is made with water, because ice is less dense than water. |
| *13* | *An earthquake is a bit like a rock plunking into water.* | an earthquake and a rock in water | Seismic waves travel out through the earth from the source of an earthquake just as a rock is a source of waves traveling out from the spot it hit the water. |
| *16* | *The rift was like a seam in a pants leg, where two pieces of fabric come together.* | a rift in mid-ocean ridges and a seam in a pants leg | The seam in a pants leg dips down where the two pieces of fabric come together so the seam lies a little bit lower than the pieces of fabric. The rift down the center of the mid-ocean ridges, where tectonic plates are moving apart, dips down between the ridges; the rift lies a little bit lower than the ridges themselves. |

### Materials

- Activity Page 2.4
- writing journal

*Model Writing a Detailed Explanation of a Simile* **20 minutes**

- Tell students you will model writing a more detailed explanation of a simile analyzed during the previous lesson. The explanation will expand upon the meaning of the simile.
- Explain that you will refer to Activity Page 2.4 to write a detailed explanation of the simile comparing continents to pieces of ice. The explanation will be in complete sentences. Each sentence will have a subject, predicate, capitalization, punctuation, and will express a complete idea.
- Tell students you will begin your explanation by stating what the Reader says. Direct students to look at the "Simile from Text" column. (*What if continents were like enormous pieces of ice?*)
- Write the first sentence of your explanation of the simile on the board/chart paper:

> In the Reader, the author says Wegener wondered, "What if continents were like enormous pieces of ice?"

- Tell students the next sentence in your explanation should tell what two things the simile compares. Direct students to look at the "What is the simile comparing?" column. (continents and pieces of ice in a drink)
- Write the second sentence of your explanation on the board/chart paper:

> This is a simile comparing continents to pieces of ice in a drink.

- Tell students the third sentence in your explanation should provide information about the familiar idea or item that the geology concept is being compared to in the Reader. Direct students to look at the "What does the simile mean?" column. (ice floats in a drink, which is made with water, because ice is less dense than water)
- Write the third sentence of your explanation on the board/chart paper:

> We know that ice floats in a drink, which is made with water, because ice is less dense than water.

**Support** Remind students that *dense* means thick or heavy. Ice floats in a drink that is made with water because ice is not as thick or heavy as water.

- Tell students the next part of your explanation should connect the familiar idea or item to the geology concept in the Reader. It should tell how the familiar idea or item has helped you better understand the concept in the Reader. Direct students to again look at the "What does the simile mean?" column. (the rocks that make up continents are less dense than the rocks on the ocean bottom so Wegener wondered if continents could float over the rocks on the ocean bottom)

**Challenge** You may give students the option of elaborating on this explanation by showing, or using details to create a clear picture for readers.

- Write the next part of your explanation on the board/chart paper:

| |
|---|
| Thinking about ice floating in a drink helps us understand continents because the rocks that make up the continents are less dense than the rocks on the ocean bottom. Wegener wondered if continents could float above the ocean bottom like pieces of ice float in a drink. |

- Tell students that the last sentence in your explanation should explain what we now know about the concept in the Reader.
- Write the last sentence of your explanation on the board/chart paper:

| |
|---|
| We now know that this was part of Wegener's hypothesis about continental drift. |

- Once you have completed your explanation of the simile, it should appear on the board/chart paper as follows:

| |
|---|
| In the Reader, the author says Wegener wondered, "What if continents were like enormous pieces of ice?" This is a simile comparing continents to pieces of ice in a drink. We know that ice floats in a drink, which is made with water, because ice is less dense than water. Thinking about ice floating in a drink helps us understand continents because the rocks that make up the continents are less dense than the rocks on the ocean bottom. Wegener wondered if continents could float above the ocean bottom like pieces of ice float in a drink. We now know that this was part of Wegener's hypothesis about continental drift. |

### *Draft a Detailed Explanation of a Simile* — 20 minutes

- Tell students that now they will draft their own detailed explanation of one of the other similes with a partner. Remind students that the explanation should expand upon the meaning of the simile.
- Assign partners and have students open their writing journals. Using your modeled explanation of a simile as a guide and Activity Page 2.4 as a reference, have students complete their own detailed explanation of a simile with a partner, focusing on one of the other similes analyzed during the previous lesson: an earthquake and a rock in water or a rift in mid-ocean ridges and a seam in a pants leg.

**Support** You may wish to write sentence starters on the board/chart paper for each of the five sentences of the explanation:

| |
|---|
| In the Reader, . . . |
| This is a simile comparing . . . |
| We know . . . |
| This helps us understand . . . |
| We now know . . . |

**Challenge** Give students who are ready and able the opportunity to draft a detailed explanation individually instead of with a partner.

**Challenge** You may offer students the option of creating their own simile related to a concept that was not discussed in the previous lesson, such as plate tectonics or subduction. Once students create their own simile, they should draft a detailed explanation of the simile. This explanation should expand upon the concept they selected as well as the associated simile they created.

- Circulate and check in with students as they use Activity Page 2.4 to write complete sentences, providing support and guidance as needed.

*Wrap Up*

- As time allows, encourage students to share their completed explanation of a simile aloud.

**Feedback** Provide reinforcing or corrective feedback about starting the explanation with the statement from the Reader, clearly naming the two things compared in the simile and how the simile helps them understand the geology concept from the Reader.

- Collect the drafted explanations of a simile to review and monitor student progress. Written feedback may include comments such as:
  - This clearly explains the purpose of the simile.
  - This identifies the two concepts compared in the simile. Is there more information you could add about how the two concepts are compared?

## TAKE-HOME MATERIAL

### Reading

- Have students take home Activity Page 3.1 to read to a family member to build fluency, and then use it to complete the activity.

### Materials

- Activity Page 3.1

# Lesson 4

## Unit 6: Geology

## CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Describe faults and the role they play in earthquakes
- ✓ Describe two ways scientists measure the intensity of earthquakes
- ✓ Explain how earthquakes and tsunamis are related

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Reading** | | |
| Whole Group: Chapter 3 "Earth's Shakes and Quakes" | 40 min. | Answer Key for Activity Page 3.1; Activity Pages 3.1, 4.1, 4.2; *The Changing Earth* |
| Word Work: *Fault* | 5 min. | |
| **Grammar** | | |
| Practice Commas | 15 min. | Commas Poster; Activity Page 4.3 |
| **Morphology** | | |
| Practice Suffix *–ly* | 15 min. | Suffixes Poster; Activity Page 4.4 |
| **Writing** | | |
| Introduce an Informational Pamphlet | 15 min. | Earthquake Pamphlet; *The Changing Earth* |
| **Take-Home Material** | | |
| Reading; Grammar; Morphology | * | Activity Pages 4.2–4.4 |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to explain what causes earthquakes, how scientists measure earthquakes, and how faults and tsunamis relate to earthquakes.

**Grammar**: By the end of this lesson, students will have had practice using commas in dates, addresses, city and state, and items in a series.

**Morphology**: By the end of this lesson, students will have had additional practice distinguishing between root words and words with the suffix *–ly* and using those words correctly in sentences.

**Writing**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to describe an informational pamphlet and identify a specific pamphlet's purpose and intended audience.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

### *Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

| |
|---|
| Read to understand how earthquakes occur and how they are connected to other natural forces. |

### *Grammar*

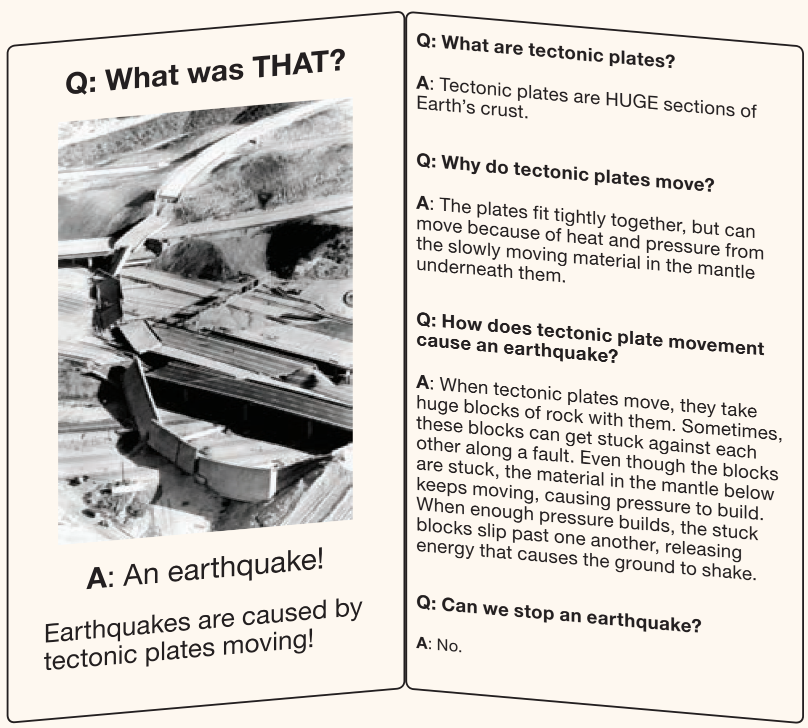
- Write the following examples on the board/chart paper.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. | My favorite summer activities are swimming in the pool picking peaches and going to the beach. |
| 2. | Alfred Wegener was born on November 1 1880. |
| 3. | 60 E Broadway<br>Bloomington MN 55425 |

- Determine student pairs for completing the first portion of Activity Page 4.3.

### *Writing*

- Create an Earthquake Pamphlet with the following content to display during the writing lesson. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit.



## READING 45 minutes

### Whole Group: Chapter 3 "Earth's Shakes and Quakes" 40 minutes

*Review* 5 minutes

- Using the Answer Key at the back of this Teacher Guide, review student responses to Activity Page 3.1, which was assigned for homework in the previous reading lesson.
- Remind students that they read about tectonic plates in the previous lesson and for homework. Ask students the following question:
  - What does the theory of plate tectonics state?
    - » The theory of plate tectonics states that huge, rocky slabs of Earth's crust and the top of the mantle are broken up into sections called plates. Tectonic plates fit tightly together and slowly move across Earth's surface.
- Remind students that at the end of Activity Page 3.1, Sam said:

> "Hmmm . . . I wonder if earthquakes have anything to do with moving tectonic plates?"

- Ask students what they think about what Sam said.
  - Answers may vary. Students are not expected to know the correct answer. This question is meant to get students thinking about whether earthquakes and moving tectonic plates are related and to get students to think about ways tectonic plates might affect Earth's surface, which they will read about in this lesson. The correct answer need not be shared with students; explain that students will find out the answer in this reading lesson.

*Introduce the Chapter* 10 minutes

- Tell students they will read Chapter 3, "Earth's Shakes and Quakes."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Preview the core vocabulary words before reading the chapter.
- Begin by telling students the first vocabulary word they will encounter in this chapter is *eyewitness*.
- Have them find the word on page 22 of the Reader. Explain that each vocabulary word is bolded the first time it appears in the chapter.
- Explain that the glossary contains definitions of all the vocabulary words in this Reader. Have students refer to the glossary at the back of the Reader, locate *eyewitness*, and then have a student read the definition.

### Materials

- Answer Key for Activity Page 3.1
- Activity Pages 3.1, 4.1, 4.2
- *The Changing Earth*

- Explain the following:
  - The part of speech follows each word in an abbreviated format as follows: noun–*n*.; verb–v.; adjective–*adj*.; adverb–*adv*.
  - Alternate forms of the word appearing in the chapter may follow the definition. They may be a different part of speech than the original word.
- Have students reference Activity Page 4.1 while you read each word and its meaning noting that:
  - The page number (for the first occurrence of the word in the chapter) appears in bold print after the definition.
  - Words are listed in the order in which they appear in the chapter.

1. **eyewitness**, ***n.*** a person who has seen something happen and is able to describe it (**22**)
2. **experiment**, ***n.*** a scientific test to try out something in order to learn about it (**24**)
3. **fault**, ***n.*** a crack in Earth's crust (**faults**) (**24**)
4. **heave**, ***v.*** **1.** to move up and down over and over; **2.** to lift, pull, push, or throw with a lot of effort (**24**)
5. **trigger**, ***v.*** to cause something to start or happen (**triggered**) (**25**)
6. **pinpoint**, ***v.*** to figure out the exact location of something (**27**)
7. **magnitude**, ***n.*** an earthquake's strength (**28**)
8. **aftershock**, ***n.*** a smaller, weaker earthquake that often follows a main earthquake event (**aftershocks**) (**29**)
9. **tsunami**, ***n.*** a gigantic wave of seawater caused by an earthquake in oceanic crust (**tsunamis**) (**30**)
10. **surge**, ***v.*** to move forward quickly, suddenly, and with force (**surges**) (**30**)

| Vocabulary Chart for Chapter 3 "Earth's Shakes and Quakes" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3<br>Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2<br>General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | fault<br>magnitude<br>aftershock<br>tsunami | eyewitness<br>experiment<br>heave<br>trigger<br>pinpoint<br>surge |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | magnitud<br>tsunami | experimento |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | fault<br>magnitude | heave |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | lost their lives | |

- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

> Read to understand how earthquakes occur and how they are connected to other natural forces.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

> What happens beneath Earth's surface to cause earthquakes?

### *Read "Earth's Shakes and Quakes"* — 20 minutes

Guided reading supports in brackets are intended to guide you in facilitating discussion and should not be read verbatim to students. Guided reading supports not in brackets should be read aloud verbatim.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Francesco Petrarch | /fran*ches*koe/ /pe*trark/ |

**A** [Have students read pages 22 and 23 silently.]

**B** *Inferential* What is a synonym for the word *penned* in the first sentence?

» *wrote*

**C** *Literal* How does the author describe earthquakes here?

» The author describes earthquakes as violent natural disasters that strike without warning.

## Chapter 3

# Earth's Shakes and Quakes

**THE BIG QUESTION**
What happens beneath Earth's surface to cause earthquakes?

A

B Italian writer Francesco Petrarch penned the following **eyewitness** account in the Middle Ages. Can you guess what he was writing about?

*"The floor trembled under my feet; when the books crashed into each other and fell down I was frightened and hurried to leave the room. Outside I saw the servants and many other people running anxiously to and fro. All faces were pale."*

Francesco Petrarch

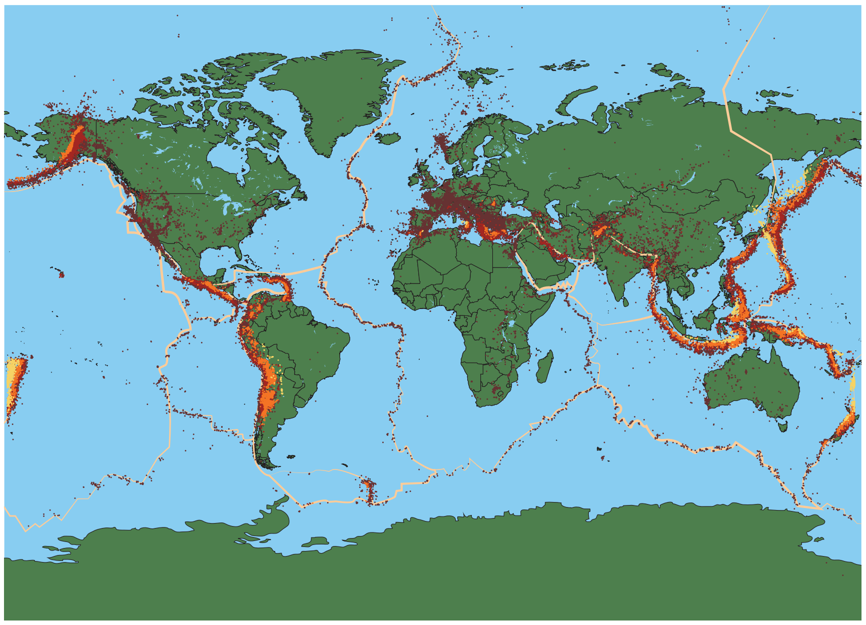
If you said an earthquake, you're correct! People in northern Italy had good reason to be pale and frightened on a winter's day in 1348 CE. On that day, a large earthquake struck. Thousands of people lost their lives.

C Earthquakes are violent natural disasters that strike without warning. Suddenly, the ground begins to shake. Furniture topples,

22

objects tumble from shelves, and buildings may even collapse. In 1348 CE, people had no idea what caused earthquakes. Today we know that earthquakes are the result of powerful natural forces at work in Earth's crust and mantle.

As you read in Chapter 2, scientists developed the theory of plate tectonics in the 1960s. The theory explains how Earth's surface and interior change over very long periods of time. Some plates are pulling apart at their boundaries, other plates are colliding, and still others are sliding past each other. A lot happens at plate boundaries, including most earthquakes. In fact, one of the easiest ways to locate plate boundaries is to determine where earthquakes are occurring! **D**



Locations of plate boundaries and past earthquake epicenters

23

**D** *Inferential* Why are plate boundaries important?

» Plate boundaries are important because of all the movement happening at them. At plate boundaries, some plates are pulling apart, some are colliding, some are sliding past each other, and most earthquakes happen at these boundaries.

**Support** [Remind students that the crust is the outside layer of the earth, and the mantle, which is made up of very hot rock, is underneath it. If necessa ry, also remind them that plate tectonics is a theory, or explanation based on evidence, about how the earth's crust and the solid part of the mantle are made up of pieces that fit together, but move against each other.]

**A** [Read the first paragraph aloud. Lead students through the experiment, demonstrating it for students as necessary.]

**B** [Have students read the rest of page 24 and page 25 silently.]

**C** *Inferential* What role do faults play in earthquakes?

» Faults are the places where earthquakes originate, or start from. When blocks of rock move against each other at a fault, a huge amount of built-up pressure is released as energy, traveling in all directions as seismic waves. Seismic waves shake the ground, and this event is called an earthquake.

**Support** What are faults and where do they occur?

» Faults are cracks in Earth's crust. Most faults occur along the boundaries of tectonic plates.

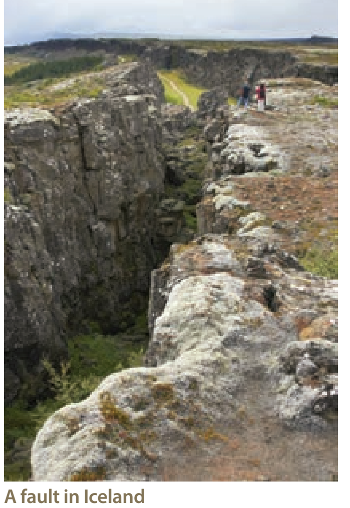
**Support** What is an earthquake?

» An earthquake is the shaking of the ground caused by seismic waves.

## Forces and Faults

**A** Try a little **experiment**. Extend your arms out in front of you parallel to the floor and put your hands together. Keep your palms and fingers flat against each other. Now start pressing your hands together. Gradually increase the pressure. When you can't press any harder, let your right hand quickly slide forward. That sudden slipping is what happens at a **fault**.

**B** A fault is a fracture, or crack, in Earth's crust. Most faults occur along the boundaries of tectonic plates. As plates move, huge rough blocks **C** of rock along either side of a fault get stuck against each other. Beneath the plates, however, material in the mantle keeps moving. This material exerts more and more pressure on the plates to also keep moving. Pressure builds along the stuck edges of the fault. Think of your hands as these edges, pressing harder and harder together. The pressure builds until the stuck blocks of rock suddenly break and slip past one another. As they do, a tremendous burst of energy is released. How much energy? Well, all the energy that accumulated in the rocks during the time they were stuck and couldn't move.


A fault in Iceland

The Pacific Plate is Earth's largest tectonic plate. It lies beneath the Pacific Ocean. Imagine how much energy it takes to move that gigantic rocky plate plus all the water on top of it. Then imagine all that energy being released at a fault in just a moment. Such a colossal burst of energy travels outward from the fault in all directions as seismic waves. Seismic waves make the ground **heave** and shake. This violent shaking is what we call an earthquake.

24

## San Andreas Fault

In the United States, one of the most famous faults is the San Andreas Fault in California. It lies along the boundary between two tectonic plates that are slowly moving past each other. The movement, however, is far from steady. For years at a time, blocks of rock bordering the San Andreas Fault stay stuck. Pressure slowly builds. Then—wham!—they slip and **trigger** an earthquake. The 1906 San Francisco earthquake was one of the worst in American history. The sudden slip that triggered it was huge. It caused rocks on either side of the fault to move more than 20 feet in just seconds!

Effects of the 1906 San Francisco earthquake

25

D

**D** *Literal* What visible effects of the 1906 San Francisco earthquake do you see in the image on page 25?

» The image on page 25 shows a fence that was once joined in a line was split apart and became separated by several feet. The image supports the statement from the text, *It caused rocks on either side of the fault to move more than 20 feet in just seconds!*

**A** [Have students read pages 26 and 27 silently.]

**B** *Inferential* The author compares an earthquake's focus to a heart. Why do you think the author does this?

» The author compares the earthquake's focus to a heart as a way of showing that the focus is an important part of the earthquake. The focus is the source of the earthquake, where it begins. The author is showing that, in the same way a heart is an important part of the body, so important that the body could not function without it and could be considered the source of life in the body, the earthquake's focus is an important part of an earthquake, the source of the earthquake in the earth.

**Support** [Discuss with students that the heart is located in the center of the body and is connected to the whole body. It is the place from which blood flows to the rest of the body. It could be considered the part of the body that makes the whole body work, the source of life in the body.]

**Support** What is an earthquake's focus?

» An earthquake's focus is the place in Earth's crust where blocks of rock move along a fault and is also the source of seismic waves. It is the place from which seismic waves move outward.

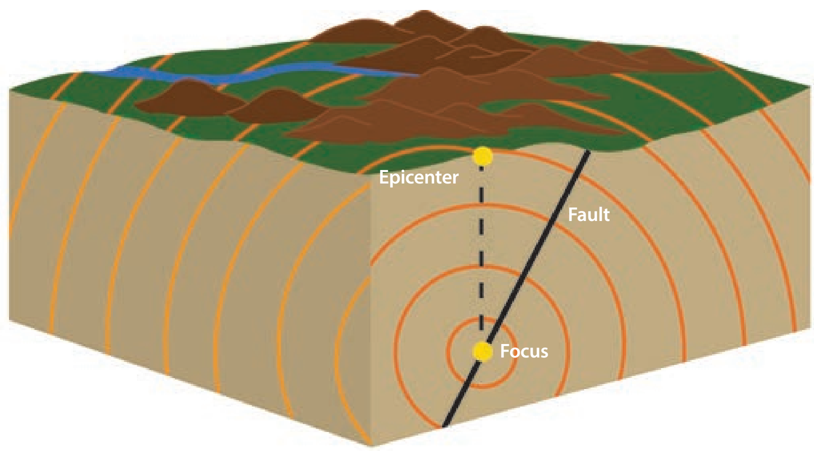
**Support** [Have students examine and discuss the image on page 26 to ensure they understand the difference between an earthquake's focus and its epicenter.]

**A** 
## Shake, Heave, Sway, and Lurch

All earthquakes begin with huge blocks of rock moving along faults. The place in Earth's crust where this happens is an earthquake's **B** **focus**. Think of it as the earthquake's heart, the source of seismic waves. The focus may be deep in the crust or close to the surface.

The **epicenter** is the point on Earth's surface directly above an earthquake's focus. Some kinds of seismic waves produced by earthquakes travel deep into Earth's interior. Surface waves, however, are seismic waves that are first noticeable at the epicenter. During an earthquake, surface waves are what make the ground shake, heave, sway, and lurch. They are the cause of most earthquake damage.

In Chapter 2, you read about seismographs, which scientists use to record the shaking of Earth's surface caused by seismic waves. The time it takes for seismic waves to reach a seismograph is important in determining where the earthquake occurred. The longer that seismic waves take to reach a seismograph, the farther away the earthquake is from the seismograph.




The place in Earth's crust where an earthquake begins is its focus. Its epicenter is the point on Earth's surface directly above the focus.

26

## Seismographs: Now and Then

A modern seismograph, also called a seismometer, records the shaking of Earth's surface caused by seismic waves. A **seismogram** is the record a seismograph makes. A seismogram shows seismic waves as jagged up-and-down lines. Scientists compare multiple seismograms in order to **pinpoint** an earthquake's epicenter.

C

Zhang Heng, a Chinese scientist, invented the first-known seismograph around 132 CE. It didn't look anything like a modern seismograph. It was shaped like a large vase. The vase had eight dragons around the outside, each looking downward and holding a ball loosely in its mouth. Below the eight dragons were open-mouthed frogs. When an earthquake struck, the balls fell into the frogs' mouths below. Depending on which balls fell, it was possible to estimate the distance and direction to the earthquake's source.

D


Modern seismograph


First-known seismograph

27

**C** *Evaluative* Why do scientists compare multiple seismograms to determine an earthquake's epicenter?

» Scientists compare multiple seismograms to look for patterns that help them determine how far away the earthquake is from each seismograph. Having multiple seismograms provides information about an earthquake from seismographs at different distances from the potential epicenter. Scientists can look at patterns across seismograms to help them pinpoint an earthquake's epicenter, or the point on Earth's surface directly above the earthquake's focus or source.

**D** *Inferential* How are the first seismograph and the modern seismograph similar?

» The two are similar in that they both were created to help people determine where earthquakes occur. The first seismograph was used to help estimate the distance and direction to an earthquake's source. The modern seismograph is used to help pinpoint an earthquake's epicenter.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Richter | /rik*ter/ |

**A** [Have students read pages 28 and 29 silently.]

**B** *Literal* What are two ways scientists measure the intensity of earthquakes?

» Scientists measure the intensity of earthquakes using seismographs and the Richter scale.

**A** 
## Measuring an Earthquake's Strength

Scientists also use seismographs to measure an earthquake's strength, or **magnitude**. During a small earthquake, Earth's surface may shake only a little. The seismogram shows these relatively low-energy seismic waves as little wiggles. During a big earthquake, Earth's surface shakes a lot harder. The seismogram shows these high-energy waves as big zigzags.

**B** The Richter scale is another way scientists measure an earthquake's magnitude. The Richter scale assigns a number to an earthquake based on the largest seismic wave recorded for that earthquake. The higher the Richter scale number, the stronger the earthquake. For example, a magnitude 5.0 earthquake on the Richter scale causes 10 times as much ground shaking as a magnitude 4.0 earthquake. A magnitude 6.0 earthquake causes 10 times more shaking than a 5.0, and so on.

Damage caused by earthquakes

28

The Modified Mercalli Intensity Scale also uses numbers to measure earthquake strength. The numbers are based on survivors' descriptions and the amount of earthquake damage. The higher the number, the stronger the earthquake. The Mercalli scale is less scientific than the Richter scale, as few people describe events in the same way.

Pressure along faults can build up for years, even centuries. When blocks of rock along a fault finally move, the resulting earthquake happens very quickly. Most earthquakes last just a few seconds. Still, the trouble may not be over after the ground stops shaking. Large earthquakes are often followed by **aftershocks**. Aftershocks are like **C** mini-earthquakes. They are usually smaller and weaker than the main earthquake event. Aftershocks happen as blocks of rock along the newly slipped fault settle into place.

| Modified Mercalli Scale | | Richter Scale | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | Felt by almost no one | 2.5 | Generally not felt, but recorded on seismometers. |
| II | Felt by very few people | | |
| III | Noticed by many, but they often do not realize it is an earthquake. | 3.5 | Felt by many people |
| IV | Felt indoors by many; feels like a truck has struck the building. | | |
| V | Felt by nearly everyone; many people awakened. Swaying trees and poles may be observed. | | |
| VI | Felt by all; many people run outdoors. Furniture moved; slight damage occurs. | 4.5 | Some local damage may occur. |
| VII | Everyone runs outdoors. Poorly built structures considerably damaged; slight damage elsewhere. | | |
| VIII | Specially designed structures damaged slightly; others collapse. | 6.0 | A destructive earthquake |
| IX | All buildings considerably damaged; many shift off foundations. Noticeable cracks in ground. | | |
| X | Many structures destroyed. Ground is badly cracked. | 7.0 | A major earthquake |
| XI | Almost all structures fall. Very wide cracks in ground. | | |
| XII | Total destruction. Waves seen on ground surfaces; objects are tumbled and tossed. | 8.0 and up | Great earthquakes |

**D**

**The Mercalli scale is less scientific than the Richter scale.**

29

**C** *Literal* What is the difference between an earthquake and an aftershock?

» An earthquake is what happens when blocks of rock at a fault finally give way and a great amount of pressure is released. An aftershock is what happens as blocks of rock along the newly slipped fault settle into place. An aftershock is usually smaller and weaker than the main earthquake.

**D** **Challenge** [Discuss with students the similarities and differences between the Modified Mercalli Scale and the Richter Scale, as explained in the chart on page 29.]

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| tsunami | /soo*no*mee/ |

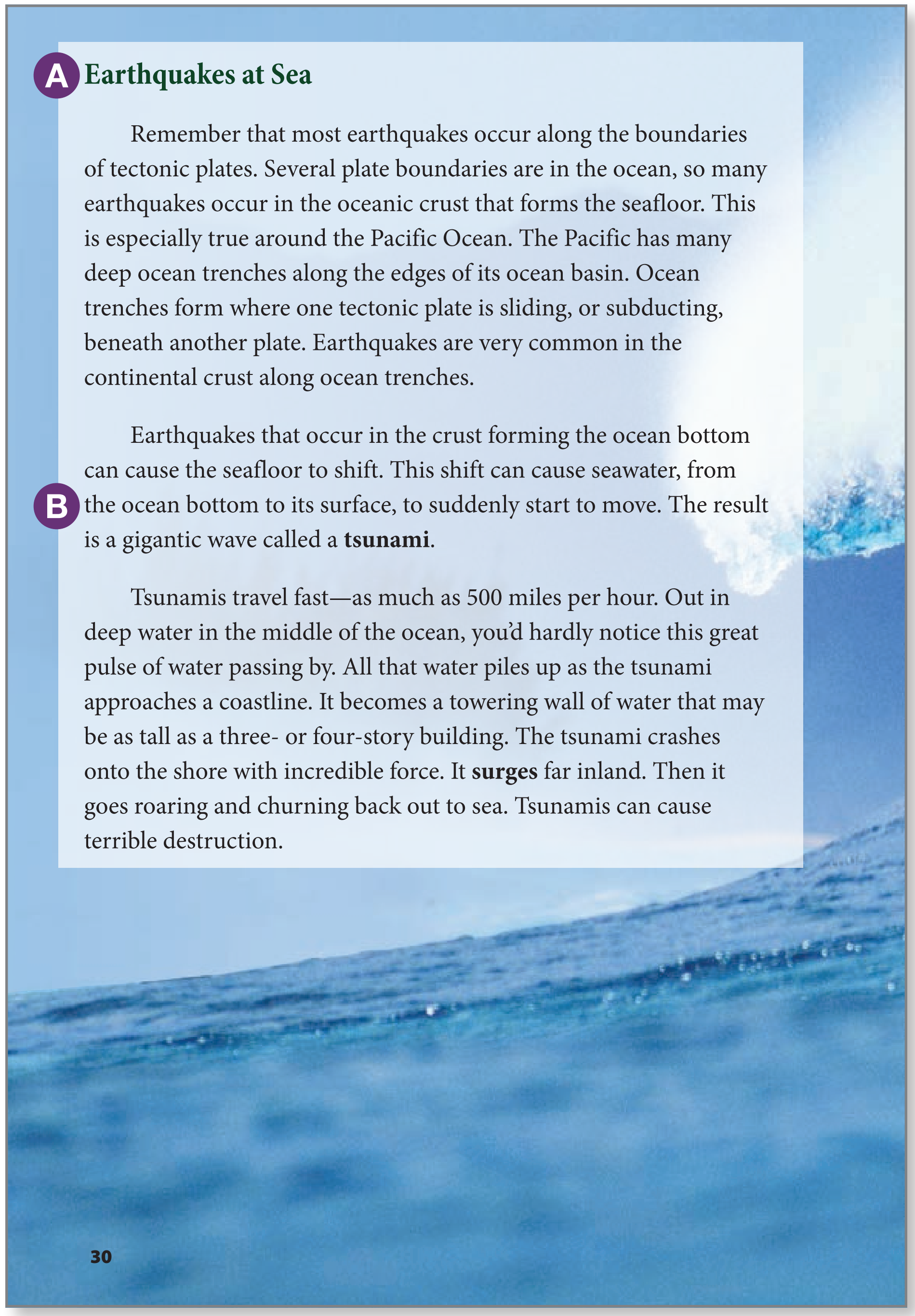
**A** [Have students read pages 30 and 31 silently.]

**B** *Inferential* How are earthquakes and tsunamis connected?

» An earthquake in the ocean triggers a tsunami. A tsunami forms as a result of the seafloor shifting after an earthquake in the oceanic crust that forms the seafloor.

**Support** What is a tsunami?

» A tsunami is a gigantic wave of seawater. It forms as a result of an earthquake in the oceanic crust that forms the seafloor, which causes the seafloor to shift. The seafloor shift causes seawater to move. The result of this water movement is a tsunami, which becomes a towering wall of water as it moves toward the shore.



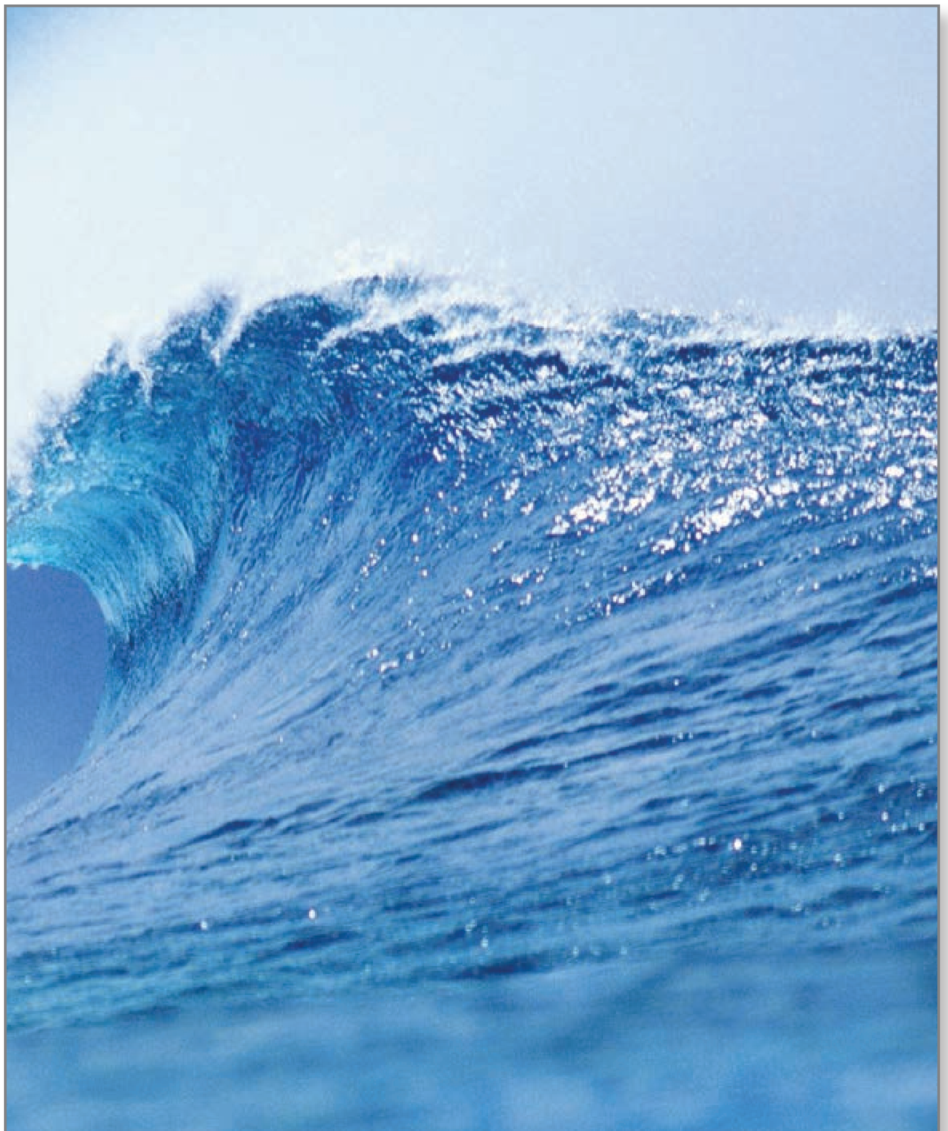
**A** **Earthquakes at Sea**

Remember that most earthquakes occur along the boundaries of tectonic plates. Several plate boundaries are in the ocean, so many earthquakes occur in the oceanic crust that forms the seafloor. This is especially true around the Pacific Ocean. The Pacific has many deep ocean trenches along the edges of its ocean basin. Ocean trenches form where one tectonic plate is sliding, or subducting, beneath another plate. Earthquakes are very common in the continental crust along ocean trenches.

Earthquakes that occur in the crust forming the ocean bottom can cause the seafloor to shift. This shift can cause seawater, from **B** the ocean bottom to its surface, to suddenly start to move. The result is a gigantic wave called a **tsunami**.

Tsunamis travel fast—as much as 500 miles per hour. Out in deep water in the middle of the ocean, you'd hardly notice this great pulse of water passing by. All that water piles up as the tsunami approaches a coastline. It becomes a towering wall of water that may be as tall as a three- or four-story building. The tsunami crashes onto the shore with incredible force. It **surges** far inland. Then it goes roaring and churning back out to sea. Tsunamis can cause terrible destruction.

30



While scientists cannot predict earthquakes, they are able to give some warning for tsunamis. Depending on its starting point, a tsunami may take many minutes, even hours, to reach land. Several countries have set up tsunami warning systems in the Pacific and other oceans.

31

**Note**

Question 1 relates to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* — 5 minutes

- Use the following question to discuss the chapter.

1. *Literal* What happens beneath Earth's surface to cause earthquakes?
   » At faults, huge blocks of rock get stuck against each other. Beneath Earth's surface, material in the mantle moves beneath the stuck rocks. This causes pressure to build. When the pressure builds to the point that the rocks break and slip past one another, energy is suddenly released. The energy travels through the earth as seismic waves. These waves cause an earthquake, which is evident when the ground shakes.
2. *Evaluative* On Activity Page 3.1, Sam asked the question Hmmm...I wonder if earthquakes have anything to do with moving tectonic plates? How would you respond to Sam's question?
   » Answers may vary but should include: earthquakes do have something to do with moving tectonic plates. As plates move, huge blocks of rock along either side of a fault get stuck against each other. Material in the mantle keeps moving beneath the plates and exerts more and more pressure on the plates to also keep moving. Pressure builds along the stuck edges of the fault until the stuck blocks of rocks suddenly break and slip past one another. As they slip past one another, they release a tremendous amount of energy. This energy travels out as seismic waves, which make the ground heave and shake. This is an earthquake.

- Have students take home Activity Page 4.2 to read and complete for homework.

## Word Work: *Fault* — 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "That sudden slipping is what happens at a fault."
2. Say the word *fault* with me.
3. *Fault* means a crack in Earth's crust.
4. An earthquake occurs when a huge block of rock moves along a fault.
5. What are some words the author uses that help you understand the meaning of the word *fault* in this context? Be sure to use the word *fault* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "When the author uses the word *fault* together with the word *slipping*, it makes me think that something is happening at a crack in Earth's crust." or "When the author uses the phrase, *happens at a fault*, it makes me think that something is occurring at a particular place."]
6. What part of speech is the word *fault*?
   » noun

[Use a *Multiple-Meaning Word* activity for follow-up. Tell students the word *fault* is a word with multiple meanings. Share the following with students.]

| |
|---|
| Meaning #1: fault—a crack in Earth's crust |
| Meaning #2: fault—responsibility for wrongdoing |

I am going to read several sentences. Listen to the context, or the text surrounding *fault* in the sentence, for clues as to which meaning is being used. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #1, hold up one finger. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #2, hold up two fingers.

1. It was my fault that we missed the train because I overslept.
   » 2
2. One of the most famous faults in America is the San Andreas Fault in California.
   » 1
3. She blamed herself for the dog running away but it really wasn't anyone's fault.
   » 2
4. His mother punished him for breaking a glass even though he said it was his brother's fault.
   » 2
5. Most faults occur along the boundaries of tectonic plates.
   » 1
6. When energy is released at a fault, it triggers an earthquake.
   » 1

## Materials

- Commas Poster
- Activity Page 4.3

## GRAMMAR 15 minutes

### Practice Commas

- Refer to the Commas Poster and read it with students.
- Refer to the three examples you prepared in advance.

1. My favorite summer activities are swimming in the pool picking peaches and going to the beach.
2. Alfred Wegener was born on November 1 1880.
3. 60 E Broadway
   Bloomington MN 55425

- Read each example aloud and have students decide where the comma or commas should be placed in each example. Then insert the commas in the correct locations.

1. My favorite summer activities are swimming in the pool, picking peaches, and going to the beach.
2. Alfred Wegener was born on November 1, 1880.
3. 60 E Broadway
   Bloomington, MN 55425

- Have students turn to Activity Page 4.3.
- Pair students to work together to complete the first portion of Activity Page 4.3.
- Once students have completed the first portion of Activity Page 4.3, review the correct answers as a whole group.
- Still working in pairs, have students come up with their own sentences containing a date, an address, a city and state, or items in a series.
- Select a few partner pairs to share their sentences. As time allows, have them write their sentences on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you could have them dictate their sentences as you write them on the board/chart paper.
- Have students complete the second portion of Activity Page 4.3 for homework.

# MORPHOLOGY 15 minutes

## Practice Suffix –*ly*

- Refer to the Suffixes Poster from the previous lesson and review the definition of *suffix*.
- Remind students that the suffix –*ly* means "in a ______ way" with the blank being the word to which –*ly* is added. When –*ly* is added to the end of an adjective, the word becomes an adverb.
- Remind students that adverbs with –*ly* describe verbs, specifically how a verb happens.
- Tell students you will give them two word choices. Then, you will read a sentence with a blank and they must decide which word choice is most appropriate in the blank.
- Practice with the following example:
  - *Easy* or *easily*? The crowd at the party was so large that I could ______ leave early without anyone noticing.
- Ask students if *easy* or *easily* would be most appropriate in the blank. (*Easily*, because it describes how the verb *leave* happens)
- Continue in this manner with the following examples:
  - *Speedy* or *speedily*? My grandmother's farm animals move ______ to the barn when they know it's feeding time. (*speedily*)
  - *Careful* or *carefully*? My hands were full, so I was ______ to avoid dropping everything. (*careful*)
  - *Loud* or *loudly*? When my sister screamed ______, my mom sent her to her room. (*loudly*)
  - *Accidental* or *accidentally*? He tripped me but it was ______, so I wasn't upset with him. (*accidental*)
  - *Temporary* or *temporarily*? After we found out our house had mold, we had to stay in a hotel ______ until the house could be cleaned. (*temporarily*)
- In the time remaining, have students think of sentences that correctly use one of the root words or affixed words. (Answers may vary.)
- Have students turn to Activity Page 4.4. Briefly review the directions and complete the first question as a class. Tell students to complete the rest of the activity page for homework.

## Materials

- Suffixes Poster
- Activity Page 4.4

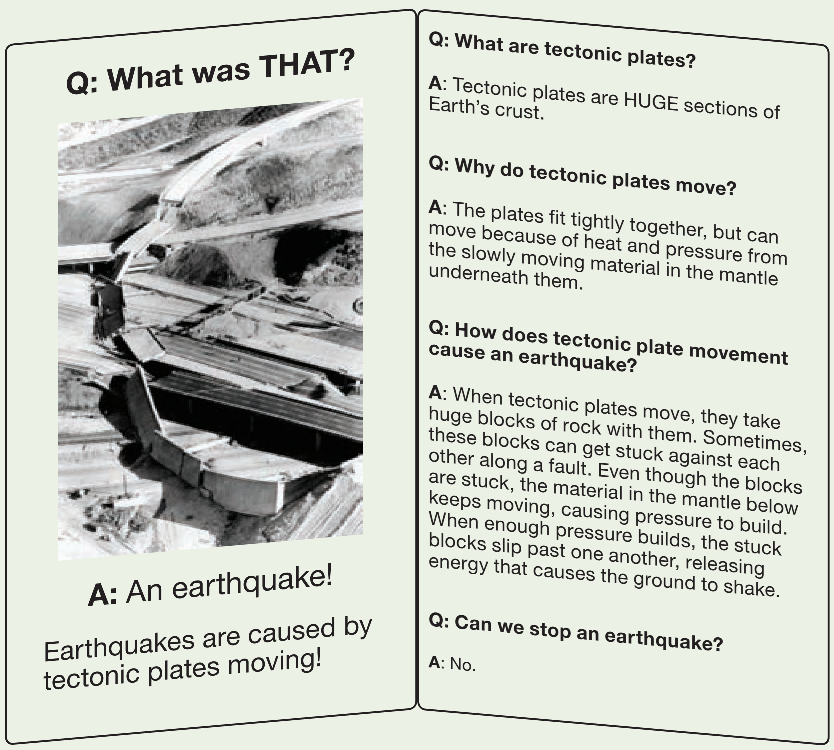
## Materials

- Earthquake Pamphlet
- *The Changing Earth*

## WRITING 15 minutes

### Introduce an Informational Pamphlet

- Tell students that today they will learn about writing in a particular format and for a particular audience.
- Explain that *format* is the design and arrangement of something. *Audience* means the person or group of people who read a particular piece of writing. The intended audience is the person or group of people who you think will read your finished piece of writing. When writing, it is important to keep the audience in mind.
- In this lesson, the format will be an informational pamphlet. Tell students that a pamphlet is a small, thin booklet, flier, or handout.
- Explain that a pamphlet often provides information on a particular topic. A pamphlet sometimes answers frequently asked questions, or questions that different people commonly ask about a topic.
- Explain that the audience of a pamphlet is generally a group of people who do not know very much about the particular topic presented in the pamphlet. The purpose of the pamphlet is to inform the audience about the topic presented.
- Display the Earthquake Pamphlet you prepared in advance.




- Explain that this pamphlet was created to provide more information about earthquakes. It is meant to answer common questions that people might have about earthquakes.
- Ask different students to read each question and answer aloud.

- Ask students who they think the audience of this particular pamphlet might be. (Answers may vary, but could include people who recently experienced an earthquake, people who moved to an area where earthquakes happen often, or people who want to know more about earthquakes in general.)

- Explain that the facts included in the pamphlet can be found in *The Changing Earth*. For example, the question, "How does tectonic plate movement cause an earthquake?" is answered with information on page 24. The text says, "As plates move, huge rough blocks of rock along either side of a fault get stuck against each other. Beneath the plates, however, material in the mantle keeps moving. Pressure builds along the stuck edges of the fault . . . The pressure builds until the stuck blocks of rock suddenly break and slip past one another. As they do, a tremendous burst of energy is released. How much?—all the energy that accumulated in the rocks during the time they were stuck and couldn't move." In the pamphlet, the facts from the text are rephrased to appeal to, or be interesting to, this particular audience.

### *Wrap Up*

- Call on students to summarize what *format* and *audience* mean. Call on a student to summarize what a pamphlet is.

- Explain that in the next writing lesson, students will write their own pamphlet about tsunamis.

## TAKE-HOME MATERIAL

### Reading; Grammar; Morphology

- Have students take home Activity Pages 4.2–4.4 to read and complete for homework.

### Materials

- Activity Pages 4.2–4.4

# Lesson 5

## Unit 6: Geology

## CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Describe faults and the role they play in earthquakes
- ✓ Describe two ways scientists measure the intensity of earthquakes
- ✓ Explain how earthquakes and tsunamis are related

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Reading** | | |
| Small Group: Chapter 3 "Earth's Shakes and Quakes" | 40 min. | Answer Key for Activity Page 4.2; Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 4.2, 5.1; *The Changing Earth*; Evidence Collector's Chart; scissors; glue |
| Word Work: *Trigger* | 5 min. | |
| **Writing** | | |
| Draft an Informational Pamphlet | 45 min. | *The Changing Earth*; Activity Pages 5.2, 5.3; Earthquake Pamphlet |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to describe key causes and effects of earthquakes.

**Writing**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to use their paraphrased notes to draft an informational pamphlet about tsunamis.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

*Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

> Read to learn more about what causes earthquakes and what happens as a result of them.

- Display the Evidence Collector's Chart from Lesson 1.

*Writing*

- You may want to display the Earthquake Pamphlet from Lesson 4 for students to use as a guide while writing their own pamphlet about tsunamis.

*Fluency (optional)*

- If students were assigned a selection from the *Fluency Supplement*, determine which students will read the selection aloud and when. See the Unit 1 Teacher Guide introduction for more information on using the *Fluency Supplement*.

*Grammar; Morphology*

- Collect Activity Pages 4.3 and 4.4 to review and grade as there are no grammar or morphology lessons today.

## READING 45 minutes

### Small Group: Chapter 3 "Earth's Shakes and Quakes" 40 minutes

*Review* 5 minutes

- Using the Answer Key at the back of this Teacher Guide, review student responses to Activity Page 4.2, which was assigned for homework.

*Review the Chapter* 5 minutes

- Tell students they will reread Chapter 3, "Earth's Shakes and Quakes."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- You may wish to review the following vocabulary words before you reread the chapter:

### Materials

- Answer Key for Activity Page 4.2
- Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 4.2, 5.1
- *The Changing Earth*
- Evidence Collector's Chart
- scissors
- glue

1. **eyewitness**, ***n.*** a person who has seen something happen and is able to describe it (**22**)
2. **experiment**, ***n.*** a scientific test to try out something in order to learn about it (**24**)
3. **fault**, ***n.*** a crack in Earth's crust (**faults**) (**24**)
4. **heave**, ***v.*** **1.** to move up and down over and over; **2.** to lift, pull, push, or throw with a lot of effort (**24**)
5. **trigger**, ***v.*** to cause something to start or happen (**triggered**) (**25**)
6. **pinpoint**, ***v.*** to figure out the exact location of something (**27**)
7. **magnitude**, ***n.*** an earthquake's strength (**28**)
8. **aftershock**, ***n.*** a smaller, weaker earthquake that often follows a main earthquake event (**aftershocks**) (**29**)
9. **tsunami**, ***n.*** a gigantic wave of seawater caused by an earthquake in oceanic crust (**tsunamis**) (**30**)
10. **surge**, ***v.*** to move forward quickly, suddenly, and with force (**surges**) (**30**)

- Remind students they can look up a word in the glossary if they forget its meaning.
- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

> Read to learn more about what causes earthquakes and what happens as a result of them.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

> What happens beneath Earth's surface to cause earthquakes?

### *Establish Small Groups*

Before reading the chapter, divide students into two groups using the following guidelines:

- ✪ **Small Group 1**: This group should include students who need extra scaffolding and support to read and comprehend the text. Use the guided reading supports to guide students through reading the text. This is an excellent time to make notes in your anecdotal records. Students may complete Activity Page 5.1 with your support during reading.
- ✪ **Small Group 2**: This group should include students who are capable of reading and comprehending text without guided support. These students may work as a small group, as partners, or independently to read the chapter, discuss it with others in Small Group 2, and then complete Activity Page 5.1. Make arrangements to check that students in Small Group 2 have answered the questions on Activity Page 5.1 correctly. You may choose to do one of the following to address this:
  - collect the pages and correct them individually
  - provide an answer key to students to check their own or a partner's work after they have completed the activity page
  - confer with students individually or as a group at a later time

Over the course of the year, students may change groups, depending on individual students' needs.

### *Read "Earth's Shakes and Quakes"* — 20 minutes

The following guided reading supports are intended for use with Small Group 1. Guided reading supports in brackets are intended to guide you in facilitating discussion and should not be read verbatim to students. Guided reading supports not in brackets should be read aloud verbatim.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Francesco Petrarch | /fran*ches*koe/ /pe*trark/ |

**A** [Read pages 22 and 23 aloud, as students read along silently.]

**B** *Literal* What words, including strong verbs, does Francesco Petrarch use to signal he is describing an earthquake?

» Answers may vary, but may include: *the floor trembled under my feet*; *the books crashed into each other and fell down*; *I was frightened and hurried to leave the room*; *people running anxiously to and fro;* and *all faces were pale.*

Chapter 3

THE BIG QUESTION
What happens beneath Earth's surface to cause earthquakes?

# Earth's Shakes and Quakes

A

Italian writer Francesco Petrarch penned the following **eyewitness** account in the Middle Ages. Can you guess what he was writing about?

B

*"The floor trembled under my feet; when the books crashed into each other and fell down I was frightened and hurried to leave the room. Outside I saw the servants and many other people running anxiously to and fro. All faces were pale."*


Francesco Petrarch

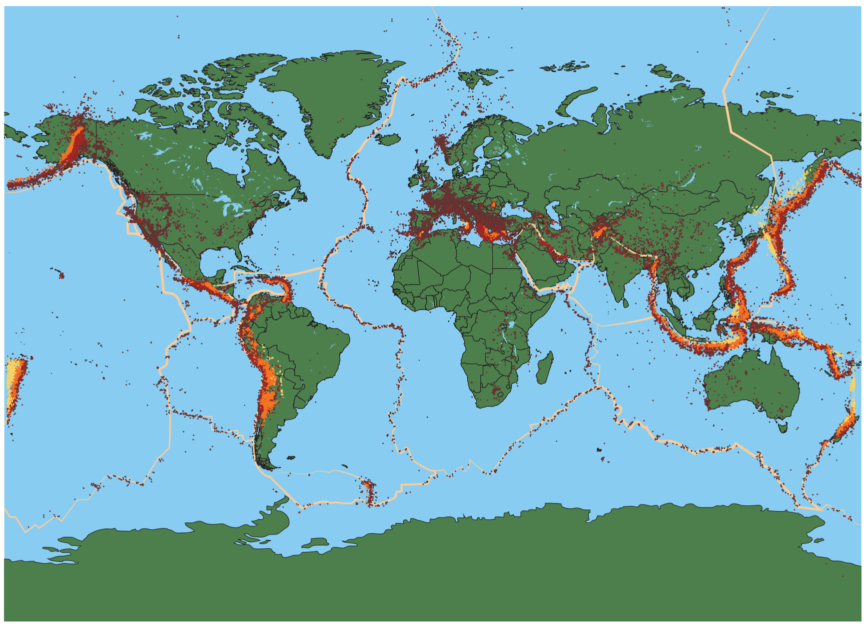
If you said an earthquake, you're correct! People in northern Italy had good reason to be pale and frightened on a winter's day in 1348 CE. On that day, a large earthquake struck. Thousands of people lost their lives.

Earthquakes are violent natural disasters that strike without warning. Suddenly, the ground begins to shake. Furniture topples,

22

objects tumble from shelves, and buildings may even collapse. In 1348 CE, people had no idea what caused earthquakes. Today we know that earthquakes are the result of powerful natural forces at work in Earth's crust and mantle.

As you read in Chapter 2, scientists developed the theory of plate tectonics in the 1960s. The theory explains how Earth's surface and interior change over very long periods of time. Some plates are pulling apart at their boundaries, other plates are colliding, and still others are sliding past each other. A lot happens at plate boundaries, including most earthquakes. In fact, one of the easiest ways to locate plate boundaries is to determine where earthquakes are occurring! **C** **D**



Locations of plate boundaries and past earthquake epicenters

23

**C** *Literal* What is the relationship between tectonic plates and earthquakes?

» Most earthquakes happen at tectonic plate boundaries.

**D** [Have students record the answer to question 1 on Activity Page 5.1.]

A [Have students read pages 24 and 25 silently.]

B *Evaluative* How does the experiment help you understand what happens at a fault?

» Answers may vary, but should include that as you press your hands together with a lot of force, you can feel the pressure of each hand pressing the other one. This helps you understand the pressure that builds when huge blocks of rock are stuck against each other at a fault. Then, when you can't press your hands together any harder and you let your right hand quickly slide forward, you feel how fast that happens and how the pressure and energy is released when your hand slides. This helps you understand what happens when the rocks stuck against each other at a fault slip past each other; a tremendous burst of energy is released.

**Support** What is a fault?

» A fault is a crack in Earth's crust. It is the place where an earthquake originates, or begins.

C *Literal* How much energy is released when blocks of rock that were stuck break and slip past each other?

» All the energy that accumulated in the rocks during the time they were stuck and couldn't move is released.

D [Have students record the answer to question 2 on Activity Page 5.1.]

A

## Forces and Faults

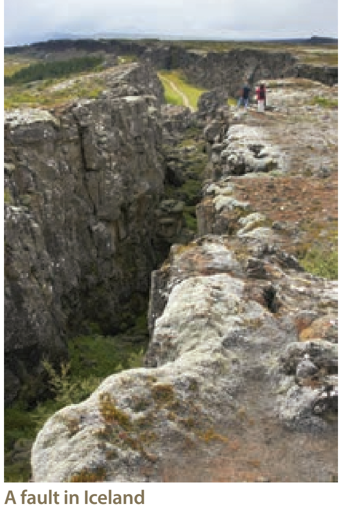
Try a little **experiment**. Extend your arms out in front of you parallel to the floor and put your hands together. Keep your palms and fingers flat against each other. Now start pressing your hands together. Gradually increase the pressure. When you can't press any harder, let your right hand quickly slide forward. That sudden slipping is what happens at a **fault**.

B

A fault is a fracture, or crack, in Earth's crust. Most faults occur along the boundaries of tectonic plates. As plates move, huge rough blocks of rock along either side of a fault get stuck against each other. Beneath the plates, however, material in the mantle keeps moving. This material exerts more and more pressure on the plates to also keep moving. Pressure builds along the stuck edges of the fault. Think of your hands as these edges, pressing harder and harder together. The pressure builds until the stuck blocks of rock suddenly break and slip past one another. As they do, a tremendous burst of energy is released. How much energy? Well, all the energy that accumulated in the rocks during the time they were stuck and couldn't move.

C

D



A fault in Iceland

The Pacific Plate is Earth's largest tectonic plate. It lies beneath the Pacific Ocean. Imagine how much energy it takes to move that gigantic rocky plate plus all the water on top of it. Then imagine all that energy being released at a fault in just a moment. Such a colossal burst of energy travels outward from the fault in all directions as seismic waves. Seismic waves make the ground **heave** and shake. This violent shaking is what we call an earthquake.

24

## San Andreas Fault

In the United States, one of the most famous faults is the San Andreas Fault in California. It lies along the boundary between two tectonic plates that are slowly moving past each other. The movement, however, is far from steady. For years at a time, blocks of rock bordering the San Andreas Fault stay stuck. Pressure slowly builds. Then—wham!—they slip and **trigger** an earthquake. The 1906 San Francisco earthquake was one of the worst in American history. The sudden slip that triggered it was huge. It caused rocks on either side of the fault to move more than 20 feet in just seconds!

Effects of the 1906 San Francisco earthquake

25

**A** [Have students read pages 26 and 27 silently.]

**B** *Literal* What does the text say surface waves cause?

» The text says surface waves make the ground shake, heave, sway, and lurch during an earthquake. The text also says that surface waves cause most earthquake damage.

**C** [Have students record the answer to question 3 on Activity Page 5.1.]

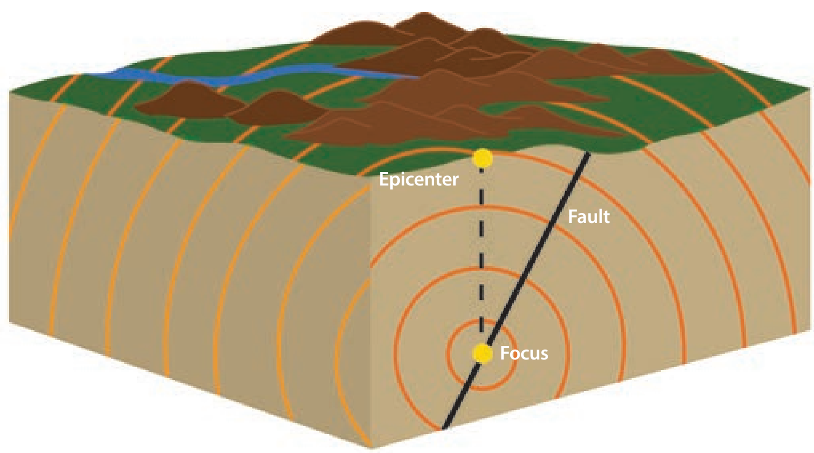
A

## Shake, Heave, Sway, and Lurch

All earthquakes begin with huge blocks of rock moving along faults. The place in Earth's crust where this happens is an earthquake's **focus**. Think of it as the earthquake's heart, the source of seismic waves. The focus may be deep in the crust or close to the surface.

The **epicenter** is the point on Earth's surface directly above an earthquake's focus. Some kinds of seismic waves produced by earthquakes travel deep into Earth's interior. Surface waves, however, are seismic waves that are first noticeable at the epicenter. During an B earthquake, surface waves are what make the ground shake, heave, C sway, and lurch. They are the cause of most earthquake damage.

In Chapter 2, you read about seismographs, which scientists use to record the shaking of Earth's surface caused by seismic waves. The time it takes for seismic waves to reach a seismograph is important in determining where the earthquake occurred. The longer that seismic waves take to reach a seismograph, the farther away the earthquake is from the seismograph.




The place in Earth's crust where an earthquake begins is its focus. Its epicenter is the point on Earth's surface directly above the focus.

26

## Seismographs: Now and Then

A modern seismograph, also called a seismometer, records the shaking of Earth's surface caused by seismic waves. A **seismogram** is the record a seismograph makes. A seismogram shows seismic waves as jagged up-and-down lines. Scientists compare multiple seismograms in order to **pinpoint** an earthquake's epicenter.

D

Zhang Heng, a Chinese scientist, invented the first-known seismograph around 132 CE. It didn't look anything like a modern seismograph. It was shaped like a large vase. The vase had eight dragons around the outside, each looking downward and holding a ball loosely in its mouth. Below the eight dragons were open-mouthed frogs. When an earthquake struck, the balls fell into the frogs' mouths below. Depending on which balls fell, it was possible to estimate the distance and direction to the earthquake's source.

Modern seismograph

First-known seismograph

27

**D** *Evaluative* Why might it be important for scientists to pinpoint an earthquake's epicenter?

» Answers may vary, but should include that pinpointing an earthquake's epicenter will help scientists determine where the earthquake's focus is. Knowing where the focus is can direct scientists to examine what might be happening below the earth's surface at that location. This will help them understand things like why the earthquake happened, whether this is the first earthquake in that location, and how to prepare for future earthquakes.

**Support** What is an earthquake's epicenter?

» An earthquake's epicenter is the point on Earth's surface directly above an earthquake's focus.

**Support** What is an earthquake's focus?

» An earthquake's focus is the place in Earth's crust where blocks of rock are moving along a fault, triggering an earthquake.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Richter | /rik*ter/ |

**A** [Have students read pages 28 and 29 silently.]

**B** *Literal* How is a seismograph different from the Richter scale?

» A seismograph produces wiggly lines to show the energy of seismic waves. The Richter scale applies numbers to measure the magnitude of an earthquake based on the largest seismic wave recorded.

*Literal* How are a seismograph and the Richter scale similar?

» Both a seismograph and the Richter scale are used by scientists to determine an earthquake's magnitude.

**C** [Have students record the answers to question 4 on Activity Page 5.1.]

**A**

## Measuring an Earthquake's Strength

Scientists also use seismographs to measure an earthquake's strength, or **magnitude**. During a small earthquake, Earth's surface may shake only a little. The seismogram shows these relatively low-energy seismic waves as little wiggles. During a big earthquake, Earth's surface shakes a lot harder. The seismogram shows these high-energy waves as big zigzags.

**B**

**C**

The Richter scale is another way scientists measure an earthquake's magnitude. The Richter scale assigns a number to an earthquake based on the largest seismic wave recorded for that earthquake. The higher the Richter scale number, the stronger the earthquake. For example, a magnitude 5.0 earthquake on the Richter scale causes 10 times as much ground shaking as a magnitude 4.0 earthquake. A magnitude 6.0 earthquake causes 10 times more shaking than a 5.0, and so on.

Damage caused by earthquakes

28

The Modified Mercalli Intensity Scale also uses numbers to measure earthquake strength. The numbers are based on survivors' descriptions and the amount of earthquake damage. The higher the number, the stronger the earthquake. The Mercalli scale is less scientific than the Richter scale, as few people describe events in the same way.

Pressure along faults can build up for years, even centuries. When blocks of rock along a fault finally move, the resulting earthquake happens very quickly. Most earthquakes last just a few seconds. Still, the trouble may not be over after the ground stops shaking. Large earthquakes are often followed by **aftershocks**. Aftershocks are like mini-earthquakes. They are usually smaller and weaker than the main earthquake event. Aftershocks happen as blocks of rock along the newly slipped fault settle into place.

| Modified Mercalli Scale | | Richter Scale | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | Felt by almost no one | 2.5 | Generally not felt, but recorded on seismometers. |
| II | Felt by very few people | | |
| III | Noticed by many, but they often do not realize it is an earthquake. | 3.5 | Felt by many people |
| IV | Felt indoors by many; feels like a truck has struck the building. | | |
| V | Felt by nearly everyone; many people awakened. Swaying trees and poles may be observed. | | |
| VI | Felt by all; many people run outdoors. Furniture moved; slight damage occurs. | 4.5 | Some local damage may occur. |
| VII | Everyone runs outdoors. Poorly built structures considerably damaged; slight damage elsewhere. | | |
| VIII | Specially designed structures damaged slightly; others collapse. | 6.0 | A destructive earthquake |
| IX | All buildings considerably damaged; many shift off foundations. Noticeable cracks in ground. | | |
| X | Many structures destroyed. Ground is badly cracked. | 7.0 | A major earthquake |
| XI | Almost all structures fall. Very wide cracks in ground. | | |
| XII | Total destruction. Waves seen on ground surfaces; objects are tumbled and tossed. | 8.0 and up | Great earthquakes |

**The Mercalli scale is less scientific than the Richter scale.**

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| tsunami | /soo*no*mee/ |

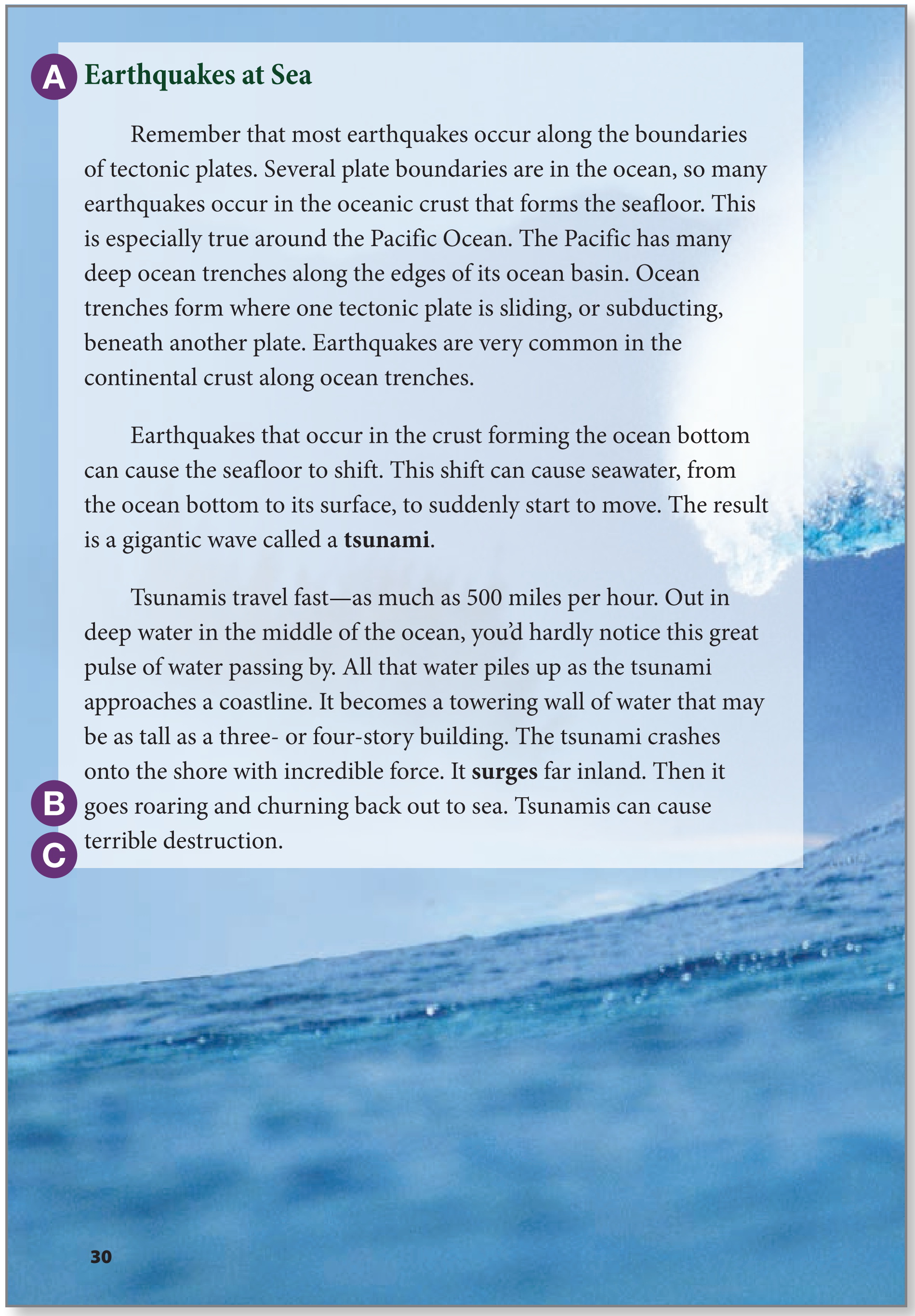
**A** [Have students read pages 30 and 31 silently.]

**B** *Inferential* Based on the author's descriptive language when explaining a tsunami, is a tsunami a positive or negative result of an earthquake? How do you know?

» Negative; the author describes a tsunami as a gigantic wave, a great pulse of water, and a towering wall of water; the author compares a tsunami to a three- or four-story building, indicating how big it is; the author uses words like *fast*, *crashes*, *roaring*, *churning*, *terrible*, and *destruction* to describe a tsunami.

**C** [Have students record the answer to question 5 on Activity Page 5.1.]

**Support** [You may discuss example sentences orally rather than have students write a sentence. Example: "A tsunami is a gigantic wave that starts in deep ocean water after an earthquake. It travels fast, crashes onto the shore, and then goes roaring back out to sea."]



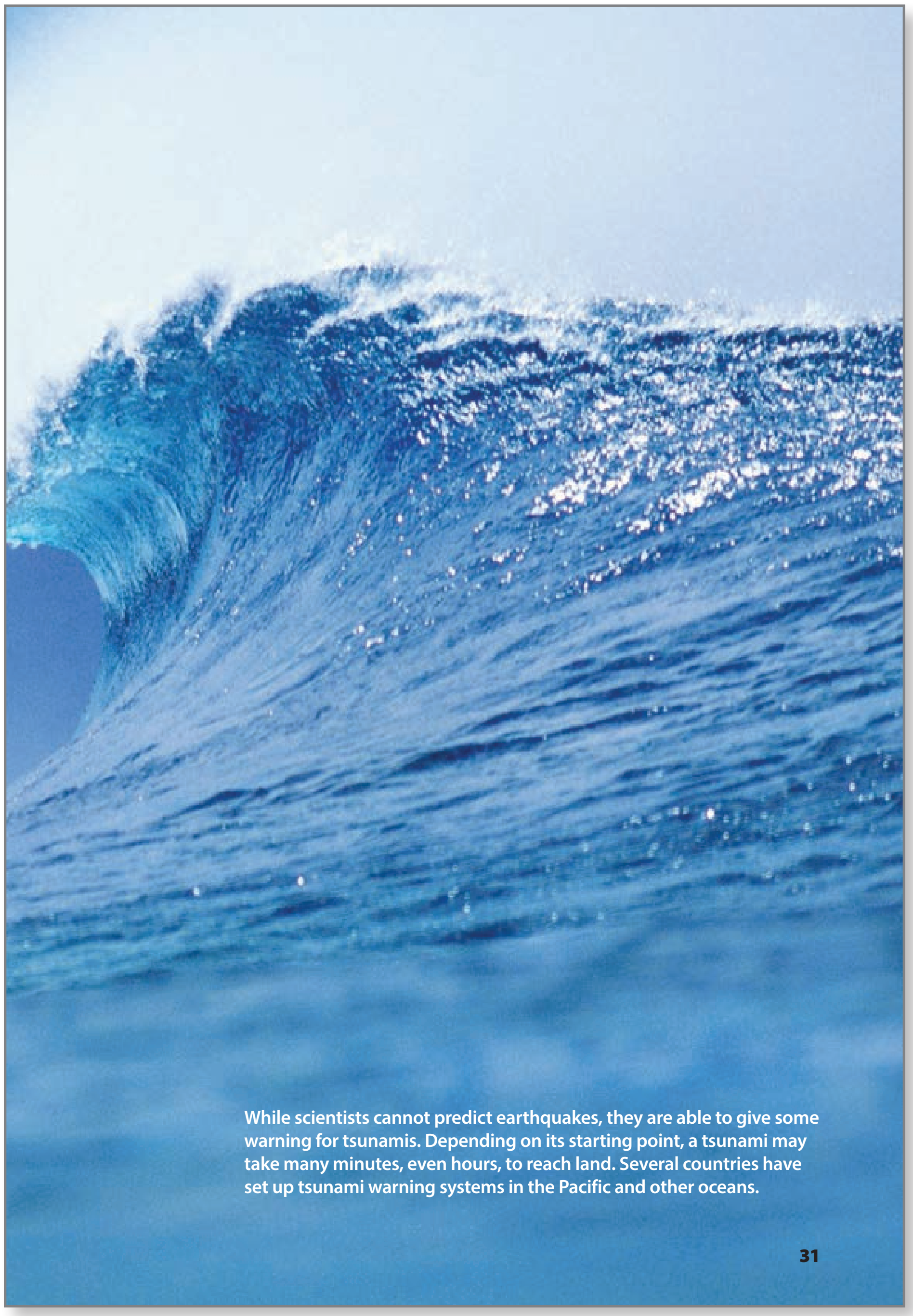
**A** **Earthquakes at Sea**

Remember that most earthquakes occur along the boundaries of tectonic plates. Several plate boundaries are in the ocean, so many earthquakes occur in the oceanic crust that forms the seafloor. This is especially true around the Pacific Ocean. The Pacific has many deep ocean trenches along the edges of its ocean basin. Ocean trenches form where one tectonic plate is sliding, or subducting, beneath another plate. Earthquakes are very common in the continental crust along ocean trenches.

Earthquakes that occur in the crust forming the ocean bottom can cause the seafloor to shift. This shift can cause seawater, from the ocean bottom to its surface, to suddenly start to move. The result is a gigantic wave called a **tsunami**.

Tsunamis travel fast—as much as 500 miles per hour. Out in deep water in the middle of the ocean, you'd hardly notice this great pulse of water passing by. All that water piles up as the tsunami approaches a coastline. It becomes a towering wall of water that may be as tall as a three- or four-story building. The tsunami crashes onto the shore with incredible force. It **surges** far inland. Then it **B** goes roaring and churning back out to sea. Tsunamis can cause **C** terrible destruction.

30


While scientists cannot predict earthquakes, they are able to give some warning for tsunamis. Depending on its starting point, a tsunami may take many minutes, even hours, to reach land. Several countries have set up tsunami warning systems in the Pacific and other oceans.
31

### Note

Activity Page 1.3 relates to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* **10 minutes**

- Have students turn to Activity Pages 1.3 and 1.4 and refer to the displayed Evidence Collector's Chart.
- Remind students that this chart is being used throughout the unit to collect evidence of changes to the earth related to specific causes of geologic change. The evidence represents what geologists examine to determine how powerful forces above and below Earth's surface work to change the earth.
- Have a student read aloud the information under "What is the cause?" in the third row. Explain that students must determine what evidence is in the chapter about material moving in the mantle at a fault, building pressure and then causing stuck rocks to suddenly slip past each other and shake the ground. (page 24)
- Have students refer to the remaining images on Activity Page 1.4. Engage students in a discussion about the images, talking about which image represents evidence of what happens at a fault that leads to the ground shaking. (image showing earthquake damage to a bridge)
- Ensure students understand why the image showing how a bridge was damaged during an earthquake is the correct image. (The image shows how a large bridge broke into pieces and collapsed, which is evidence of the shaking of an earthquake causing damage to things on Earth's surface.)
- Have students cut out the correct image, glue it to the chart in the "What evidence is there?" column, and write the following information for chapter number, key words, and letter in the chart:

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | *Material in the mantle moves beneath stuck rocks at a fault, causing pressure to build over time and then suddenly release as the rocks break and slip past each other, shaking the ground.* | *image: bridge broken into pieces as result of an earthquake*<br><br>*key words:* rocks moving at a fault | E |

## Word Work: *Trigger* 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "Then—wham!—they slip and trigger an earthquake."
2. Say the word *trigger* with me.
3. *Trigger* means to cause something to start or happen.
4. My alarm went off early this morning, triggering me to wake up before I was ready.
5. What are some other examples of something being a trigger for something else? Be sure to use the word *trigger* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "_____ triggers_____." or "_____ triggered me to _____."]
6. What part of speech is the word *trigger*?
   » verb

[Use a *Synonyms and Antonyms* activity for follow-up.] What does *trigger* mean? What are some synonyms, or words that have a similar meaning, of *trigger*? [Prompt students to provide words like *cause*, *start*, *prompt*, and *activate*.] What are some words or phrases that are antonyms, or word that have the opposite meaning, of *trigger*? [Prompt students to provide words and phrases like *stop*, *shut off*, *end*, and *discontinue*. As students discuss synonyms and antonyms, guide them to use the word *trigger* in a complete sentence: "A synonym of *trigger* is *start*."]

# WRITING 45 minutes

## Draft an Informational Pamphlet

### *Take Notes* 25 minutes

- Tell students that today they will paraphrase text in *The Changing Earth* to take notes on tsunamis. They will then use these notes to draft an informational pamphlet on tsunamis.
- Remind students that in *The Middle Ages* unit they took notes on different people who lived during the Middle Ages. Remind them that taking notes means scanning the text and images for key words and specific information related to a chosen topic. Students paraphrased information from the text, or wrote the information in their own words, when taking notes.
- Have students turn to pages 30 and 31 in the Reader and silently read the page.

### Materials

- *The Changing Earth*
- Activity Pages 5.2, 5.3
- Earthquake Pamphlet

- Once students have finished reading the page, have them turn to Activity Page 5.2. Read through all the questions in the chart as a class so students are clear about what information they should scan the text for related to tsunamis.
- Point out that tsunamis are the focus for their writing, so all their notes should relate to the focus. To focus is to select one specific moment, object, or idea, and use precise details to write about it. Remind students that they learned about focus when writing personal narratives.
- Remind students to take notes by paraphrasing the text they just read, or writing information in their own words. Students should write key information in the shortest form possible.

  **Support** If students need help paraphrasing the text and taking notes, you may wish to guide the whole class in taking notes together or you may wish to have students work in pairs to take notes. Alternatively, you may choose to model taking notes using the questions on Activity Page 5.2.

- You may wish to provide students with information for notes on the last question on Activity Page 5.2, *How can we prepare and protect ourselves?*, as that specific information is not in the Reader. See the sample Tsunami Pamphlet in this lesson for more information. You may wish to have students record the following notes for the last question:
  - know the tsunami warning signal where you live, quickly evacuate if tsunami approaches

***Draft an Informational Pamphlet*** **20 minutes**

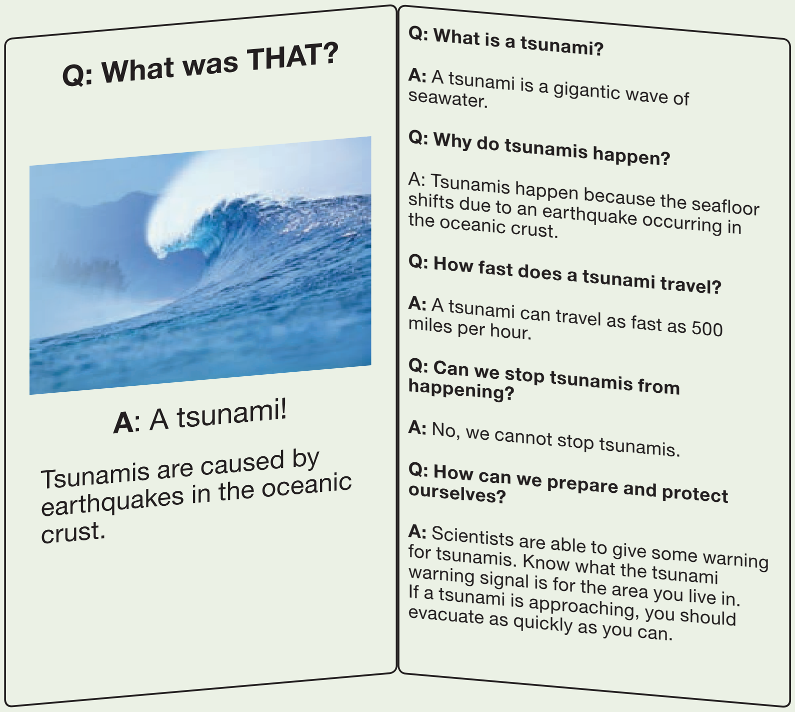
- Explain that students will now write a pamphlet based on the notes they took on Activity Page 5.2.
- Have students turn to Activity Page 5.3. Explain that they will draft their pamphlets by composing answers to the questions.
- Tell students they should use the notes they took on Activity Page 5.2 to guide them as they write their answers.
- Remind students that they should write the answers in complete sentences. A complete sentence has a subject, predicate, capitalization, punctuation, and expresses a complete idea.

  **Support** Display the Earthquake Pamphlet from Lesson 4 for students who may need to use it as a guide.

- Guide students through the process of transforming their notes into sentences by completing the "Tsunamis are caused by . . ." statement as a whole group. Have students read the notes they took for the first question on Activity Page 5.2. Then have students read the statement on Activity Page 5.3. Have students think of different ways to complete the sentence, keeping the audience in mind. Call on multiple students to provide possible ways to phrase the sentence. Write one or two examples on the board/chart paper. (Tsunamis are caused by *earthquakes in the* *oceanic crust*; Tsunamis are caused by *the seafloor shifting after an earthquake*.)

- Then have students complete the rest of Activity Page 5.3 individually. Alternatively, have students complete the rest of the activity page in pairs or small groups.

  **Support** To simplify the activity, you may wish to have some students only complete certain portions of Activity Page 5.3. In that case, direct students to complete the first couple of questions and leave the rest for a later date.




- Circulate and check in with students, providing support and guidance as needed to assist students with the transformation of notes to sentences or the phrasing of sentences for a particular audience.

  **Challenge** After composing answers to the questions, students may use their own lined paper to write additional questions and answers for an extension page of the pamphlet.

### *Wrap Up*

- In closing, have students share some of their answers to the questions.

  **Feedback** Provide reinforcing or corrective feedback for effective ways students can turn their notes from the text into sentences in their own words.

- Collect Activity Page 5.3 to review and monitor student progress. Written feedback may include comments such as:
  - This point is clear and written in your own words.
  - This makes me want to know more. What additional information could you add?
  - This sentence is a quote directly from the text. How can you rewrite the sentence in your own words?

# Lesson 6

## Unit 6: Geology

### CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Explain what occurs above and below Earth's surface to form volcanoes
- ✓ Describe the differences between active, dormant, and extinct volcanoes
- ✓ Explain what occurs above and below Earth's surface to form geysers
- ✓ Explain why volcanoes, geysers, and hot springs are common along plate boundaries and above hotspots

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Reading** | | |
| Whole Group: Chapter 4 "Earth's Fiery Volcanoes" | 40 min. | *The Changing Earth*; Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 6.1; Evidence Collector's Chart; scissors; glue |
| Word Work: *Fine* | 5 min. | |
| **Grammar** | | |
| Introduce Commas and Quotation Marks | 15 min. | Commas Poster Addition; Quotation Marks Poster; Activity Page 6.2 |
| **Morphology** | | |
| Introduce Root *rupt* | 15 min. | Roots Poster; Activity Page 6.3 |
| **Spelling** | | |
| Introduce Spelling Words | 15 min. | Activity Pages 6.4, 6.5, SR.1 |
| **Take-Home Material** | | |
| Grammar; Morphology; Spelling | * | Activity Pages 6.2–6.5; *Fluency Supplement* selection (optional) |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to explain how and where volcanoes develop.

**Grammar**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to identify the correct locations of commas and quotation marks in sentences that contain direct speech or quotations from text, specifically in cases of split quotations.

**Morphology**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to identify the meaning of words with the root *rupt* and use these words correctly in sentences.

**Spelling**: By the end of this lesson, students will be prepared to practice spelling targeted words.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

### *Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

| |
|---|
| Read to learn about volcanoes and how they relate to tectonic plate boundaries. |

- Display the Evidence Collector's Chart from Lesson 1.

### *Grammar*

- Prepare an addition to the Commas Poster from Lesson 2 as indicated, and display it for use during the grammar lesson. Alternatively, you may access a digital version titled Commas Poster Addition in the digital components for this unit. This poster will be on display throughout the unit.

| Commas |
|---|
| A **comma** is a punctuation mark used to separate words or numbers in dates and addresses, as well as to separate a series of words in a sentence. |
| A **comma** is also used to indicate that a pause is needed in a sentence. When used with quotation marks, a comma helps to set off a quotation from the rest of a sentence and indicates that a pause is needed. |

- Prepare and display a Quotation Marks Poster with the following information for use during the grammar lesson. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit. This poster will be on display throughout the unit.

| Quotation Marks |
|---|
| **Quotation marks** are punctuation marks used to show exactly what a person says or has said (dialogue). They are also used when copying the exact words from a written text. |

- Write the following sentences on the board/chart paper.

| |
|---|
| The text states, "Erupting volcanoes are dramatic natural events." |
| What I asked my friends is your favorite color? |
| Green Seth responded is my favorite color.<br>My favorite color Bonnie said is purple. |

### *Morphology*

- During this lesson, you will reference the Roots Poster you displayed in Unit 2.

*Fluency (optional)*

- Choose and make sufficient copies of a text selection from the online *Fluency Supplement* to distribute and review with students for additional fluency practice. If you choose to do a fluency assessment, you will assess students in Lesson 10. See the Unit 1 Teacher Guide introduction for more information on using the *Fluency Supplement*.

## READING 45 minutes

### Whole Group: Chapter 4 "Earth's Fiery Volcanoes" 40 minutes

*Introduce the Chapter* 5 minutes

### Materials

- *The Changing Earth*
- Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 6.1
- Evidence Collector's Chart
- scissors
- glue

- Tell students they will read Chapter 4, "Earth's Fiery Volcanoes."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Preview the core vocabulary words before reading the chapter.
- Begin by telling students the first vocabulary word they will encounter in this chapter is *volcano.*
- Have them find the word on page 32 of the Reader. Explain that each vocabulary word is bolded the first time it appears in the chapter.
- Explain that the glossary contains definitions of all the vocabulary words in this Reader. Have students refer to the glossary at the back of the Reader, locate *volcano*, and then have a student read the definition.
- Explain the following:
  - The part of speech follows each word in an abbreviated format as follows: noun–*n.*; verb–*v.*; adjective–*adj.*; adverb–*adv*.
  - Alternate forms of the word appearing in the chapter may follow the definition. They may be a different part of speech than the original word.
- Have students reference Activity Page 6.1 while you read each word and its meaning noting that:
  - The page number (for the first occurrence of the word in the chapter) appears in bold print after the definition.
  - Words are listed in the order in which they appear in the chapter.

1. **volcano**, ***n.*** a hill or mountain that forms over a crack in Earth's crust from which lava erupts (**volcanoes**) (**32**)
2. **crater**, ***n.*** a bowl-shaped opening at the top of a volcano or geyser (**32**)
3. **fine**, ***adj.*** very small (**33**)
4. **subduction zone**, ***n.*** the place where one tectonic plate is sliding beneath another tectonic plate (**subduction zones**) (**36**)
5. **descend**, ***v.*** to move downward (**descends**) (**36**)
6. **hotspot**, ***n.*** a very hot region deep within Earth's mantle where a huge magma chamber forms (**hotspots**) (**38**)
7. **plume**, ***n.*** a column of magma that rises from the mantle into a chamber beneath Earth's crust (**40**)
8. **hot spring**, ***n.*** a naturally flowing source of hot water (**hot springs**) (**40**)

| Vocabulary Chart for Chapter 4 "Earth's Fiery Volcanoes" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3**<br>**Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2**<br>**General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | volcano<br>crater<br>subduction zone<br>hotspot<br>plume<br>hot spring | fine<br>descend |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | volcán<br>cráter<br>zona de subducción | descender |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | crater<br>plume | fine |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | recorded history<br>chains of islands | |

- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

> Read to learn about volcanoes and how they relate to tectonic plate boundaries.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

> How do scientists determine where volcanoes might develop?

### *Read "Earth's Fiery Volcanoes"* — 25 minutes

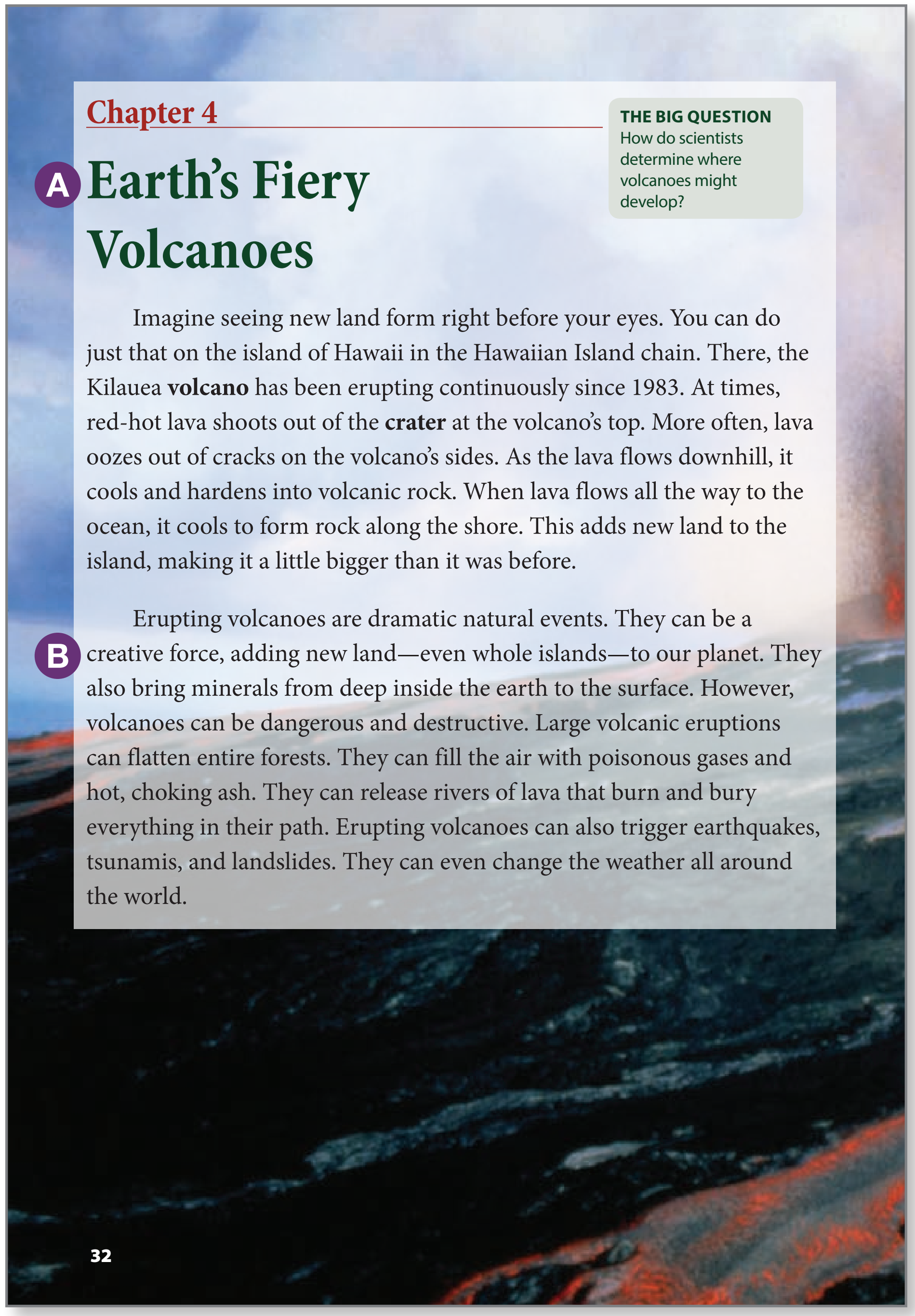
Guided reading supports in brackets are intended to guide you in facilitating discussion and should not be read verbatim to students. Guided reading supports not in brackets should be read aloud verbatim.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Kilauea | /kee*lə*wae*ə/ |

**A** [Have students read pages 32 and 33 silently.]

**B** *Literal* According to the text, what are some ways erupting volcanoes can change Earth's surface?

» Answers may vary, but should include: add new land to Earth's surface; bring minerals from deep inside the earth to the surface; flatten entire forests; release rivers of lava that can burn and bury everything in their path; and trigger earthquakes, tsunamis, and landslides.



Chapter 4

THE BIG QUESTION
How do scientists determine where volcanoes might develop?

A

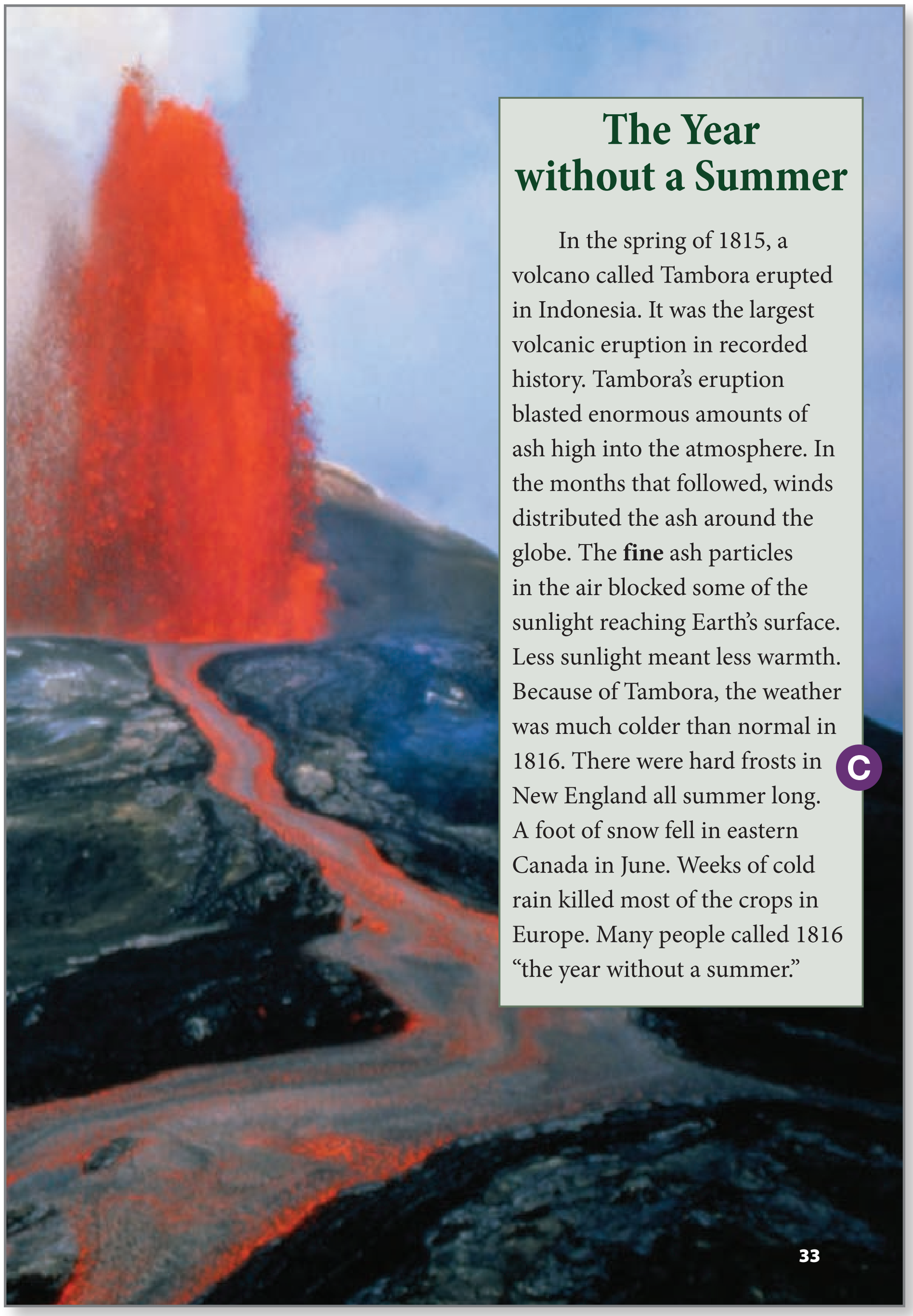
# Earth's Fiery Volcanoes

Imagine seeing new land form right before your eyes. You can do just that on the island of Hawaii in the Hawaiian Island chain. There, the Kilauea **volcano** has been erupting continuously since 1983. At times, red-hot lava shoots out of the **crater** at the volcano's top. More often, lava oozes out of cracks on the volcano's sides. As the lava flows downhill, it cools and hardens into volcanic rock. When lava flows all the way to the ocean, it cools to form rock along the shore. This adds new land to the island, making it a little bigger than it was before.

B

Erupting volcanoes are dramatic natural events. They can be a creative force, adding new land—even whole islands—to our planet. They also bring minerals from deep inside the earth to the surface. However, volcanoes can be dangerous and destructive. Large volcanic eruptions can flatten entire forests. They can fill the air with poisonous gases and hot, choking ash. They can release rivers of lava that burn and bury everything in their path. Erupting volcanoes can also trigger earthquakes, tsunamis, and landslides. They can even change the weather all around the world.

32



## The Year without a Summer

In the spring of 1815, a volcano called Tambora erupted in Indonesia. It was the largest volcanic eruption in recorded history. Tambora's eruption blasted enormous amounts of ash high into the atmosphere. In the months that followed, winds distributed the ash around the globe. The **fine** ash particles in the air blocked some of the sunlight reaching Earth's surface. Less sunlight meant less warmth. Because of Tambora, the weather was much colder than normal in 1816. There were hard frosts in New England all summer long. A foot of snow fell in eastern Canada in June. Weeks of cold rain killed most of the crops in Europe. Many people called 1816 "the year without a summer." **C**

33

**C** *Literal* Describe a specific example of how and why the eruption of a volcano affected the weather.

» In the spring of 1815, a volcano erupted in Indonesia, sending very small pieces of ash into the air all over the earth. The ash blocked the sunlight so the summer that followed was much colder than usual in many places around the world.

**A** [Have students read pages 34 and 35 silently.]

**B** *Literal* What goes on below Earth's surface to form a volcano? What happens above Earth's surface to form a volcano?

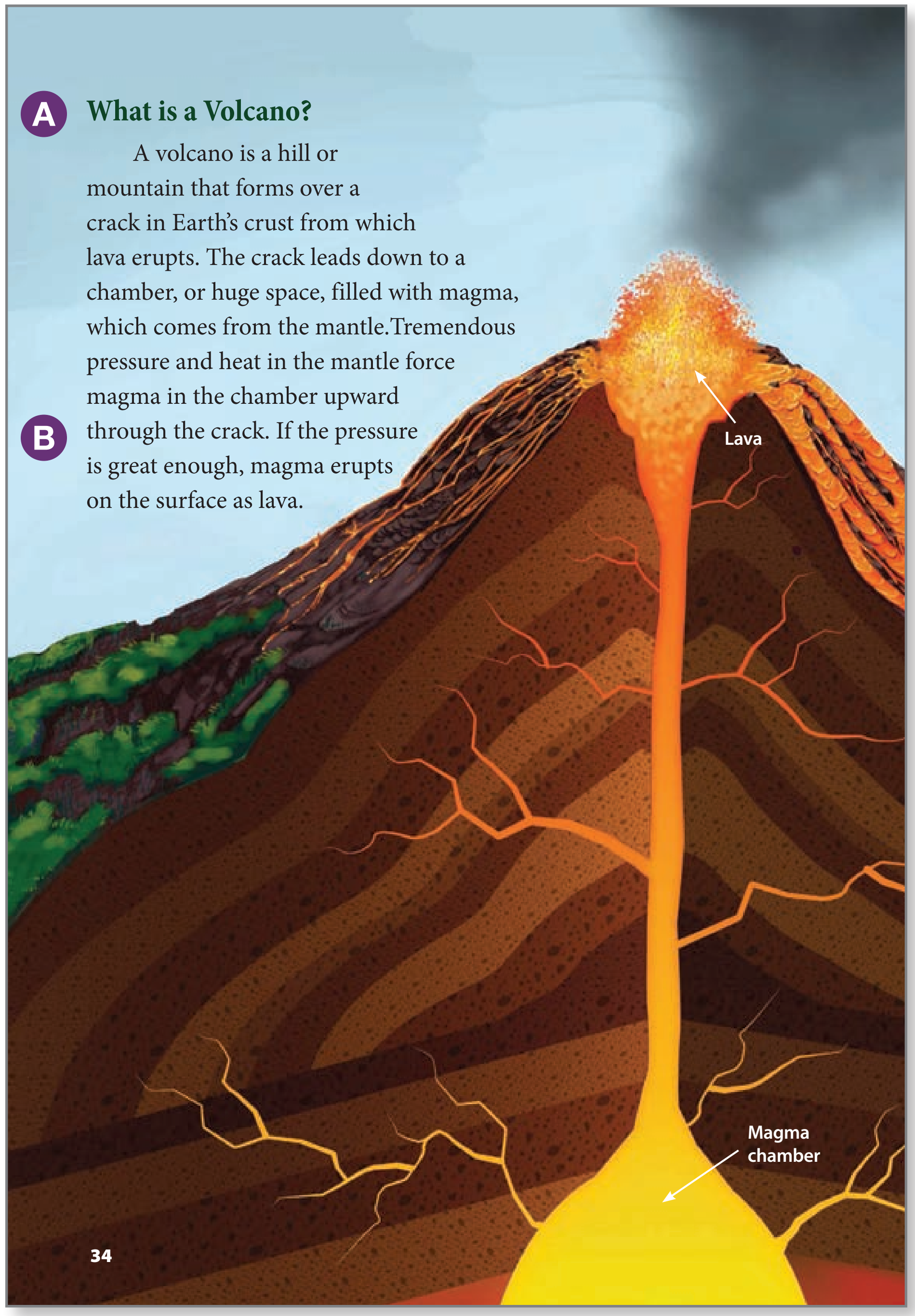
» Below Earth's surface, tremendous pressure and heat in the mantle force magma in the chamber below Earth's crust to move upward through the crack in Earth's surface. If pressure is great enough, magma from below Earth's surface erupts as lava above Earth's surface. Each time lava erupts, a new layer of rock forms on Earth's surface, making the volcano bigger and bigger.

**A**

## What is a Volcano?

A volcano is a hill or mountain that forms over a crack in Earth's crust from which lava erupts. The crack leads down to a chamber, or huge space, filled with magma, which comes from the mantle. Tremendous pressure and heat in the mantle force magma in the chamber upward

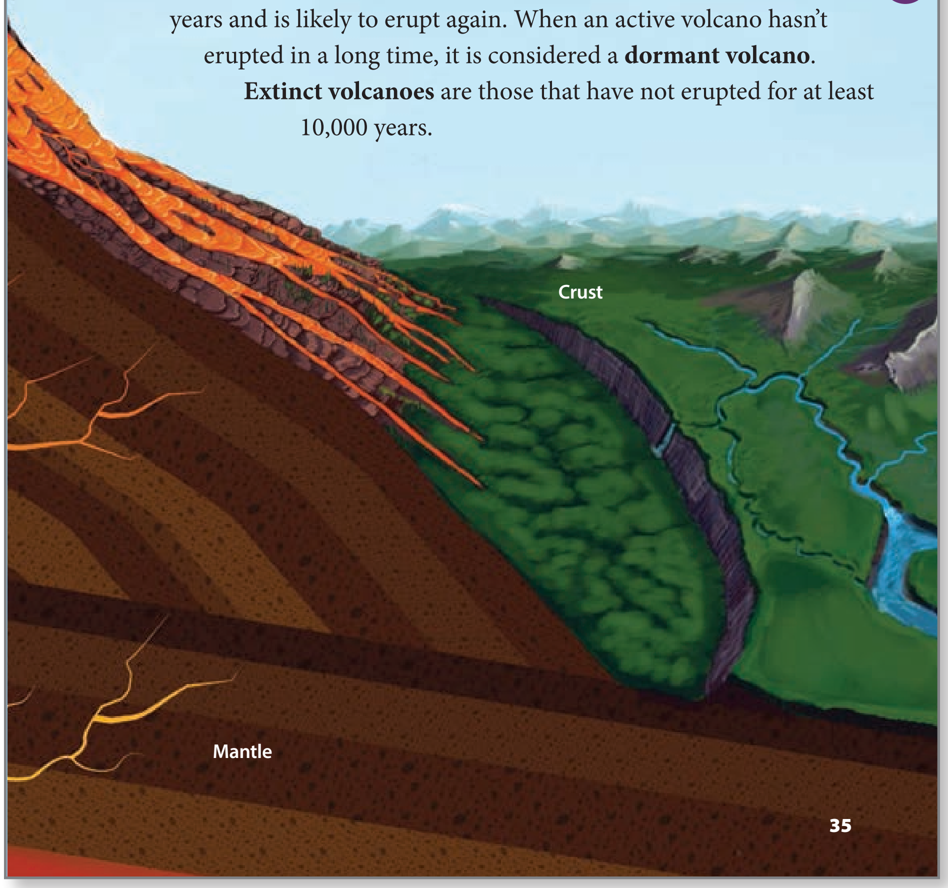
**B** through the crack. If the pressure is great enough, magma erupts on the surface as lava.




34

Some volcanic eruptions are relatively calm and quiet whereas others are sudden and violent. Each time lava erupts, a new layer of rock forms, making the volcano bigger and bigger. Many volcanoes gradually become high, cone-shaped mountains. Mount Vesuvius in Italy and Mount Fuji in Japan are good examples of volcanoes with this distinctive shape.

Vesuvius and Fuji have something else in common. They are **active volcanoes**. An active volcano is one that has erupted in the past 10,000 years and is likely to erupt again. When an active volcano hasn't erupted in a long time, it is considered a **dormant volcano**. **Extinct volcanoes** are those that have not erupted for at least 10,000 years. **C**




35

**C** *Literal* What are the differences between active, dormant, and extinct volcanoes?

» Active volcanoes are ones that have erupted in the past 10,000 years and that will likely erupt again. Dormant volcanoes are active volcanoes that haven't erupted in a long time. Extinct volcanoes are ones that have not erupted for at least 10,000 years.

*Inferential* The text states that active volcanoes are "likely to erupt again." Using this information about active volcanoes, what can you conclude about dormant and extinct volcanoes to further distinguish between the three types of volcanoes?

» Dormant volcanoes could erupt again but haven't done so in many years. Extinct volcanoes most likely will not erupt again.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Mauna Loa | /mon*ə/ /loe*ə/ |
| Paricutin | /par*ee*koo*teen/ |
| Krakatoa | /krak*ə*toe*ə/ |

**A** [Have students read pages 36 and 37 silently.]

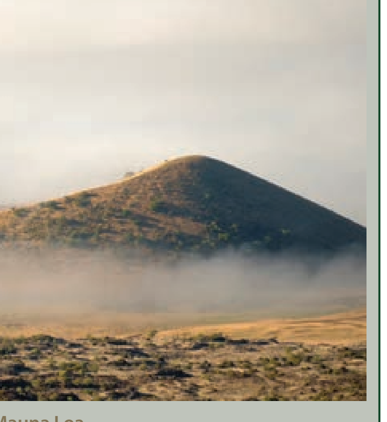
**A** **Action at the Edge**

If you wanted to see a lot of volcanoes, where would you look? Volcanoes form where there are cracks and weak spots in Earth's crust. You'll find those mostly along the boundaries of tectonic plates that are moving apart. Volcanoes are also common where two plates are slowly colliding and one plate is subducting under the other.

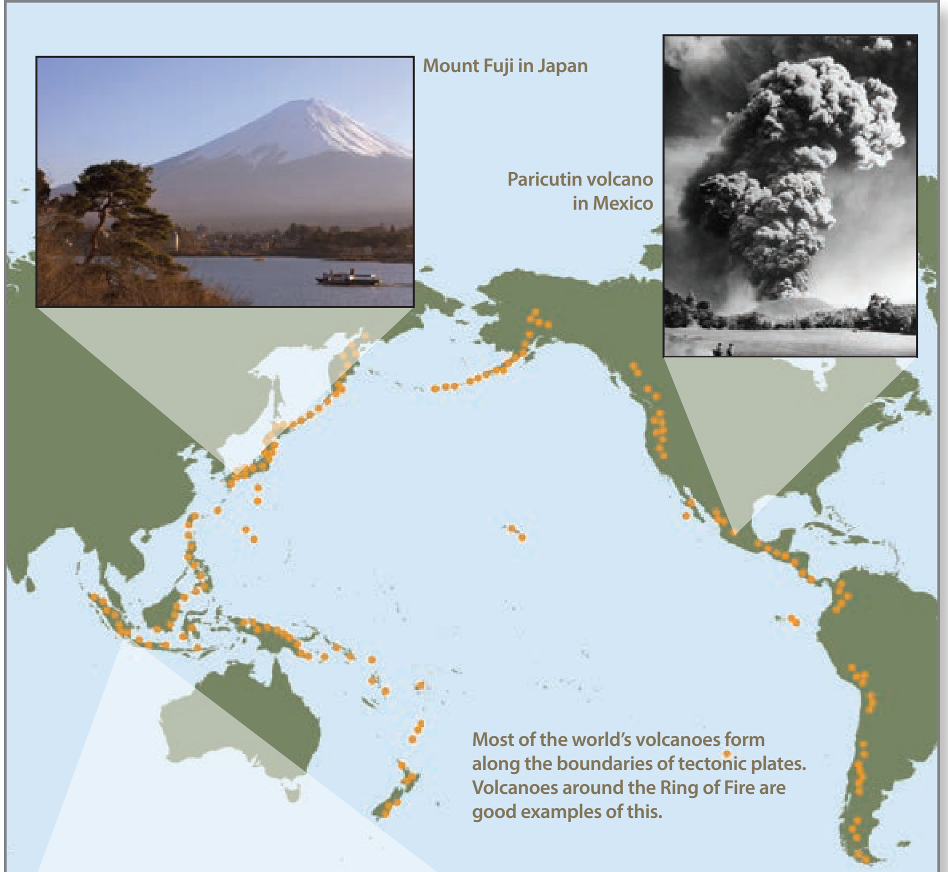
The Pacific Plate is one of Earth's largest tectonic plates. It lies beneath the Pacific Ocean. Along its boundaries, the Pacific Plate is subducting under several other plates. Geologists call the places where this is happening **subduction zones**. Deep ocean trenches and many volcanoes have formed along subduction zones. This is because the edge of a subducting plate melts as it **descends** into Earth's hot mantle. Magma moves up through cracks in the crust and erupts to form volcanoes above the subduction zone.

## World's Tallest Mountain

The largest active volcano is Mauna Loa, a volcano on the island of Hawaii. Mauna Loa's last big eruption was in 1984. The volcano's peak is 13,796 feet above sea level but its base sits on the seafloor. From top to bottom, this enormous volcano measures more than 33,000 feet. Mount Everest is considered the world's highest mountain at 29,029 feet above sea level, even though Mauna Loa is taller. This is because nearly 20,000 feet of Mauna Loa are hidden beneath the sea.


Mauna Loa

36



Mount Fuji in Japan

Paricutin volcano in Mexico

Most of the world's volcanoes form along the boundaries of tectonic plates. Volcanoes around the Ring of Fire are good examples of this.

Krakatoa volcano in Indonesia

More than 450 active volcanoes lie around the edges of the Pacific Plate. Those are just the ones on land! Many more rise up from the seafloor and are hidden beneath the ocean's surface. Together, all these volcanoes form what is called the Ring of Fire around much of the Pacific Ocean. It is one of the most volcanically active regions on Earth. **B**

37

**B** *Inferential* Using information on these pages and in the image on page 37, why do you think the Ring of Fire was given its name?

» Answers may vary, but should include: the text states that the Ring of Fire is one of the most volcanically active regions on the earth; the image shows that active volcanoes lie around the edges of the Pacific Plate, forming a ring around much of the Pacific Ocean.

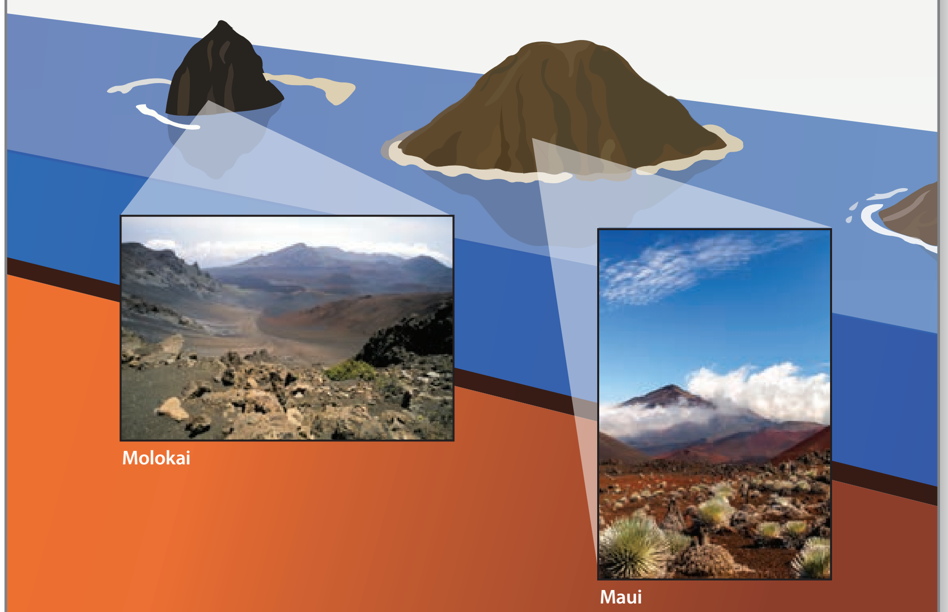
| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Molokai | /mol*o*chee/ |
| Maui | /mow*ee/ |
| Kauai | /koo*wie/ |
| Oahu | /oe*wo*hoo/ |
| Loihi | /loo*ee*hee/ |

**A** [Have students read pages 38 and 39 silently.]

## A Hotspots

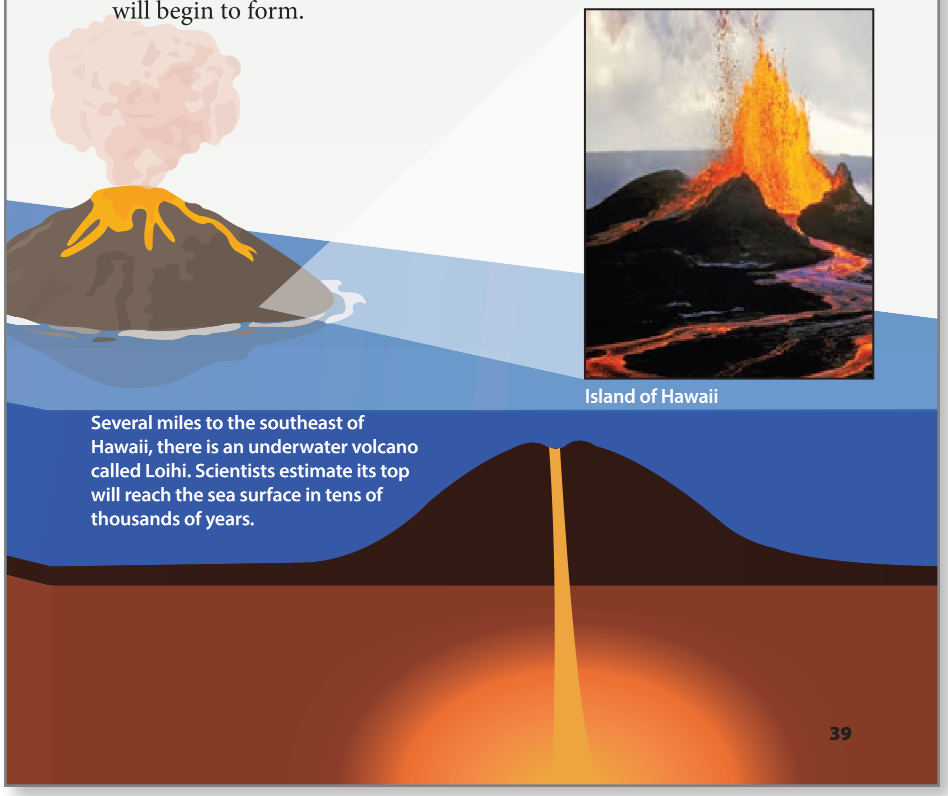
Not all volcanoes form along plate boundaries. Some occur in places that geologists call **hotspots**. A hotspot is a very hot region deep within the mantle. A huge magma chamber forms beneath Earth's crust at a hotspot. Magma periodically erupts from the chamber through cracks in the crust.

Geologists have identified dozens of hotspots worldwide. Some are beneath continental crust. Others are beneath oceanic crust. Hotspots underneath oceanic crust have formed many islands. The process begins when magma erupting from a hotspot forms a volcano on the seafloor. With repeated eruptions, the volcano grows taller and taller over time. Eventually the top of the volcano may rise above the ocean's surface and form an island.




38

Over a very long period of time, ocean hotspots may form chains of islands. This is because hotspots remain in the same place while **C** tectonic plates slowly keep moving. The Hawaiian Islands, for example, were formed by a hotspot located beneath the middle of the Pacific Plate. The island of Kauai formed about 5 million years ago. It began as an undersea volcano that grew tall enough to rise above the water. **B** As the Pacific Plate inched its way northwest, however, Kauai moved along with it. At some point, the island was no longer directly above the hotspot. A new underwater volcano began forming on the seafloor. This volcano grew to form the island of Oahu. Next came the island of Molokai, then Maui, and finally the island of Hawaii. Hawaii currently lies over the hotspot, which is why it has so many active volcanoes. Eventually, Hawaii will drift away from the hotspot and a new island will begin to form.



Island of Hawaii

Several miles to the southeast of Hawaii, there is an underwater volcano called Loihi. Scientists estimate its top will reach the sea surface in tens of thousands of years.

39

**B** *Literal* How does an undersea volcano become a chain of islands?

» Magma erupts from a hotspot underneath oceanic crust, forming a volcano on the seafloor. With repeated eruptions, the volcano grows over time until it rises above the ocean's surface, forming an island. Over time, tectonic plates move and the island moves with them. The hotspot stays in the same place, so the process begins again, resulting in multiple islands.

**Support** What is a hotspot?

» A hotspot is a very hot region deep within the mantle where a huge magma chamber forms. A hotspot can be beneath continental or oceanic crust. Magma periodically erupts from the chamber through cracks in the crust.

**Support** How does a volcano form on the seafloor?

» Magma erupts from a hotspot underneath oceanic crust, forming a volcano on the seafloor.

**C** *Evaluative* What observations suggest that hotspots don't move?

» Answers may vary, but should include: the portions of Earth's layers that are closer to Earth's surface slowly move. The portions of Earth's layers closer to Earth's core do not move. Tectonic plates are made up of the crust and the solid top part of the mantle. Tectonic plates are close to Earth's surface and slowly move. Hotspots are very hot regions deep within the mantle. The mantle is a layer beneath the crust. Hotspots are not close to Earth's surface and are not part of tectonic plates, so they do not move.

**A** [Have students read page 40 silently.]

**B** *Literal* What happens both above and below Earth's surface to form geysers?

» Above Earth's surface, water drains down into openings in the ground above the magma chamber. Below Earth's surface, heat from the magma turns the water scalding hot. As the hot water rises back up through the openings below Earth's surface, it turns into steam, which increases the pressure, forcing the mixture of steam and hot water rushing and bubbling upward. Then it explodes out of the ground and above Earth's surface as a hissing fountain of hot water and steam.

**C** **Challenge** Is the supervolcano in Yellowstone National Park active, dormant, or extinct? How do you know?

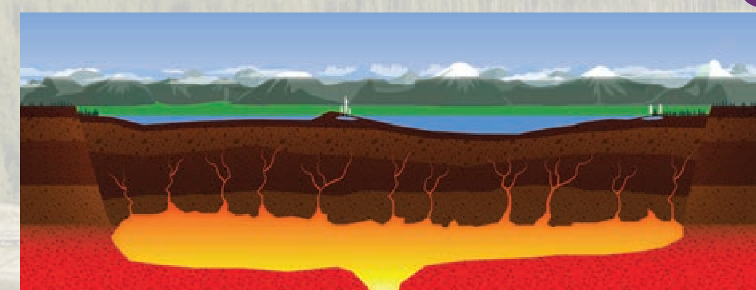
» Active; it erupts more than a dozen times a day.

## A Garden of Geysers

Have you ever been to Yellowstone National Park? If so, you've stood over North America's largest hotspot. A great **plume** of magma rises from the mantle at this spot. It fills an enormous magma chamber beneath Earth's crust. In short, Yellowstone sits on top of one of the world's largest volcanoes. Geologists call it a supervolcano.

Heat from the magma beneath Yellowstone is what creates the park's **hot springs** and **geysers**. Geysers are hot springs that periodically erupt, like volcanoes of hot water. Geysers form when water drains down into openings in the ground above the magma chamber. Heat from the magma turns the water scalding hot. As the hot water rises back up through the openings, some of it turns to steam. This increases the pressure, forcing the mixture of steam and hot water to rush and bubble upward. When it reaches the surface, a hissing fountain of hot water and steam explodes out of the ground. Yellowstone's most famous geyser is called Old Faithful. It got its name because it erupts reliably more than a dozen times a day.

Magma itself hasn't erupted from the Yellowstone hotspot for hundreds of years. Could the Yellowstone supervolcano erupt again? It's possible, geologists say, but most doubt it will happen anytime soon.



Yellowstone National Park's geysers and hot springs are all created by the heat of the huge pool of magma below the ground.

40


Old Faithful in Yellowstone National Park

41

**Note**

Question 1 and Activity Page 1.3 relate to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* 10 minutes

- Use the following questions to discuss the chapter.

1. *Inferential* How do scientists determine where volcanoes might develop?
   » Scientists know that volcanoes develop where there is a crack in Earth's crust from which lava erupts. In order for lava to erupt, there must be a chamber of magma from the mantle underneath Earth's crust and there must be a great deal of pressure and heat in the mantle. Scientists have learned that these necessary features for a volcano to develop are commonly found along plate boundaries and above hotspots. Years of observation and research have shown that volcanoes do generally form along plate boundaries and above hotspots. In determining where plate boundaries and hotspots are located, scientists can also determine where volcanoes might develop.
2. *Inferential* Why do you think volcanoes, geysers, and hot springs are common along plate boundaries and above hotspots?
   » Volcanoes, geysers, and hot springs are common along plate boundaries because they form where there are cracks, openings, and weak spots in Earth's crust. Cracks, openings, and weak spots often occur at tectonic plate boundaries, where tectonic plates are moving apart from one another or colliding with each other. Volcanoes are common above hotspots because magma erupts from a hotspot, which can form a volcano. Similar to volcanoes, geysers and hot springs can form above a hotspot because that is where a huge magma chamber forms. Water draining into the magma chamber causes geysers and hot springs above hotspots.

- Have students turn to Activity Pages 1.3 and 1.4 and refer to the displayed Evidence Collector's Chart.
- Remind students that this chart is being used throughout the unit to collect evidence of changes to the earth related to specific causes of geologic change. The evidence represents what geologists examine to determine how powerful forces above and below Earth's surface work to change the earth.
- Have a student read aloud the information under "What is the cause?" in the fourth row. Explain that students must determine what evidence is in the chapter about pressure and heat in the mantle forcing magma upward through a crack in Earth's surface. (page 34)
- Have students refer to the remaining images on Activity Page 1.4. Engage students in a discussion about the images, talking about which image represents evidence of pressure and heat moving magma upward through a crack in Earth's surface. (image showing lava erupting out of a volcano)

- Ensure students understand why the image showing lava erupting out of a volcano is the correct image. (The image shows the result, or evidence, of pressure and heat in the mantle forcing magma upward through a crack in Earth's surface as lava spewing out of a volcano; lava is magma that has erupted on Earth's surface.)
- Have students cut out the correct image, glue it to the chart in the "What evidence is there?" column, and write the following information for chapter number, key words, and letter in the chart:

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | *Tremendous pressure and heat in the mantle force magma in a chamber below Earth's crust to move upward through a crack in Earth's surface.* | *image: lava erupting out of a volcano*<br><br>*key words:* magma erupts as lava | D |

## Word Work: *Fine* 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "The fine ash particles in the air blocked some of the sunlight reaching Earth's surface."
2. Say the word *fine* with me.
3. *Fine* in this sentence means very small.
4. We shredded the cheese into very fine pieces and then sprinkled them on top of our tacos.
5. What are some other examples of things that are fine? Be sure to use the word *fine* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "______ is fine."]
6. What part of speech is the word *fine*?
   » adjective

[Use a *Multiple-Meaning Word* activity for follow-up. Tell students the word *fine* is a word with multiple meanings. Share the following with students.]

Meaning #1: fine—very small

Meaning #2: fine—very well or pleasant

I am going to read several sentences. Listen to the context, or the text surrounding *fine* in the sentence, for clues as to which meaning is being used. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #1, hold up one finger. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #2, hold up two fingers.

1. Her mother says she was born on a fine spring day.
   » 2
2. In my opinion, the afternoon is a fine time to have a snack.
   » 2
3. A very fine rain was falling this morning.
   » 1
4. On special occasions, we set the table with my grandparents' fine china.
   » 2
5. Sand is made up of fine pieces of rock.
   » 1

## GRAMMAR 15 minutes

### Materials

- Commas Poster Addition
- Quotation Marks Poster
- Activity Page 6.2

### Introduce Commas and Quotation Marks

- Tell students that today they will focus on commas and quotation marks.
- Refer to the Commas Poster Addition. Read it aloud, noting the addition that addresses the use of commas with quotations.
- Remind students that commas are used in sentences to indicate where a pause is needed.
- Refer to the Quotation Marks Poster you prepared in advance and have a student read it aloud.
- Tell students that one way quotation marks are used in writing is to show that a statement has been taken directly from another text and is being quoted, or written exactly as it is in the original text.
- Refer to the first sentence you prepared in advance. Read it aloud and explain that this sentence includes information being quoted from page 32 of *The Changing Earth.*

| |
|---|
| The text states, "Erupting volcanoes are dramatic natural events." |

- Draw attention to the first part of the sentence, *The text states,*. Explain that the comma separates the first part of the sentence from the second part of the sentence. Explain that the first part of the sentence shows what the text does (*The text states*).
- Note that the comma between the first part of the sentence and the second part of the sentence is a signal to pause before reading the second part of the sentence.

Point out that the comma comes before the quotation marks.

- Point to the quotation marks in the second part of the sentence and explain that these show what is being quoted, or exactly what is written in the text. ("*Erupting volcanoes are dramatic natural events.*") Note that the quotation marks set off what is being quoted from what the text does.
- Point out that the end punctuation of what is being quoted is inside the quotation marks. Also, point out that both the first word of the sentence and the first word in quotation marks are capitalized.
- Explain that the sentence could also be organized differently so that the quotation is split up within the sentence. Tell students when a quotation is split up within a sentence, it is called a split or interrupted quotation. Rewrite the sentence on the board/chart paper as follows:

> "Erupting volcanoes," the text states, "are dramatic natural events."

- Explain that, just as in the previous sentence, the quotation marks set off what is being quoted from what the text does.
- Point out that the comma after *volcanoes* still separates what is being quoted from what the text does and indicates a pause is needed.
- Note that there is another comma after *states*, setting off what the text does from the second part of what is being quoted. This second comma indicates another pause.
- Also, point out that the end punctuation for each part of what is being quoted is inside the quotation marks (a comma in the first part and a period in the second part).
- Note that the first word of the sentence is also the first word in quotation marks and it is capitalized. Explain that the word *are* in the second part of what is being quoted is not capitalized because it is a continuation of the statement at the beginning of the sentence and is not the beginning of a new statement.
- Tell students that another way quotation marks are used in writing is to show that a person is speaking. Quotation marks set off what is being said from who is speaking. Remind students that when people are speaking in a story, it is called *dialogue*.
- Point to the first example of dialogue that you prepared in advance. Insert commas and quotation marks in the appropriate places, reinforcing why the placement of each is correct using the following guidelines. Note that this is another example of a split quotation.

> "What," I asked my friends, "is your favorite color?"

  – The words being said are *What* and *is your favorite color?*. Quotation marks should go around these parts of the sentence.

### Note

This lesson only briefly reviews the expected forms of commas and quotation marks. It instead focuses mainly on the split quotation form. However, if you feel your students need more instruction on the expected forms rather than the split quotation form, focus on the expected forms in this lesson instead. Additional resources can be found in earlier CKLA materials, specifically Grade 2, Unit 2, Lessons 4, 9, and 11, and Grade 3, Unit 4, Lessons 17 and 19.

- The words about who is doing the speaking are *I asked my friends*. Commas should go after *What* inside the quotation marks and after *friends* before the quotation marks.

- Point to the second and third examples of dialogue that you prepared in advance. Have students direct you as to where the commas and quotation marks should be inserted. Note that these are also examples of split quotations.

> "Green," Seth responded, "is my favorite color."
>
> "My favorite color," Bonnie said, "is purple."

**Support** Have students take on the roles of the speakers, Seth and Bonnie, in the example sentences. As students say the dialogue aloud, have them cup their hands around their mouths as they speak [(cupped hands) "Green," (no cupped hands) Seth responded, (cupped hands) "is my favorite color."]. Explain that cupping your hands around your mouth is just like adding quotation marks in a written sentence. Quotation marks show the reader exactly what a person has said during a conversation or dialogue.

- Have students turn to Activity Page 6.2 and guide them through the first sentence, making sure they rewrite the sentence properly, adding commas and quotation marks in the appropriate locations. Have students complete the rest of Activity Page 6.2 for homework, or if you feel they need more assistance, complete the activity page as a teacher-guided activity.

## MORPHOLOGY 15 minutes

### Introduce Root *rupt*

**Materials**

- Roots Poster
- Activity Page 6.3

- Remind students that prefixes are added to the beginning of root words and suffixes are added to the end of root words to make new words. Today students will focus on a word part that is a Latin root and can appear at different places within a word.
- Explain that a root is a main element of a word that forms the base of its meaning. A prefix or suffix added to the root can change the meaning.
- Write the Latin root *rupt* on the Roots Poster on display in the classroom from Unit 2 and explain that it is pronounced /rupt/.
- Explain that *rupt* means "to break or burst." Add the meaning to the poster as well.
- Explain that adding prefixes and suffixes can change the part of speech of a root. Tell students that words with the root *rupt* can be nouns, verbs, or adjectives.
- Write *erupt* on the board. Briefly discuss the part of speech and the meaning of the word. (*Erupt* is a verb. It means to send out rock, lava, and ash in a sudden explosion.)

- Remind students that they read about volcanoes erupting in Chapter 4 of *The Changing Earth*. (*The Kilauea volcano has been erupting continuously since 1983*.)
- Have students provide sentences using the word *erupt*. (Answers may vary.)
- Write *eruption* on the board. Ask students to discuss the possible meaning of *eruption* with the meaning of *erupt* in mind. (*Eruption* is a noun. It means the process of sending out rock, lava, and ash in a sudden explosion.)
- Remind students they also read the word *eruption* in Chapter 4 of *The Changing Earth*. (*Tambora's eruption blasted enormous amounts of ash high into the atmosphere*.)
- Have students provide sentences using the word *eruption*. (Answers may vary.)
- Continue in this manner for the remaining *rupt* words, using the following chart as a guide.

| Affixed Word | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| abrupt | (adjective) sudden and unexpected; breaking through suddenly | The firefighter had to make an abrupt departure from the restaurant after learning there was a fire nearby. |
| disrupt | (verb) to disturb something; to cause disorder by breaking through something that is happening | While some could say that a safety drill might disrupt class time, it is still an important exercise to be prepared in case of emergency. |
| uninterrupted | (adjective) continuing without breaking or being stopped by something | With all of the noises outdoors, it just might be impossible to have an uninterrupted night of sleep while camping! |
| rupture | (noun) a break or burst | A rupture in the water pipes caused water to soak everything in their apartment. |

- Have students turn to Activity Page 6.3. Briefly review the directions. Complete the first two sentences together as a class. Have students complete the rest of Activity Page 6.3 for homework, or if you feel they need more assistance, complete the entire activity page as a teacher-guided activity.

## Note

You will not write the information in the shaded columns on the board/chart paper, as that information is intended for use during oral instruction. Complete as many examples as time permits.

## SPELLING

15 minutes

### Introduce Spelling Words

- Explain that students will practice 12 words related to roots they have studied in morphology. Apart from the roots, these words do not follow one single spelling pattern. However, multiple words in the list do include two less frequently used spellings that may be worth calling to students' attention:
  - the spelling 'ch' pronounced as /k/ in *hierarchy*, *matriarch*, and *anarchy* (but not in *archrival*)
  - the spelling 'ph' pronounced as /f/ in *autograph*, *biographer*, *calligraphy*, and *paragraph*
- Tell students they will be assessed on these words and will write a dictated sentence related to one or more of these words in Lesson 10. Tell students that after they write the words for the assessment, you will say a sentence out loud and students will write the sentence. You will say the sentence several more times to be sure students have had a chance to write the entire sentence.
- Introduce the words by writing them on the board/chart paper. First say the word aloud, and then sound out each syllable, naming each letter aloud as you write it. Continue syllable by syllable until the word is spelled correctly. You may wish to use the pronunciation chart to guide students in saying the words.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. hierarchy | 7. calligraphy |
| 2. matriarch | 8. paragraph |
| 3. archrival | 9. eruption |
| 4. anarchy | 10. uninterrupted |
| 5. autograph | 11. rupture |
| 6. biographer | 12. abrupt |

#### *Pronunciation/Syllabication Chart*

The following chart includes pronunciation and syllabication information for the spelling words. The first column lists the words. The second column breaks the words into decodable sounds based on the Core Knowledge code approach to decoding words. The third column lists syllable types in each word. This information is provided so you can present these new, unfamiliar spelling words in a way that calls upon and reinforces the manner in which students were taught to decode and encode in the earlier grades.

Students who participated in CKLA instruction in Grades K–2 have been taught to read and spell using an explicit, systematic phonics approach. These students will be most successful in learning to spell increasingly challenging words if they are

### Materials

- Activity Pages 6.4, 6.5, SR.1

### Note

Remember to point out specific spelling patterns in each word and their relationship to the sounds and spellings on the Individual Code Chart.

encouraged to segment each word into manageable syllables and then make use of the specific letter-sound code knowledge they were taught in earlier grades. This letter-sound knowledge is summarized on the Individual Code Chart, which lists each sound in the English language, followed by all the possible ways that the given sound could be spelled; the spellings for each sound are listed in the order of frequency with which they occur in English, from most frequent to least frequent spelling. The Individual Code Chart is located in the Activity Book (Activity Page SR.1) and in the Teacher Resources section of the Unit 1 Teacher Guide.

As you introduce and write each word, it may be helpful if you point out particular spelling patterns within each word and show students where these spellings are reflected on the Individual Code Chart. For example, you might note that the word *hierarchy* includes a /k/ sound spelled as 'ch' in the second syllable of the word and then point out the 'ch' spelling for /k/ that is included on the Individual Code Chart.

If you are unfamiliar with the CKLA phonics approach and/or have limited phonics training, you may also find the following materials in the Teacher Resources section of the Unit 1 Teacher Guide helpful: "Using Chunking to Decode Multisyllable Words" and "Sound and Spelling of Schwa."

If you have taught CKLA in Grades K–3, you will notice the sound-spelling notation is different in Grade 4 than in previous grades. In Grades K–3, we noted each individual sound spelling within //. For example, the sound spellings for *hierarchy* would be /h/ /ie/ /er/ /ar/ /k/ /ee/. In Grade 4, we use a sound-spelling notation that follows linguistic and dictionary conventions, making each notation easier to see and read. For example, the word *hierarchy* is now notated as /hie*er*ar*kee/.

| Word | CK Code | Syllable Type |
|---|---|---|
| hierarchy | /hie*er*ar*kee/ | open*r-controlled*<br>r-controlled*open |
| matriarch | /mae*tree*ark/ | open*open*r-controlled |
| archrival | /arch*rie*vəl/ | r-controlled*open*ə |
| anarchy | /an*ar*kee/ | closed*r-controlled*open |
| autograph | /aw*toe*graf/ | digraph*open*closed |
| biographer | /bie*o*grə*fer/ | open*open*ə*r-controlled |
| calligraphy | /kə*li*grə*fee/ | ə*open*ə*open |
| paragraph | /paer*ə*graf/ | r-controlled*ə*closed |
| eruption | /ee*rup*shən/ | open*closed*ə |
| uninterrupted | /un*in*ter*rupt*ed/ | closed*closed*<br>r-controlled*closed*closed |
| rupture | /rup*cher/ | closed*r-controlled |
| abrupt | /ə*brupt/ | ə*closed |

- After writing and pronouncing the words, use the following chart to define each word and provide an example of how to use it in a sentence.

| Spelling Word | Definition | Example Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| hierarchy | (noun) a system in which people are placed into social classes of different levels of power and importance | When the server was promoted to assistant manager, he moved up in the restaurant hierarchy. |
| matriarch | (noun) a woman who controls a family, group, or government | We consider our grandmother the matriarch of our family because she holds the family together. |
| archrival | (noun) a chief or main rival or opponent | When the race car driver was traded from one race team to another, his archrival suddenly became his teammate instead of his competition. |
| anarchy | (noun) a situation not controlled by rules or laws and without a leader | The government was overthrown after a protest, leading to anarchy throughout the country. |
| autograph | (noun) a person's handwritten signature | We waited for the baseball player after the game to ask for his autograph on my baseball. |
| biographer | (noun) a person who writes the story of someone's life | The biographer did lots of research, conducted interviews, and followed the legendary guitarist for a year before writing the musician's life story. |
| calligraphy | (noun) the art of beautiful handwriting | They requested that their wedding invitations be written in calligraphy, as they wanted their invitations to look nice for such a special occasion. |
| paragraph | (noun) a piece of writing that includes a few sentences focused on a certain subject in an organized manner | He wrote a paragraph about spaghetti, his favorite food. |
| eruption | (noun) **1.** the process of sending out rock, lava, and ash in a sudden explosion; **2.** an event in which something breaks or bursts in a sudden and often violent way | There was an eruption of laughter in the otherwise silent auditorium during a funny scene in the play. |
| uninterrupted | (adjective) continuing without breaking or being stopped by something | I rarely get the chance to work in my garden uninterrupted, but when I do, I can make good progress in taking care of the plants. |
| rupture | (noun) a break or burst | The doctors explained that a rupture in the appendix is very serious and requires emergency surgery, so I was lucky that they discovered the problem before that happened. |
| abrupt | (adjective) sudden and unexpected; breaking through suddenly | We had to leave the park in an abrupt way because it started to rain very hard. |

- Tell students the word list will remain on display until the assessment so they can refer to it until then.
- Have students turn to Activity Pages 6.4 and 6.5. Explain that they will take home Activity Page 6.4 to practice the spelling words and complete Activity Page 6.5 for homework.

## TAKE-HOME MATERIAL

### Grammar; Morphology; Spelling

- Have students take home Activity Pages 6.2, 6.3, and 6.5 to complete for homework and Activity Page 6.4 to practice spelling the words.
- Have students take home a text selection from the *Fluency Supplement* if you are choosing to provide additional fluency practice.

### Materials

- Activity Pages 6.2–6.5
- *Fluency Supplement* selection (optional)

# Lesson 7

## Unit 6: Geology

## CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

✓ Explain that myths helped explain unpredictable natural events

✓ Describe how myths were used in early civilizations to explain volcanic activity

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Reading** | | |
| Read-Aloud: Chapter 5 "Mythic Volcano Spirits" | 40 min. | *The Changing Earth*; Activity Pages 7.1–7.3 |
| Word Work: *Lofty* | 5 min. | |
| **Writing** | | |
| Introduce a Wiki Entry | 45 min. | Volcano Wiki Entry; Wiki Entry Rubric; Wiki Entry Editing Checklist; Activity Pages 7.4, 7.5; *The Changing Earth*; Volcano Graphic Organizer |
| **Take-Home Material** | | |
| Reading | * | Activity Page 7.3 |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to describe how myths were used in early civilizations to explain volcanic activity.

**Writing**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to explain the purpose and features of a wiki entry and be prepared to take notes to plan for writing their own wiki entry.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

### *Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

> Read to understand the significance of volcano myths and how they were used in early civilizations to explain volcanoes and volcanic activity.

*Writing*

- Create a Volcano Wiki Entry with the following content to display during the writing lesson. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit.

## Volcano

**Description**

A volcano is a hill or mountain that forms over a crack in Earth's crust from which lava erupts.

**Location**

Volcanoes occur all over the world, particularly along tectonic plate boundaries and above hotspots.

**Types of Volcanoes**

There are three types of volcanoes:

- active
- dormant
- extinct

An active volcano has erupted in the past 10,000 years and is likely to erupt again. A dormant volcano is considered active but has not erupted for a very long time—several hundred years, for example. An extinct volcano has not erupted for at least 10,000 years. An extinct volcano no longer has a chamber full of magma beneath it, so it is not expected to erupt again.

**Additional Information**

Volcanoes can be creative forces. They can add new land to our planet and bring minerals from deep inside the earth to the surface. Volcanoes can also be dangerous and destructive. They can fill the air with poisonous gases and hot ash. They can also release rivers of lava that destroy everything in their path. Volcanoes can add things to Earth's surface but can also destroy things on Earth's surface.

**References**

*The Changing Earth* (2014)

- Prepare and display the Wiki Entry Rubric and the Wiki Entry Editing Checklist. Alternatively, you may access digital versions in the digital components for this unit.

- Prepare a Volcano Graphic Organizer with the following labels to display and complete in class. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit.

| Take Notes on a Volcano | |
|---|---|
| Name of the Volcano | |
| Location of the Volcano | |
| Type of Volcano; Date of Last Eruption | |
| Description of Volcano or of Last Eruption | |
| Other Facts | |

| References for Volcano Wiki Entry | | |
|---|---|---|
| Title | Date | Source (Book or Web Address) |
| | | |
| | | |

*Grammar; Morphology; Spelling*

- Collect Activity Pages 6.2, 6.3, and 6.5 to review and grade as there are no grammar, morphology, or spelling lessons today.

## READING 45 minutes

### Read-Aloud: Chapter 5 "Mythic Volcano Spirits" 40 minutes

*Introduce the Chapter* 5 minutes

**Materials**

- *The Changing Earth*
- Activity Pages 7.1–7.3

- Tell students you will read aloud Chapter 5, "Mythic Volcano Spirits." They should follow along in their Reader as you read.
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Preview the core vocabulary words before reading the chapter.
- Begin by telling students the first vocabulary word they will encounter in this chapter is *offerings.*
- Have them find the word on page 42 of the Reader. Explain that each vocabulary word is bolded the first time it appears in the chapter.
- Explain that the glossary contains definitions of all the vocabulary words in this Reader. Have students refer to the glossary at the back of the Reader, locate *offering*, and then have a student read the definition.

- Explain the following:
  - The part of speech follows each word in an abbreviated format as follows: noun–*n*.; verb–*v*.; adjective–*adj*.; adverb–*adv*.
  - Alternate forms of the word appearing in the chapter may follow the definition. They may be a different part of speech than the original word.
- Have students reference Activity Page 7.1 while you read each word and its meaning noting that:
  - The page number (for the first occurrence of the word in the chapter) appears in bold print after the definition.
  - Words are listed in the order in which they appear in the chapter.

1. **offering**, ***n.*** something that is presented as an act of worship (**offerings**) (**42**)
2. **strong-willed**, ***adj.*** determined to do what you want even if other people tell you not to (**43**)
3. **bitter**, ***adj.*** **1.** resentful and angry because of unfair treatment; **2.** very cold (**43**)
4. **outsmart**, ***v.*** to trick or defeat someone by being clever (**44**)
5. **revenge**, ***n.*** the act of getting even for a wrongdoing (**46**)
6. **caldera**, ***n.*** a crater caused by the collapse of the top of a volcano (**46**)
7. **lofty**, ***adj.*** high up (**47**)
8. **eternal**, ***adj.*** lasting forever, with no beginning and no end (**49**)
9. **elder**, ***n.*** a person who is older, respected, and often in a position of authority (**elders**) (**50**)

| Vocabulary Chart for Chapter 5 "Mythic Volcano Spirits" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3**<br>**Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2**<br>**General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | caldera | offering<br>strong-willed<br>bitter<br>outsmart<br>revenge<br>lofty<br>eternal<br>elder |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | caldera | eterno |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | | bitter<br>lofty |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | fond of<br>out of the reach of<br>gained the upper hand | |

- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

> Read to understand the significance of volcano myths and how they were used in early civilizations to explain volcanoes and volcanic activity.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

> How do volcano myths help explain volcanic activity?

## *Read "Mythic Volcano Spirits"* **20 minutes**

Read the chapter aloud, as students follow along in their Readers. As you read, stop to read and discuss the corresponding guided reading supports. Guided reading supports in brackets are directional and not intended to be read aloud. All other phrases and sentences are intended to be read aloud verbatim. Whenever asking a guided reading support question, explicitly encourage students to refer to the text and reread prior to offering an answer.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Pele | /pae*lae/ |
| Kilauea | /kee*lə*wae*ə/ |
| Na-maka-o-kaha'i | /no*mo*kə*oe*kə*hie/ |
| Hi'iaka | /hee*ie*ə*kə/ |
| Kauai | /koo*wie/ |
| Lohi'au | /loe*ee*o/ |

**A** [Read pages 42 and 43 aloud, as students read along silently.]

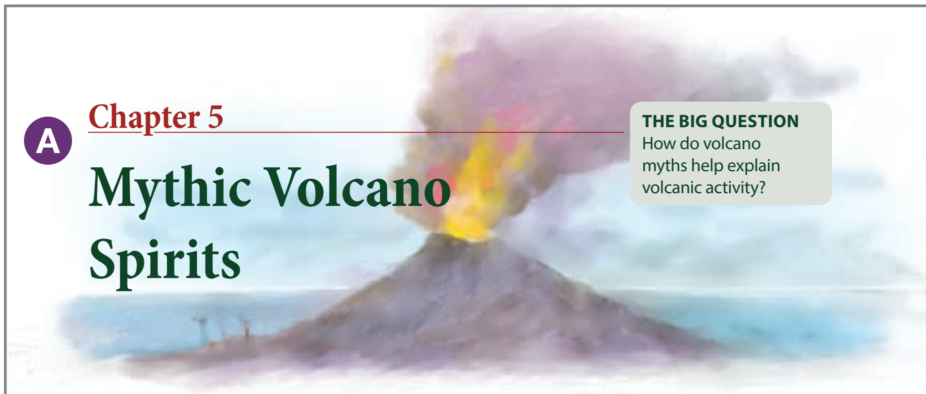
**B** [Ask a student to reread the title of the chapter and the first two sentences aloud.]

*Inferential* What is a synonym for the word *spirits* as it is used in this context?

» *gods; supernatural forces*

**C** *Literal* According to the text, how did people make sense of volcanic eruptions?

» People believed volcano gods lived inside volcanoes; when they were angry, volcanoes erupted and when they were content, volcanoes were quiet.



Chapter 5

# Mythic Volcano Spirits

**THE BIG QUESTION**
How do volcano myths help explain volcanic activity?

**B** An erupting volcano seems almost alive. It hisses, rumbles, and makes the ground shake. It's easy to understand why ancient cultures thought powerful spirits lived inside volcanoes. Belief in volcano gods helped people make sense of volcanic eruptions. Some believed that when volcanoes were quiet, it meant the volcano gods were content. **C** Some people also believed that when volcanoes erupted, it meant the gods were angry. People tried to keep volcano gods happy with **offerings** of food, flowers, and animals.

People told stories to help explain why unpredictable events like volcanoes occurred. Many stories included volcano gods as part of the explanation. These stories, or myths, were retold again and again. Over time, volcano myths became an important part of a culture's history and tradition. The myths were creative explanations for natural processes and events.

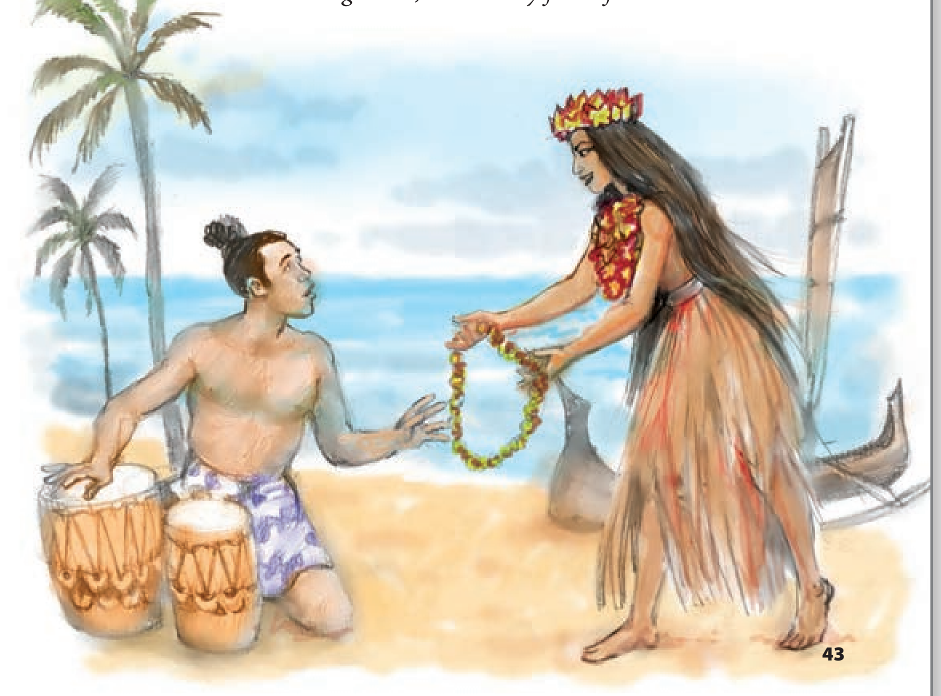
## Hawaii's Goddess of Fire

Pele is the ancient Hawaiian goddess of fire and volcanoes. She is known for creating volcanic mountains and islands. When she unleashes fiery lava, she also destroys land and everything on it. Belief in Pele began centuries ago. Native Hawaiians believe the goddess lives in Kilauea, an active volcano on the island of Hawaii in the Hawaiian Island chain. This Hawaiian volcano myth tells the story of how she came to make her home there.

42

*Long ago, Pele lived in the spirit world with her parents and many brothers and sisters. Pele was* ***strong-willed*** *and had a short temper. When she got angry, she caused things to burn and lava to erupt from the ground. Pele got along with most of her siblings except for her sister, Na-maka-o-kaha'i, the goddess of the ocean and seawater. Over time, Pele and Na-maka-o-kaha'i became* ***bitter*** *enemies. Pele decided to find a new home, so she set off across Earth's ocean in a great canoe. Several of her brothers and her youngest sister, Hi'iaka, came with her.* **D**

*The canoe landed on Kauai, the northernmost island in the Hawaiian Island chain. There, Pele met and fell in love with Lohi'au, the island's king. She boldly asked him to marry her. After a moment's hesitation, Lohi'au agreed. Who could say no to a goddess? Before the wedding could take place, however, Pele insisted on creating a suitable place for the couple to live. Pele's idea of a good home was a huge hole in the ground, warmed by fires of hot lava.*





**D** *Inferential* Why might Pele have decided to find a new home?

» Pele and her sister, Na-maka-o-kaha'i, were bitter enemies, meaning they hated each other and had lots of negative feelings toward each other. Pele may have thought she would be happier and better off living somewhere her sister did not live.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Oahu | /oe*wo*hoo/ |
| Molokai | /mol*o*chee/ |
| Maui | /mow*ee/ |

**A** [Read pages 44 and 45 aloud, as students read along silently.]

**B** *Inferential* What natural occurrence is being explained in this passage?

» The creation of volcanoes on the Hawaiian Island chain is being explained in this passage. Each time Pele moves to a new island to get away from her sister, she creates a volcano to live in, which creates a new island.

**Challenge** How is the creation of volcanoes described in Chapter 4, "Earth's Fiery Volcanoes"?

» Magma erupts from a hotspot underneath oceanic crust, forming a volcano on the seafloor. With repeated eruptions, the volcano grows over time until it rises above the ocean's surface, forming an island. Over time, tectonic plates move and the island moves with them. The hotspot stays in the same place, so the process begins again, resulting in multiple islands.

**A** *Pele had a magic digging stick. When she jabbed the stick into the ground, a crater would open up in which volcanic fires burned. Pele began digging along Kauai's rocky coast. Every time she made a crater, seawater mysteriously flooded in and put out the flames. Much to her dismay, Pele discovered that her sister, Na-maka-o-kaha'i, had followed Pele to Kauai. Na-maka-o-kaha'i was trying to ruin Pele's plans to build a home and get married.*

*Hoping to* ***outsmart*** *her hateful sister, Pele fled to Oahu, the next island in the Hawaiian chain. She took her youngest sister, Hi'iaka, and her brothers with her. Na-maka-o-kaha'i followed them and, once again, she caused seawater to fill every crater Pele dug. So Pele kept moving,*
**B** *traveling to the islands of Molokai and then Maui. There, too, Na-maka-o-kaha'i worked her watery magic. Time and again, she turned Pele's craters into cold, wet holes in the ground.*

44

*Finally, Pele reached Hawaii, the largest island in the chain. Pele climbed the mountain called Kilauea and dug a crater at its top. The bright orange flames of volcanic fire flared and did not go out. Pele's crater on Kilauea was far above the sea, out of the reach of the ocean goddess.*

*Pele was pleased with her new home. She sent Hi'iaka to fetch her husband-to-be from Kauai. She told her little sister to be back in less than 40 days. She also warned Hi'iaka not to fall in love with Lohi'au herself. In turn, Hi'iaka made Pele promise to protect a grove of beautiful trees that grew on Kilauea. Hi'iaka adored the trees. She was afraid that if Pele lost her temper, she would send out rivers of lava to burn them down.*

45

**C** *Inferential* What events are being depicted in the images on these pages? How do you know?

» The first image depicts the struggle between Pele and Na-maka-o-kaha'i. You can tell they are fighting by the way they are using their arms and by the way they are standing. Also, the colors used for what they are wearing and for what is beneath each of them, lava or water, helps you understand what is happening. The second image depicts Pele sending her sister, Hi'iaka, to fetch her husband-to-be from Kauai. Again, colors are used to show each person. Each sister in these images wears a different color (Pele wears red/orange, Na-maka-o-kaha'i wears blue, and Hi'iaka wears green).

**A** [Read pages 46 and 47 aloud, as students read along silently.]

**B** *Inferential* What volcanic activity does this passage explain?

» This passage explains a volcanic eruption.

*Literal* What clues from the text help you determine what volcanic activity is being explained?

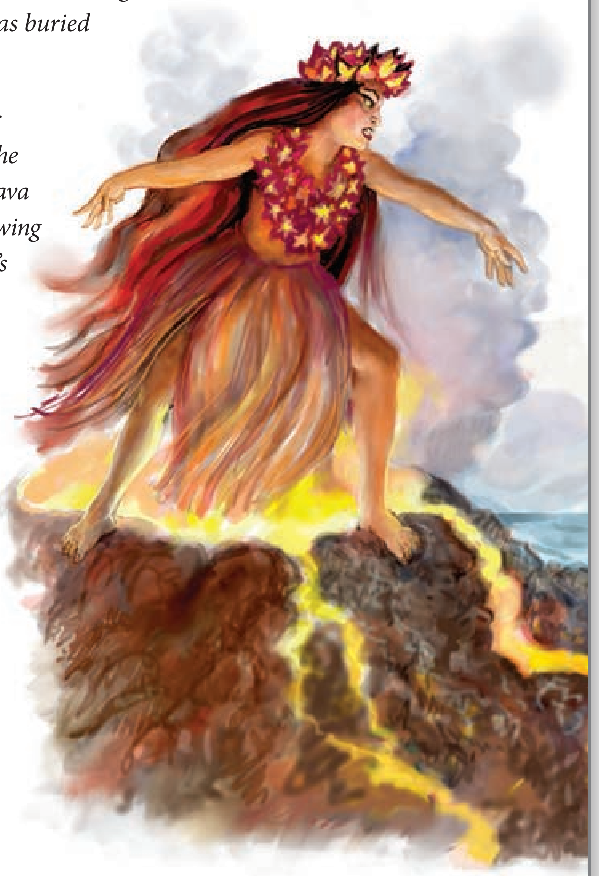
» *she looked in horror on her beautiful forest; it was gone, burned to the ground by Pele's volcanic fire; enraged, Pele sent a huge river of lava streaming down the side of Kilauea*

**C** *Literal* What volcanic feature does this passage explain?

» It explains how a caldera formed at the top of Kilauea.

**A** *The journey took much longer than Hi'iaka expected. By the time she reached Kauai and found Lohi'au, more than 40 days had passed. On the trip back to Hawaii, Hi'iaka grew increasingly fond of Lohi'au. She also grew increasingly afraid of how Pele would react to their being so late in returning.*

*When Hi'iaka finally reached Kilauea with Lohi'au, she looked in horror on her beautiful forest. It was gone, burned to the ground by Pele's volcanic fire. To punish her older sister, Hi'iaka kissed Lohi'au. Enraged,* **B** *Pele sent a huge river of lava streaming down the side of Kilauea. Lohi'au was buried beneath it.*



*Driven by the need for* ***revenge****, Hi'iaka dug into the rocky side of the volcano. Lava began draining out and flowing toward the sea. One of Pele's brothers stopped Hi'iaka before all of Pele's volcanic fire drained away. Because so much lava had already been lost, the top of* **C** *Kilauea collapsed. A great* ***caldera****, or bowl-shaped depression, was left behind. It is still visible at the volcano's top.*

*Two of Pele's brothers took pity on the dead king—and on Hi'iaka, who truly loved him. They dug Lohi'au out of the lava*

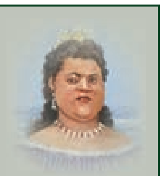
46

*and brought him back to life. Hi'iaka and Lohi'au were married and lived happily ever after, while Pele remained in her* ***lofty*** *volcano home.*

*Some people believe that Pele still lives in Kilauea. When the volcano erupts, they say it's a sign her fiery temper is flaring again.*

D

## Princess Power



In 1880, Mauna Loa erupted. A large lava flow crept down the mountainside toward the city of Hilo. The Hawaiian princess Ruth Keelikolani traveled to the scene as the lava neared the city. Princess Ruth stood directly in the path of the advancing lava. She recited ancient chants and made offerings to Pele. The next day the lava flow stopped. This helped keep belief in Pele alive.

47

**D** **Challenge** How are Princess Ruth and Pele's sister Na-maka-o-kaha'i similar? How are they different?

» Answers may vary, but should include: they are similar because both Princess Ruth and Na-maka-o-kaha'i were able to stop Pele's lava; they are different because Princess Ruth and Na-maka-o-kaha'i stopped Pele's lava in different ways. Princess Ruth stopped the lava by reciting ancient chants and making offerings to Pele. Na-maka-o-kaha'i stopped the lava by filling each crater Pele created with seawater.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Monadalkni | /mon*ə*dok*nie/ |
| Sahale Tyee | /so*ho*lee/ /tie*ee/ |

**A** [Read pages 48 and 49 aloud, as students read along silently.]

**B** *Inferential* Are the Klamath Indians and the myth about the eruption of Mazama a part of the Hawaiian myth explanation of volcanoes? How do you know?

» No, the Klamath Indians did not live in Hawaii; they lived in the Pacific Northwest near Mount Mazama, which is located in the state of Oregon.

**C** *Literal* How do scientists think Crater Lake was formed?

» Crater Lake is a deep, nearly circular lake that fills the large caldera of the dormant Mount Mazama. A caldera is a kind of crater. Over time, rain and melted snow filled the caldera, creating a lake.

A

## The Origin of Crater Lake

The Klamath Indians of the Pacific Northwest have a myth about the creation of Oregon's Crater Lake. This deep, nearly circular lake fills the large caldera of an ancient, dormant volcano called Mount Mazama. B Mazama is part of a chain of volcanoes that makes up a portion of the Cascade Mountain Range. Scientists believe that Mazama's caldera formed during its last major eruption nearly 8,000 years ago. Rain and melted snow filled the caldera to create what came to be known as C Crater Lake. The following Klamath myth about Mazama's eruption and the lake's formation has its roots in these geological events.

Crater Lake in Oregon

48

*Long ago, the world was home to two great Spirit Chiefs. The Chief of the Below World, Monadalkni, lived inside the earth and ruled below ground. The Chief of the Above World, Sahale Tyee, ruled above ground, from Earth's surface to the starry heavens overhead.*

*Sometimes, Monadalkni visited the Above World. He climbed up through the inside of a snow-covered mountain and emerged from a hole at the top. From there, he could see far and wide. He could see the forests, the rivers, the lakes—and the camps of the Klamath people.*

*One day Monadalkni spotted the Klamath chief's daughter, Loha. Monadalkni thought Loha was the most beautiful woman he had ever seen. Immediately he wanted her to be his wife. He came down from the mountaintop and proposed to Loha. He promised her* ***eternal*** *life if she would agree to marry him. Loha refused.*

*So Monadalkni sent one of his Below World servants to ask again. The servant brought many gifts. He laid them out before Loha and tried to persuade her to marry his master. He reminded her that if she did, she would have eternal life and live in the mountain forever. Loha refused.* **D**

49

**D** *Inferential* What evidence in the text supports the meaning of *eternal*?

» *live in the mountain forever*

**A** [Read pages 50 and 51 aloud, as students read along silently.]

**B** *Inferential* What volcanic activity is explained in this passage?

» A volcanic eruption is explained in this passage.

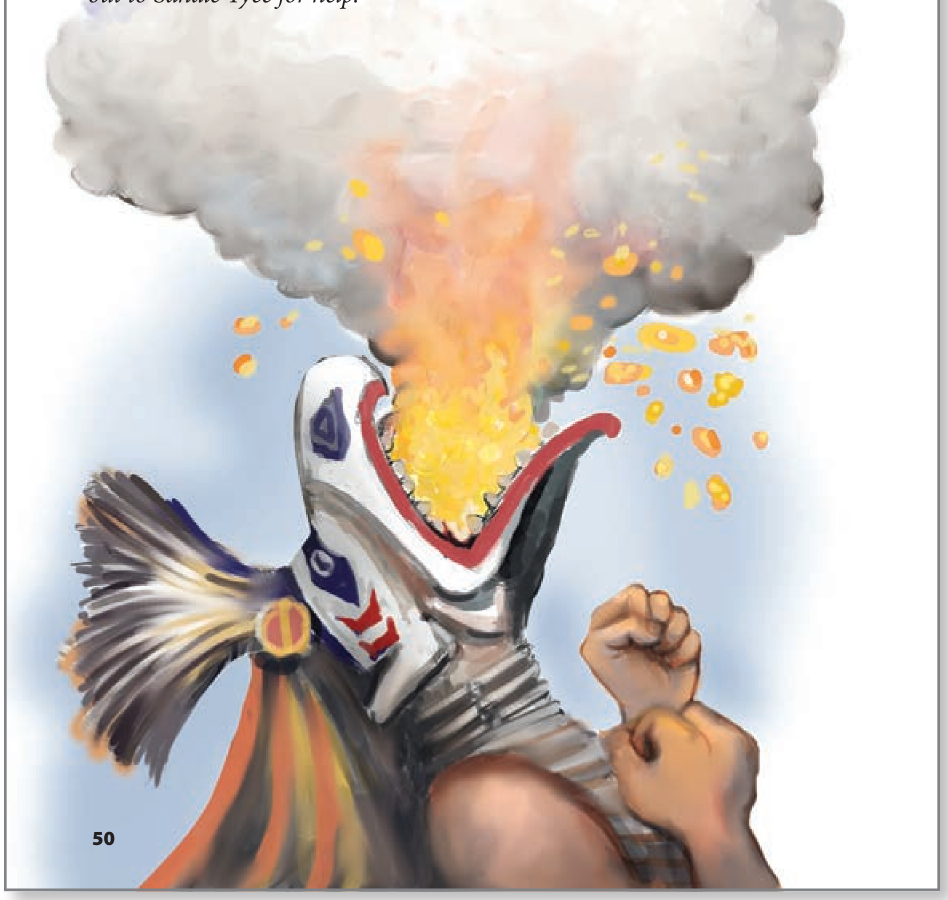
*Literal* What clues from the text help you determine what volcanic activity is being explained?

» *he raged inside his mountain, making it shake and rumble; he threw lightning bolts and spewed fireballs from his mouth; the top of the mountain exploded, which sent hot lava and choking clouds of ash raining down on the land*

**A**

*She ran to her father and asked for help. The chief of the Klamath people called the tribal* ***elders*** *together. They all agreed that Loha should try to hide from Monadalkni, so she did.*

*Monadalkni was very angry when he found out that Loha had refused him yet again. He raged inside his mountain, making it shake and rumble. He threw lightning bolts and spewed fireballs from his mouth.* **B** *The top of the mountain exploded, which sent hot lava and choking clouds of ash raining down on the land. The Klamath people waded into streams and lakes trying to escape Monadalkni's fiery revenge. They cried out to Sahale Tyee for help.*



50

*The Chief of the Above World came to the aid of his people. He fought Monadalkni and the two spirits waged a violent, fiery battle. Sahale Tyee eventually gained the upper hand and forced Monadalkni back down into his mountain. Sahale Tyee caused the top of the mountain to collapse, forever shutting off this entrance to the Below World.*

*The Klamath elders prayed for rain. The rains came and put out the volcanic fires. Rainwater filled the caldera on the mountaintop, creating the high, deep body of water known today as Crater Lake.* **C**

51

**C** *Literal* Summarize the Klamath myth's explanation of how Crater Lake was formed.

» The spirit of the Above World, Sahale Tyee, and the spirit of the Below World, Monadalkni, fought. Sahale Tyee finally pushed Monadalkni back down inside the mountain and made the top of the mountain collapse to keep Monadalkni inside the mountain. When it rained, water filled the deep caldera that had been created on the top of the mountain, creating what is now known as Crater Lake.

**Support** What features of Mount Mazama and Crater Lake does this passage explain?

» This passage explains how the volcano's caldera formed. It also explains how the caldera came to be filled with water, forming Crater Lake.

**Support** What clues from the text support the explanation of these features?

» *Sahale Tyee eventually gained the upper hand and forced Monadalkni back down into his mountain; Sahale Tyee <u>caused</u> the top of the mountain to collapse; the Klamath elders prayed for rain; the rains came and put out the volcanic fires; rainwater filled the caldera on the mountaintop, creating the high, deep body of water known today as Crater Lake*

## Note

Question 1 and Activity Page 7.3 relate to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* — 15 minutes

- Use the following question to discuss the chapter.

1. *Inferential* How do volcano myths help explain volcanic activity?
   » Volcano myths are creative explanations for natural processes and events. These volcano myths explain volcano-related occurrences: how volcanoes form, how island chains form from volcanoes, why volcanic eruptions occur, and more. Many volcano myths include volcano gods as part of the explanation. According to these myths, volcanic activity is caused by the gods. Volcano myths help explain volcanic activity by attributing the activity to higher powers rather than natural occurrences that go on above and below Earth's surface.

- Have students turn to Activity Page 7.2 to complete in class individually or with a partner. As students complete the activity page, collect it to review at a later date.
- Have students take home Activity Page 7.3 to read and complete for homework.

## Word Work: *Lofty* — 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "Hi'iaka and Lohi'au were married and lived happily ever after, while Pele remained in her lofty volcano home."
2. Say the word *lofty* with me.
3. *Lofty* means high up.
4. The eagle built a lofty nest on the side of a cliff.
5. What are some examples of things that could be described as lofty? Be sure to use the word *lofty* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: " ______ is lofty because ______."]
6. What part of speech is the word *lofty*?
   » adjective

[Use a *Multiple-Meaning Word* activity for follow-up. Tell students the word *lofty* is a word with multiple meanings. Share the following with students.]

Meaning #1: lofty—high up

Meaning #2: lofty—deserving to be admired

Meaning #3: lofty—thinking you are better than others

I am going to read several sentences. Listen to the context, or the text surrounding *lofty* in the sentence, for clues as to which meaning is being used. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #1, hold up one finger. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #2, hold up two fingers. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #3, hold up three fingers.

1. She had a lofty attitude after finding out she was a finalist for the poetry contest.
    - » 3
2. The lofty ceilings in the new house made the rooms seem enormous.
    - » 1
3. He had lofty expectations for his performance in the play after practicing for so long and doing several practice shows.
    - » 2
4. The lofty mountains towered above our cabin.
    - » 1
5. The lofty way in which he entered the room made the rest of us feel uncomfortable.
    - » 3
6. After much planning and outlining, we set the lofty goal of finishing the project a week earlier.
    - » 2

## Materials

- Volcano Wiki Entry
- Wiki Entry Rubric
- Wiki Entry Editing Checklist
- Activity Pages 7.4, 7.5
- *The Changing Earth*
- Volcano Graphic Organizer

# WRITING 45 minutes

## Introduce a Wiki Entry

### *Introduce a Wiki Entry* 30 minutes

- Tell students that today they will learn about writing a wiki entry.
- Explain that a wiki is an online resource that provides information on many different topics or subjects. A wiki can be written or edited by multiple people, and can be updated over time. A wiki entry provides information on one particular topic or subject.
- Display the Volcano Wiki Entry you created in advance.

**Volcano**

**Description**

A volcano is a hill or mountain that forms over a crack in Earth's crust from which lava erupts.

**Location**

Volcanoes occur all over the world, particularly along tectonic plate boundaries and above hotspots.

**Types of Volcanoes**

There are three types of volcanoes:

- active
- dormant
- extinct

An active volcano has erupted in the past 10,000 years and is likely to erupt again. A dormant volcano is considered active but has not erupted for a very long time—several hundred years, for example. An extinct volcano has not erupted for at least 10,000 years. An extinct volcano no longer has a chamber full of magma beneath it, so it is not expected to erupt again.

**Additional Information**

Volcanoes can be creative forces. They can add new land to our planet and bring minerals from deep inside the earth to the surface. Volcanoes can also be dangerous and destructive. They can fill the air with poisonous gases and hot ash. They can also release rivers of lava that destroy everything in their path. Volcanoes can add things to Earth's surface but can also destroy things on Earth's surface.

**References**

*The Changing Earth* (2014)

- Explain to students that the focus of this wiki entry is to provide information about volcanoes. They used focus to write their informational pamphlet about tsunamis. Focus is when one specific moment, object, or idea is selected and precise details are used to write about it.
- Have students turn to the Wiki Entry Rubric on Activity Page 7.4 as you refer to the version you prepared in advance. Tell students they will use this rubric to help them write their own wiki entry about a specific volcano. Tell them another copy of the rubric is found in Student Resources as well.

- Tell students together you will examine the example Volcano Wiki Entry and compare it to information in the Wiki Entry Rubric. Note that the example is about volcanoes in general and the rubric addresses a single volcano that students will write about.
- Explain that a wiki entry begins with a title, which indicates the focus of the entry. Have a student read the title of the Volcano Wiki Entry aloud.
- Have a student read aloud the information in the “Exemplary” column of the rubric for the “Introduction” row. Then, have a student read aloud the first two headings and related sections of the Volcano Wiki Entry aloud as others refer to the “Introduction” row of the rubric.
- Explain that the Volcano Wiki Entry begins with information about the topic that is more general and basic, as noted in the “Exemplary” column of the rubric for the “Introduction” row.
- Have a student read aloud the information in the “Exemplary” column of the rubric for the “Body” row. Then, have a student read aloud the heading “Types of Volcanoes” and the section that follows, and have another student read aloud the heading “Additional Information” and the section that follows, as others refer to the “Body” row of the rubric.
- Have students explain how these two sections of the Volcano Wiki Entry address the information in the “Exemplary” column of the rubric for the “Body” row. (The sections provide increasingly specific information about the topic.)
- Explain that wiki entries often end with a concluding statement. Have a student read aloud the “Exemplary” column of the rubric for the “Conclusion” row. Then, read the final sentence in the Volcano Wiki Entry aloud as students refer to the “Conclusion” row of the rubric.
- Have students explain how the sentence you read aloud addresses the information in the “Exemplary” column of the rubric for the “Conclusion” row. (The final sentence in the wiki entry provides a thought-provoking closing reflection about the topic.)
- Explain that a wiki entry follows a logical structure of sentences within sections. A logical structure refers to the organization of writing that strengthens and clarifies the piece. Have a student read aloud the information in the “Exemplary” column of the rubric for the “Structure of the Piece” row.
- Have students explain how the Volcano Wiki Entry addresses the information in the “Structure of the Piece” row of the rubric. (Sections are presented logically, and information has been paraphrased from the reference source.)
- Have students turn to the Wiki Entry Editing Checklist on Activity Page 7.5 as you refer to the version you prepared in advance. Tell students they will use this checklist to help them write their wiki entry. Tell them another copy of the editing checklist is found in Student Resources as well.

- Have different students read each section of the editing checklist and refer to the Volcano Wiki Entry to identify how it demonstrates items in each section of the editing checklist.
- When discussing the “Format” row of the editing checklist, note the following:
  - A wiki entry has a title and has headings to help organize information; headings are bolded in the example to start a new section.
  - Indenting is not used because traditional paragraph structure may not be followed in a wiki entry.
  - Lists are bulleted or numbered.
  - A reference list is included at the end in a particular format: the title is first, underlined or italicized (when using word processing on a computer); then the date the item was published (book) or accessed online (website), and the URL included for online resources; multiple references are alphabetized by title.

### *Model Taking Notes for a Wiki Entry* — 15 minutes

- Explain that you will model taking notes for a wiki entry.
- Have students turn to page 40 in *The Changing Earth*. Have different students read each paragraph aloud.
- Display the Volcano Graphic Organizer you prepared in advance. Explain to students that you will use the graphic organizer to take notes on the Yellowstone supervolcano. Model taking notes using the notes in the following completed Volcano Graphic Organizer.
- Explain that it is important to keep notes concise by writing in fragments instead of complete sentences. In addition, it is important to paraphrase by putting the notes in your own words. This is especially important to help you avoid plagiarizing, or using another author’s ideas or words without giving proper credit.

| Take Notes on a Volcano | |
|---|---|
| **Name of the Volcano** | supervolcano at Yellowstone |
| **Location of the Volcano** | North America |
| **Type of Volcano; Date of Last Eruption** | dormant; has not erupted in a long time but could erupt again; last major eruption was 640,000 years ago |
| **Description of Volcano or of Last Eruption** | Volcano:<br>located above a hotspot<br>one of the world’s largest volcanoes; called a supervolcano<br>heat from magma creates geysers and hot springs |
| **Other Facts** | Old Faithful erupts more than a dozen times a day<br>North America’s largest hotspot |

- Explain that after taking notes, it is important to record the references that were used. Direct students’ attention to the References for Volcano Wiki Entry section that follows the graphic organizer.

- Model writing the example for a book reference as follows.

| References for Volcano Wiki Entry | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Title** | **Date** | **Source (Book or Web Address)** |
| *The Changing Earth* | 2014 | Book |

- Remind students that if an online reference had been consulted, then you would also record the article title, the full date the article was accessed, and the web address in the "References for Volcano Wiki Entry" section that follows the graphic organizer.

  **Support** Model writing an example for an online reference as follows.

| References for Volcano Wiki Entry | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Title** | **Date** | **Source (Book or Web Address)** |
| Top 10 Famous Volcanoes | March 3, 2014 | http://content.time.com/time/specials/packages/article/0,28804,2014572_2014574_2014626,00.html |

### *Wrap Up*

- Call on a student to summarize what a wiki entry is. Call on another student to give a few important aspects of a wiki entry. (headings; information presented from general to specific; underlined vocabulary words; bulleted or numbered lists; concluding statement; references)

### *Guidance for Teacher Use of Rubrics*

Rubrics are provided for evaluation of the content and structure of student writing composed within each unit. The criteria within the descriptions correspond to what is taught in the writing lessons. "Exemplary" to "Beginning" performance columns provide graduated descriptions for each criterion. The columns for "Strong," "Developing," and "Beginning" performance are shaded to help students initially attend to the description for "Exemplary" performance. The rubrics allow teachers and students to identify graduated steps for improvement when aspects of the writing do not meet all the taught criteria. To do this, teachers (and students) may highlight the language from each row that best describes the student writing. Consider the following sample rubric with bolding. The rubric communicates a corresponding piece of writing was evaluated as:

- Strong for the introductory section(s)
- Developing for the body sections
- Strong for the concluding statement
- between Strong and Exemplary for the structure of the piece
- Strong for the writing overall

| | Exemplary | Strong | Developing | Beginning |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Introduction** | Initial section(s) provide accurate, general information related to location and type of volcano | **Initial section(s) provide accurate information related to either location or type of volcano, but not both** | Initial section(s) provide information loosely related to location and/or type of volcano | Initial section(s) lack information related to location and type of volcano |
| **Body** | Additional sections provide increasingly specific information about the volcano | Additional sections provide more information about the volcano | **Additional sections provide some information about the volcano** | Additional sections provide little to no information about the volcano |
| **Conclusion** | A final statement provides a thought-provoking summative or closing reflection about the volcano | **A final statement provides a summative or closing reflection about the volcano** | The summative or closing nature of the final statement is unclear | No final statement is provided |
| **Structure of the Piece** | **All sentences in sections are presented logically** | Most sentences in sections are presented logically | Some sentences in sections are presented logically | Connections between sentences in sections are confusing |
| | All information has been paraphrased | **Most information has been paraphrased** | Some information has been paraphrased | Little information has been paraphrased |

### *Guidance for Teacher Use of Editing Checklists*

Editing checklists allow students and teachers to evaluate students' command of language conventions and writing mechanics within unit writing projects. They serve a different purpose than rubrics; rubrics measure the extent to which students apply specific instructional criteria they have been building toward across the unit, whereas editing checklists measure the extent to which students apply English language conventions and general writing mechanics. With regard to expectations for accountability, we recommend using the editing checklist to measure students' command of language conventions and writing mechanics only when students have received the appropriate instructional support and specific opportunity to review their writing for that purpose.

| Wiki Entry Editing Checklist | Notes |
|---|---|
| **Meaning** | |
| Is correct grammar used?<br>• Sentences are complete with subject and predicate.<br>• Sentences are appropriate length (no run-ons).<br>• The student has been supported with corrections for parts of speech, verb tense, and more complex sentence structure. | |
| **Format** | |
| Does the student use appropriate formatting for the piece of writing?<br>• The volcano name is the title at the top.<br>• Each section of the entry has a heading.<br>• Indenting is not used.<br>• If lists are included, they are bulleted or numbered.<br>• There is a reference list at the end in the appropriate format. | |
| **Capitals** | |
| Is capitalization appropriately applied?<br>• All sentences begin with a capital letter.<br>• All proper nouns are capitalized.<br>• Titles and headings have appropriate capital letters. | |
| **Spelling** | |
| Are all words spelled correctly?<br>• Words using Core Knowledge Code are spelled appropriately.<br>• Words from spelling and morphology lessons are spelled accurately.<br>• The student has been supported with identifying misspellings to be looked up in reference sources as needed. | |
| **Punctuation** | |
| Is punctuation appropriately applied?<br>• All sentences have appropriate ending punctuation.<br>• Commas and quotation marks are all used correctly for the ways they have been taught.<br>• The titles in the reference list are underlined or in italics. | |

## TAKE-HOME MATERIAL

### Materials

- Activity Page 7.3

### Reading

- Have students take home Activity Page 7.3 to read and complete for homework.

## MID-UNIT CONTENT ASSESSMENT

### Materials

- Activity Page PP.1

### Note

This is a good opportunity to use the Tens scoring system to gather formative assessment data. Information about the Tens scoring system appears in the Teacher Resources section of the Unit 1 Teacher Guide.

You may wish to pause one day before proceeding to Lesson 8 so you can assess students' comprehension of the domain content presented in the Reader thus far. During your next ELA period, administer the Mid-Unit Content Assessment (Activity Page PP.1), which will take approximately 30–45 minutes for students to complete. You may choose to collect the assessments so a grade can be assigned and/or you may review the answers with students after they complete the assessment. You may use the remainder of the period for remediation and/or enrichment, including having students reread Reader chapters or read *Fluency Supplement* selections.

# Lesson 8

## Unit 6: Geology

## CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

✓ Identify rocks as naturally occurring nonliving solids made of minerals

✓ Describe the formation and characteristics of igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic rocks

✓ Explain how the rock cycle accounts for the changes that occur in rocks over very long periods of time

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Reading** | | |
| Small Group: Chapter 6 "Earth's Building Blocks" | 40 min. | Answer Key for Activity Page 7.3; Activity Pages 7.3, 8.1, 8.2; *The Changing Earth* |
| Word Work: *Class* | 5 min. | |
| **Writing** | | |
| Draft a Wiki Entry | 45 min. | Activity Pages 8.3, 8.4; Volcano Graphic Organizer; *The Changing Earth*; Volcano Wiki Entry |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to describe three classes of rocks and how the rock cycle changes them.

**Writing**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to paraphrase text in order to take notes using a graphic organizer and draft a wiki entry.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

### *Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

| |
| --- |
| Read to learn about three classes of rocks and how the rock cycle changes them. |

- Select an object for students to describe the texture of during Word Work.

### *Writing*

- Display the completed Volcano Graphic Organizer and the Volcano Wiki Entry from Lesson 7 for students to reference.

## Materials

- Answer Key for Activity Page 7.3
- Activity Pages 7.3, 8.1, 8.2
- *The Changing Earth*

# READING 45 minutes

## Small Group: Chapter 6 "Earth's Building Blocks" 40 minutes

### *Review* 5 minutes

- Using the Answer Key at the back of this Teacher Guide, review student responses to Activity Page 7.3, which was assigned for homework.

### *Introduce the Chapter* 5 minutes

- Tell students they will read Chapter 6, "Earth's Building Blocks."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Preview the core vocabulary words before reading the chapter.
- Begin by telling students the first vocabulary word they will encounter in this chapter is *mineral.*
- Have them find the word on page 53 of the Reader. Explain that each vocabulary word is bolded the first time it appears in the chapter.
- Explain that the glossary contains definitions of all the vocabulary words in this Reader. Have students refer to the glossary at the back of the Reader, locate *mineral*, and then have a student read the definition.
- Explain the following:
  - The part of speech follows each word in an abbreviated format as follows: noun–*n.*; verb–*v.*; adjective–*adj.*; adverb–*adv.*
  - Alternate forms of the word appearing in the chapter may follow the definition. They may be a different part of speech than the original word.
- Have students reference Activity Page 8.1 while you read each word and its meaning noting that:
  - The page number (for the first occurrence of the word in the chapter) appears in bold print after the definition.
  - Words are listed in the order in which they appear in the chapter.

1. **mineral**, ***n.*** a solid, nonliving substance found in the earth that makes up rocks (**minerals**) (**53**)
2. **texture**, ***n.*** the size, shape, and sorting of mineral grains in rocks (**53**)
3. **solidify**, ***v.*** to make or become hard or solid (**solidifies**) (**54**)
4. **obsidian**, ***n.*** a dark rock or natural glass formed from lava that cooled very quickly (**54**)
5. **granite**, ***n.*** a common igneous rock that forms from magma that cooled within Earth's crust (**54**)
6. **durable**, ***adj.*** able to last a long time in good condition (**55**)
7. **compact**, ***v.*** to closely pack or press together (**compacts**, **compacting**) (**56**)
8. **dissolved**, ***adj.*** mixed with liquid so no solid pieces are visible anymore (**56**)

| Vocabulary Chart for Chapter 6 "Earth's Building Blocks" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3<br>Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2<br>General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | mineral<br>solidify<br>obsidian<br>granite<br>dissolved | texture<br>durable<br>compact |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | mineral<br>solidificar<br>obsidiana<br>granito | textura<br>durable |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | solidify<br>dissolved | compact |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | building blocks<br>naked eye | |

- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

> Read to learn about three classes of rocks and how the rock cycle changes them.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

> How can changes in rocks over time be explained by the rock cycle?

## Note

Activity Page 8.2 relates to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Establish Small Groups*

Before reading the chapter, divide students into two groups using the following guidelines:

- ✪ **Small Group 1**: This group should include students who need extra scaffolding and support to read and comprehend the text. Use the guided reading supports to guide students through reading the text. This is an excellent time to make notes in your anecdotal records. Students will discuss and complete portions of Activity Page 8.2 with your support during reading. In the interest of time, students will only discuss questions 1–6 on Activity Page 8.2 during reading, but will not be asked to record written responses to these questions on the activity page.
- ✪ **Small Group 2**: This group should include students who are capable of reading and comprehending text without guided support. These students may work as a small group, as partners, or independently to read the chapter, discuss it with others in Small Group 2, and then complete Activity Page 8.2. Make arrangements to check that students in Small Group 2 have answered the questions on Activity Page 8.2 correctly. You may choose to do one of the following to address this:
    - collect the pages and correct them individually
    - provide an answer key to students to check their own or a partner's work after they have completed the activity page
    - confer with students individually or as a group at a later time

Over the course of the year, students may change groups, depending on individual students' needs.

### *Read "Earth's Building Blocks"* 25 minutes

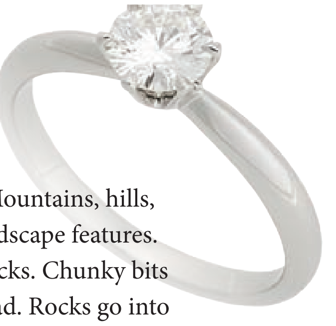
The following guided reading supports are intended for use with Small Group 1. Guided reading supports in brackets are intended to guide you in facilitating discussion and should not be read verbatim to students. Guided reading supports not in brackets should be read aloud verbatim.

**A** [Have students read pages 52 and 53 silently.]

Chapter 6

# Earth's Building Blocks

THE BIG QUESTION
How can changes in rocks over time be explained by the rock cycle?



**A** You don't have to look hard to find rocks. They are all around you—and under you, too! Earth's crust is made almost entirely of rocks. Mountains, hills, and cliffs are huge masses of rock that form landscape features. Pebbles in a streambed are smooth, rounded rocks. Chunky bits of broken rock form the gravel on a country road. Rocks go into making sidewalks and streets. Slabs of rock cover the outside of many buildings. Indoors, pieces of rock often make up floors, walls, stairs, and countertops. Museums are good places to see rocks that artists have carved into sculptures. The polished stones in some types of jewelry are rocks that people wear.

Rocks are all around. Some are carved into sculptures, others are used for jewelry.

52

All the varieties of rocks can be organized into three classes.

## Rocks and Building Blocks

Just what are rocks, exactly? Rocks are naturally occurring materials made of solid, nonliving substances called **minerals**. Think of minerals as the building blocks of rocks. Some rocks are formed from just one mineral. Most rocks, however, are combinations of two or more minerals. Minerals appear as different-sized pieces, or grains, in rocks. Some rocks have very tiny mineral grains, giving the rocks a smooth, even **texture**. Other rocks have larger mineral grains and a rougher texture. **B** **C**

Imagine hiking up a mountain and picking up rocks along the way. When you reach the top, you'll probably have quite a collection. Your rocks may have different colors and textures. Some may have stripes or layers. Some might be hard and others crumbly. Some have tiny grains whereas others have large grains that glitter when they catch the light. All this variety might seem confusing. Yet geologists organize all rocks into just three classes, or basic types: igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic. **D**

53

**B** *Literal* What are rocks?

» Rocks are naturally occurring materials made of solid, nonliving substances called minerals.

**C** *Evaluative* Why would rocks with larger mineral grains have a rougher texture?

» Answers may vary, but should include that minerals appear in rocks as grains, or pieces. Rocks with very tiny mineral grains have very tiny pieces of minerals in them. Having very tiny pieces of minerals gives rocks a smooth, even texture; the pieces are so small that they don't change the texture of the rocks. When rocks have larger mineral grains, they have larger pieces of minerals. Having larger pieces of minerals means the rocks appear to have more uneven pieces because bigger pieces of minerals make up the rocks. Bigger pieces mean the rocks don't have as smooth or even of a texture with so many big pieces of different minerals together in one place.

**D** *Literal* How might rocks differ from each other? [In the interest of time, students will only discuss questions 1–6 on Activity Page 8.2, but will not be asked to record written responses to these questions on the activity page.]

» They may have different colors and textures; some may have stripes or layers; some might be hard and others crumbly; some may have tiny grains while others have large grains; and some may have grains that glitter when they catch the light.

**A** [Have students read page 54 silently.]

**B** *Literal* How does igneous rock form?

» Igneous rock forms when magma cools and solidifies.

**Support** *Solidify* means to make or become hard or solid.

**C** *Inferential* How do geologists distinguish between the two types of igneous rocks?

» One type forms on Earth's surface and the other type forms below Earth's surface.

**Support** What is the name for the material that cools and hardens into rock on Earth's surface?

» lava

A

## Born from Magma: Igneous Rock

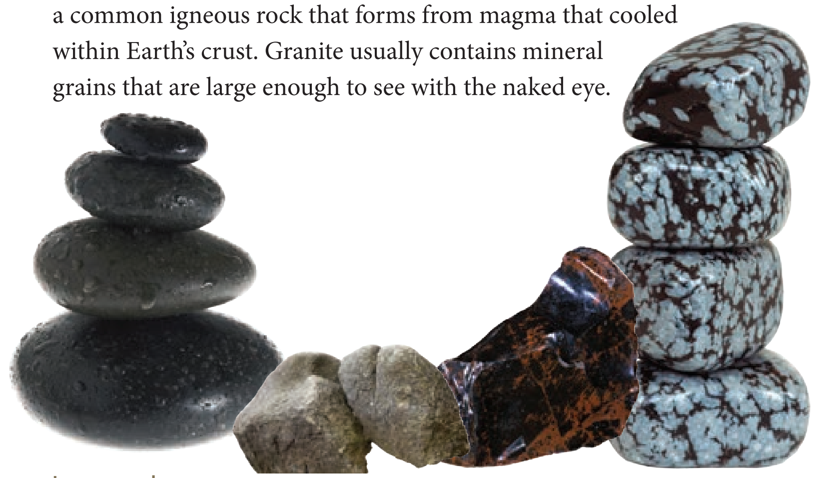
Let's start with **igneous rocks**, the most abundant class of rocks on the earth. Igneous rocks form when magma cools and **solidifies**. When you think of igneous rocks, think of volcanoes.

B

There are two basic types of igneous rock. One type forms from magma that erupts onto Earth's surface as lava. The lava cools and hardens into rock. The faster it cools, the smaller the mineral grains will be in the resulting rock. **Obsidian** is an igneous rock formed from lava that cooled very quickly, so quickly, there wasn't time for the minerals to form grains. As a result, obsidian is as smooth and shiny as glass. In fact, it is often called volcanic glass. Basalt is an igneous rock formed from lava that took longer to cool. Basalt is typically a dark-colored rock. It has fairly small mineral grains that give it a fine-grained texture.

C

The second type of igneous rock forms from magma that solidifies below Earth's surface. Magma cools very slowly when it's deep beneath the surface. Slow cooling leads to igneous rocks with relatively large mineral grains. The slower the cooling, the larger the grains. **Granite** is a common igneous rock that forms from magma that cooled within Earth's crust. Granite usually contains mineral grains that are large enough to see with the naked eye.



Igneous rocks

54

D

# The Art of Making Stone Tools

Many prehistoric cultures made tools out of rock. Scientists working in East Africa have found obsidian stone tools that are nearly two million years old. Obsidian was especially prized by ancient tool makers. Obsidian breaks into pieces with sharp edges that are good for cutting and piercing.

To make a very sharp cutting tool, ancient tool makers struck a block of obsidian with another, harder rock. This caused a long, thin blade of obsidian to flake off. Although the blade was fragile, it had incredibly sharp edges. In fact, the edges of obsidian blades are much sharper than metal scalpels used by surgeons today.

Spear tip

Making a spear tip or arrowhead was more time consuming. The tool makers started with a relatively flat piece of obsidian. They shaped it by striking off tiny flakes of rock, one after another, from the edges. They gradually shaped it into a sharp, **durable**—and often beautiful—pointed tool.

Arrowheads

55

**D** [If time permits, have students read page 55 silently.]

**Support** Why was obsidian a prized material for ancient tool makers?

» Obsidian breaks into pieces with sharp edges that are good for cutting and piercing.

**A** [Have students read page 56 silently.]

**B** *Literal* How does sedimentary rock form?

» Sedimentary rock forms when, over time, sediments collect in layers, are bound together by solid minerals, and are compacted and cemented together.

**Support** What happens when layers of sediments are compacted?

» The grains in the sediments are squeezed closer together.

**Support** What occurs when layers of sediments are cemented?

» Dissolved minerals fill the spaces between the sediments and glue the sediments together; the sediments dry and change into rock.

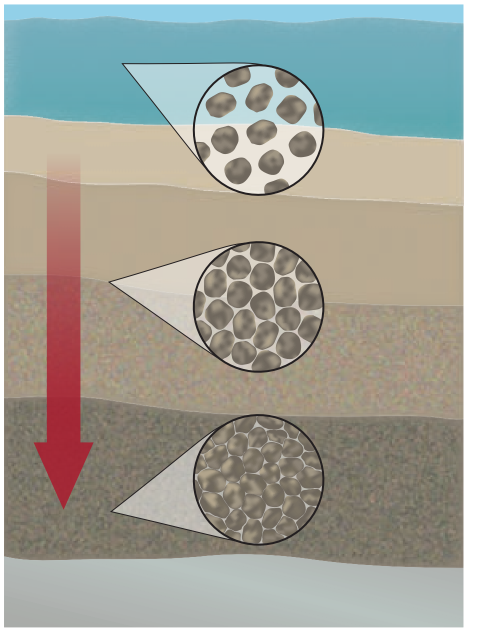
**Challenge** Why do you think most sedimentary rock breaks easier than igneous rock?

» Igneous rock starts out as molten magma that then solidifies into igneous rock when the magma cools. Sedimentary rock starts out as different layers of sediments, which become compacted and cemented together over time by pressure and weight, but probably not as solidly as rock that was molten and then hardened.

**A**

## Layer after Layer: Sedimentary Rock

**Sedimentary rock** is the second major class of rocks. Sedimentary rocks are made of sediments. Sediments are tiny bits of rock and sand combined with fragments of once-living things. Sediments collect in low-lying areas both on land and in bodies of water. They form layers, one on top of another. Over long periods of time, the weight of overlying layers **compacts** the sediments in deeper layers, squeezing them closer together. Sediments also become cemented, or glued, together as **dissolved** minerals fill the spaces between the sediments. **B** As the sediments dry, the dissolved minerals turn into solids, binding the sediments together. Over time, compacting and cementing processes transform sediments into sedimentary rock.



The weight of overlying layers compacts the sediments, squeezing them closer together.

Most sedimentary rocks are more easily broken than most igneous rocks. Hit a sedimentary rock with a hammer, and it will crumble or break apart. Some sedimentary rocks contain fossils. **Limestone** is a sedimentary rock often packed with the fossilized skeletons and shells of tiny ocean creatures. Some sedimentary rocks get their name from their sediments. Sandstone started as grains of sand, whereas mudstone formed from ancient mud.

56

The eroded formations of these sedimentary rocks in Badlands National Park in South Dakota show their distinct layers. The oldest layers are at the bottom.

57

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| gneiss | /nees/ |
| Agnes Nyanhongo | /ag*nes/ /nie*an*hong*goe/ |
| Zimbabwe | /zim*bob*wae/ |

**A** [Have students read page 58 silently.]

**B** *Literal* How does metamorphic rock form?

» Metamorphic rock forms when igneous, sedimentary, or older metamorphic rocks are exposed to extreme heat and pressure, which change the minerals in the rocks.

**C** *Inferential* What role do tectonic plates play in metamorphic rock formation?

» Metamorphic rock often forms where tectonic plates are slowly colliding, so tectonic plate boundaries serve as an easy way to identify where metamorphic rock forms.

**Challenge** What else occurs or is created where tectonic plates are colliding?

» Mid-ocean ridges, mountains, ocean trenches, and faults are created and earthquakes occur where tectonic plates are colliding.

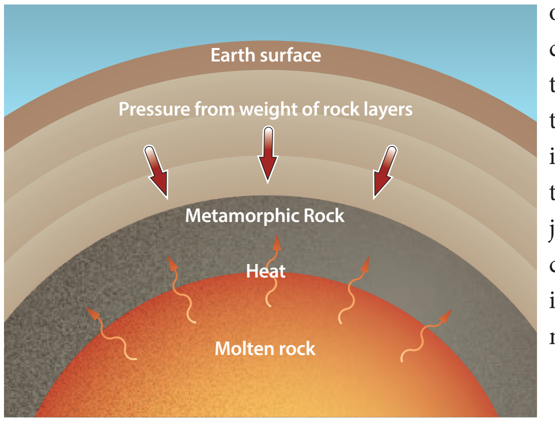
A

## Changing Form: Metamorphic Rock

The third major class of rocks is **metamorphic rock**. Metamorphic rocks form when igneous or sedimentary rocks are exposed to extreme heat and pressure. They can even form from older metamorphic rocks. B High temperatures and crushing pressure alter the minerals in the rocks. Mineral grains may be flattened or rearranged into layers, swirls, or stripes. They may also be changed into completely different minerals!

Remember granite, the igneous rock? When granite is subjected to intense heat and pressure, it becomes a metamorphic rock called gneiss. When the sedimentary rock limestone is squeezed and heated deep below ground, it becomes a metamorphic rock called marble.

Metamorphic rocks tend to form deep within Earth's crust. The pressure from countless tons of overlying rock is tremendous. Equally powerful is the heat rising from hot magma in the mantle beneath the crust. C Metamorphic rocks often form where tectonic plates are slowly colliding. They can also form as magma travels up through cracks in Earth's crust and heats the rocks around the cracks. If the heat of the magma completely melts the rock again, then it becomes igneous rock. If the rock is heated just enough to be changed, however, it instead becomes metamorphic rock.




58

D

# Agnes Nyanhongo's Stone Sculptures


Agnes Nyanhongo

Zimbabwean sculptor Agnes Nyanhongo became interested in carving rock at an early age. Her father, Claud Nyanhongo, was a sculptor. She worked in his studio as a young girl and learned how to cut and polish rock. She is now one of Zimbabwe's most well-known artists. Agnes Nyanhongo carves many of her sculptures from a type of rock called serpentine. Serpentine is a metamorphic rock. The type of serpentine Agnes Nyanhongo uses for many of her sculptures is very dark in color. She usually polishes only some parts of her sculptures, leaving the rest simply raw stone.


Sculptures carved from serpentine

59

**D** [If time permits, have students read page 59 silently.]

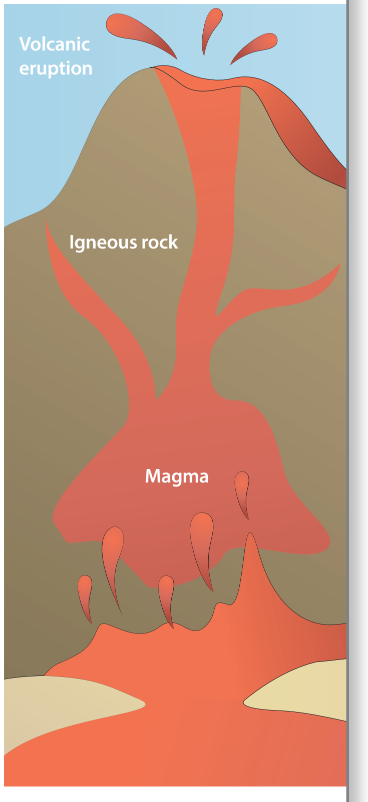
**A** [Have students read pages 60 and 61 silently.]

**B** *Literal* What is the rock cycle? [Call students' attention to the image on page 61 and discuss it.]

» The rock cycle is an ongoing process of change in which rocks are created, destroyed, and recreated.

A

## The Rock Cycle




Rocks you see in the world around you might seem like permanent fixtures. Given enough time, however, all rocks change. They are created, destroyed, and recreated in a continuous cycle. Geologists call this ongoing process the **rock cycle**.

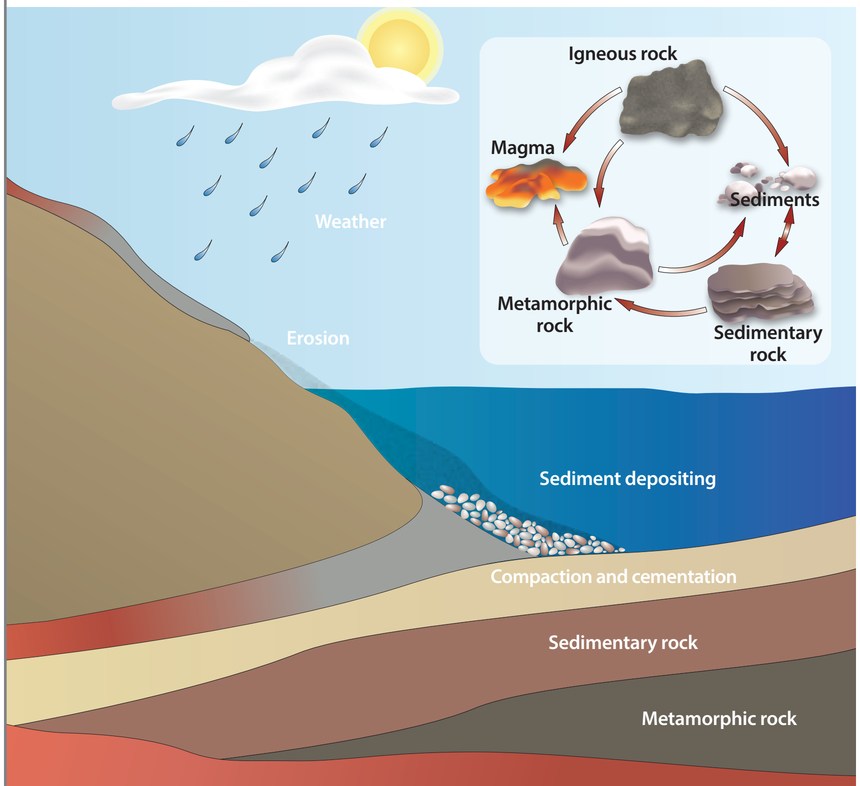
B

The rock cycle has no starting or ending point. You can jump in anywhere to see how it works. Let's begin with magma erupting from a towering volcano. The magma (now lava) cools and hardens into igneous rock. Over the course of thousands of years, sun, wind, rain, and freezing temperatures cause the rock to **weather**, or break down into smaller pieces. The pieces continue to weather, slowly breaking down into sediments. Howling winds, flowing water, and gravity gradually move the sediments down the sides of the volcano and beyond. Movement of sediments from place to place is called **erosion**.

Imagine that the sediments end up in a lake, where they settle to the bottom. Over long periods of time, more layers of sediments are deposited on top of them. Compacting and cementing processes eventually turn the deeply buried sediments into sedimentary rock.

Now imagine that the sedimentary rock is near the edge of a tectonic plate. The plate collides with another plate—very slowly, of course. Tremendous heat and pressure generated by the collision gradually turn the sedimentary rock into metamorphic rock. As the plates continue colliding, their rocky edges crumple. The metamorphic

60




rock is slowly pushed up higher onto Earth's surface. Think mountains! Exposed to air, rain, and snow, the rock begins to weather and erode.

Alternatively, one tectonic plate might be sliding beneath another. The metamorphic rock along the edge of the descending plate gets hotter and hotter as it nears the mantle. At some point it melts into magma—magma that someday might erupt from a volcano again.

Understanding how rocks change helps geologists understand how Earth has changed over time. C

61

C [Have students respond to questions 7–15 on Activity Page 8.2.]

## Note

Question 1 relates to The Big Question of the chapter.

*Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* **5 minutes**

- Use the following question to discuss the chapter.

1. *Literal* How can changes in rocks over time be explained by the rock cycle?
   » Answers may vary, but should include: Igneous rock forms from cooled lava. Over time, the rock weathers or breaks down into smaller pieces. These pieces continue to break down into sediments. Forces move the sediments to a place where they eventually settle. Over time, more sediment settles in the same place. Compacting and cementing processes turn the sediments, which started out as igneous rock, into sedimentary rock. Over time, the heat and pressure generated by tectonic plate collision turn the sedimentary rock into metamorphic rock. At some point the metamorphic rock melts into magma, which may someday erupt as lava and continue the rock cycle.

## Word Work: *Class* 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "Yet geologists organize all rocks into just three classes, or basic types: igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic."
2. Say the word *class* with me.
3. *Class* means a group of people or things that are similar in some way.
4. You need a special license to drive vehicles in certain classes, such as a tractor trailer.
5. What are some other examples of classes of things? Be sure to use the word *class* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "A class of ______ might include ______."]
6. What part of speech is the word *class*?
   » noun

[Use a *Synonyms* activity for follow-up.] What does the word *class* mean? What are some synonyms, or words with a similar meaning, of *class*? [Prompt students to provide words such as *group*, *category*, and *type*.] Turn to your partner and create sentences using the synonyms he or she provided.

# WRITING 45 minutes

## Draft a Wiki Entry

### *Take Notes for a Wiki Entry* 20 minutes

- Tell students that today they will take notes on a volcano and use the information to write a wiki entry.
- Remind students that a wiki is an online resource that provides information on many different topics or subjects. A wiki can be written or edited by multiple people, and can be updated over time. A wiki entry provides information on one particular topic or subject.
- Remind students that they have read about a number of different volcanoes in *The Changing Earth*. Tell students they can choose one of two different volcanoes to focus on in their wiki entry: Tambora or Mauna Loa.

  **Support** Students needing additional support may choose Yellowstone as the volcano to focus on for their wiki entry. They can use the notes you took as a modeling exercise in Lesson 7 to fill in their own graphic organizer.

  **Challenge** Explore an additional resource to take notes on one of the volcanoes. Alternatively, students could use an additional resource to take notes on a different volcano than those listed. See the Recommended Resources list in the digital components for this unit for additional resources.

- Have students turn to Activity Page 8.3. Remind students that this graphic organizer is just like the Volcano Graphic Organizer you used to take notes in the previous lesson.
- Depending on which volcano students choose to write about, have them turn to the appropriate page in *The Changing Earth* (Tambora—page 33; Mauna Loa—page 36; Yellowstone—page 40).
- Have students read the page and identify the information in the text that relates to their specific volcano. Remind students to take notes by paraphrasing the text they just read, or writing information in their own words. Students should write key information in the shortest form possible.

  **Support** If students need help paraphrasing the text and taking notes, you may wish to have students work in pairs to take notes.

- Circulate around the room as students take notes, providing support and guidance as needed to assist students with paraphrasing.
- As students finish taking notes, ensure that their graphic organizers resemble the following.

### Materials

- Activity Pages 8.3, 8.4
- Volcano Graphic Organizer
- *The Changing Earth*
- Volcano Wiki Entry

| Take Notes on a Volcano | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Name of the Volcano** | Tambora | Mauna Loa |
| **Location of the Volcano** | Indonesia | Hawaii |
| **Type of Volcano; Date of Last Eruption** | active; spring of 1815 | active; 1984 |
| **Description of Volcano or of Last Eruption** | Eruption:<br>blasted enormous amounts of ash high into the atmosphere | Volcano:<br>peak is 13,796 feet above sea level but base sits on the seafloor<br>from top to bottom, measures more than 33,000 feet |
| **Other Facts** | largest volcanic eruption in recorded history<br>ash from eruption distributed across the world, blocking sunlight reaching the earth, and leading to "the year without a summer" | largest active volcano<br>seafloor to top is taller than Mount Everest |

| References for Volcano Wiki Entry | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Title** | **Date** | **Source (Book or Web Address)** |
| *The Changing Earth* | 2014 | Book |

### *Draft a Wiki Entry* — 25 minutes

- Have students turn to Activity Page 8.4 and begin drafting their wiki entry. Direct students to work with information in one heading at a time to write complete sentences under the appropriate headings, using their notes.

  **Support** Display the Volcano Wiki Entry from the previous writing lesson for students who may need to use it as a guide.

- Circulate around the room as students write, providing support and guidance as needed to assist students with transforming their notes into complete sentences.

  **Feedback** Provide reinforcing or corrective feedback as needed, using the following supports:

  – Have students ensure they have complete sentences.

  – Have students ensure that the information is presented beneath the appropriate headings.

- As you circulate, take note of which students could benefit from working in a small group during the next writing lesson.

### *Wrap Up*

- If students are ready to share some of their sentences, encourage them to do so.

# Lesson 9

## Unit 6: Geology

## CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Identify rocks as naturally occurring nonliving solids made of minerals
- ✓ Describe the formation and characteristics of igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic rocks
- ✓ Explain how the rock cycle accounts for the changes that occur in rocks over very long periods of time

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Reading** | | |
| Close Reading: Chapter 6 "Earth's Building Blocks" | 40 min. | *The Changing Earth*; Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 9.1; Evidence Collector's Chart; scissors; glue |
| Word Work: *Compact* | 5 min. | |
| **Grammar** | | |
| Practice Commas and Quotation Marks | 15 min. | Commas Poster Addition; Quotation Marks Poster; Activity Page 9.2 |
| **Morphology** | | |
| Practice Root *rupt* | 15 min. | Activity Page 9.3 |
| **Spelling** | | |
| Practice Spelling Words | 15 min. | Activity Pages 9.4, SR.1 |
| **Take-Home Material** | | |
| Reading | * | Activity Page 9.1 |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to explain three classes of rocks and the rock cycle in more detail.

**Grammar**: By the end of this lesson, students will have had additional practice identifying the correct locations of commas and quotation marks in sentences that contain direct speech or quotations from text, and be able to write sentences containing direct speech that demonstrate correct use of commas and quotation marks.

**Morphology**: By the end of this lesson, students will have had additional practice using words with the root *rupt* in sentences.

**Spelling**: By the end of this lesson, students will have gained additional practice spelling targeted words.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

*Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

| |
|---|
| Read to closely examine the author's words, sentences, and literary devices for a deeper understanding of different rock classes and the rock cycle. |

- Display the Evidence Collector's Chart from Lesson 1.

*Grammar*

- Write the following examples on the board/chart paper.

| |
|---|
| The text states Earth's crust is made almost entirely of rocks. |
| I wonder he said aloud if I will ever get to visit the Grand Canyon. |
| I have seen she exclaimed evidence of weathering and erosion. |

- Determine student pairs for completing the first portion of Activity Page 9.2.

*Morphology*

- Determine student pairs for completing the first portion of Activity Page 9.3.

## READING 45 minutes

### Close Reading: Chapter 6 "Earth's Building Blocks" 40 minutes

*Review the Chapter* 5 minutes

- Tell students that they will reread Chapter 6, "Earth's Building Blocks."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

| |
|---|
| Read to closely examine the author's words, sentences, and literary devices for a deeper understanding of different rock classes and the rock cycle. |

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

### Materials

- *The Changing Earth*
- Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 9.1
- Evidence Collector's Chart
- scissors
- glue

How can changes in rocks over time be explained by the rock cycle?

### *Close Reading*

The practice of close reading involves directing students' attention to specific aspects of a text. The guided reading supports in this close reading of Chapter 6, "Earth's Building Blocks," are intended to provide this focus and are labeled as follows:

- *VOC* indicates questions or comments that focus on vocabulary to explain meanings or check student understanding and may highlight multiple-meaning words or idioms.
- *SYN* indicates questions or comments that focus on syntax to explain complex sentences and syntactic structure.
- *COMP* indicates questions or comments that focus on students' understanding of the text. These questions require text-based responses and are sequenced to build a gradual understanding of the key details of the text. Students may provide multiple responses using different pieces of evidence, grounding inferences logically in the text.
- *LIT* indicates questions or comments that focus on literary devices, which are techniques an author uses to produce a specific effect, such as alliteration, similes, metaphors, etc.

Not all question types will be included in each close reading lesson.

These labels and their explanations are for your reference and are not intended to be shared with students. Also, guided reading supports in brackets are intended to guide you in facilitating discussion and should not be read verbatim to students. Guided reading supports not presented in brackets should be read aloud verbatim.

There are many ways for students to respond to the questions. Vary how you elicit students' responses to promote student engagement. For example:

- Have students work in pairs. Following each question, direct students to consult with their partner about the correct response before one student responds.
- Have students work in small groups of three or four students. Following each question, direct students to consult with others in their group about the correct response before one student responds.
- Following a question, have all students provide a written response before one student responds orally.

### *Read "Earth's Building Blocks"* — 25 minutes

- Read the title of the chapter as a class, "Earth's Building Blocks." As you read portions of the chapter, pause to explain or clarify the text at each point indicated.

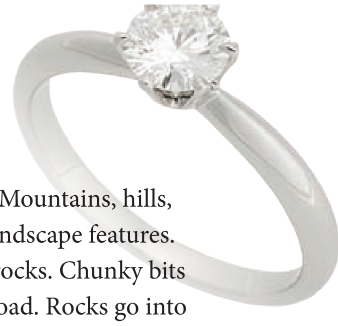
### Note

Close reading lessons present excellent opportunities to ensure that English learners and other students who need additional support fully comprehend a reading selection.

## Chapter 6

# Earth's Building Blocks

**THE BIG QUESTION**
How can changes in rocks over time be explained by the rock cycle?



You don't have to look hard to find rocks. They are all around you—and under you, too! Earth's crust is made almost entirely of rocks. Mountains, hills, and cliffs are huge masses of rock that form landscape features. Pebbles in a streambed are smooth, rounded rocks. Chunky bits of broken rock form the gravel on a country road. Rocks go into making sidewalks and streets. Slabs of rock cover the outside of many buildings. Indoors, pieces of rock often make up floors, walls, stairs, and countertops. Museums are good places to see rocks that artists have carved into sculptures. The polished stones in some types of jewelry are rocks that people wear.

Rocks are all around. Some are carved into sculptures, others are used for jewelry.

52

All the varieties of rocks can be organized into three classes.

## A Rocks and Building Blocks

Just what are rocks, exactly? Rocks are naturally occurring materials made of solid, nonliving substances called **minerals**. Think of minerals B as the building blocks of rocks. Some rocks are formed from just one mineral. Most rocks, however, are combinations of two or more minerals. Minerals appear as different-sized pieces, or grains, in rocks. Some rocks have very tiny mineral grains, giving the rocks a smooth, even **texture**. Other rocks have larger mineral grains and a rougher texture.

Imagine hiking up a mountain and picking up rocks along the way. When you reach the top, you'll probably have quite a collection. Your rocks may have different colors and textures. Some may have stripes or layers. Some might be hard and others crumbly. Some have tiny grains whereas others have large grains that glitter when they catch the light. All this variety might seem confusing. Yet geologists organize all rocks into just three classes, or basic types: igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic.

53

**A** [Read page 53 aloud.]

**B** *LIT Inferential* You have learned that a metaphor is a literary device in which the words usually used to describe one thing are used to describe something different. The author states that minerals are the building blocks of rocks. What does this metaphor mean?

» Answers may vary, but should include that building blocks serve as the foundation from which things are made. Buildings are actually made of blocks put together to create the buildings. If something is referred to as a building block for something else, it serves as the basis for the creation of the other thing. Minerals as building blocks of rocks means that minerals serve as the foundation for the makeup of rocks; rocks form from minerals.

**Support** What are minerals?

» Minerals are solid, nonliving substances found in the earth.

**A** [Read page 54 aloud.]

**B** *SYN Inferential* In the middle of the second paragraph, the author uses *in fact* in a sentence. The phrase *in fact* can be used to make an idea clearer by introducing specific information or to introduce unexpected information. In what ways does the use of this phrase make the meaning of the information about obsidian clearer?

» The phrase *in fact* signals to the reader that the information following it is important and supports the point made in the previous sentence about the formation of obsidian. The information following *in fact* describes additional detail about the result of lava cooling so quickly. Grains are different-sized pieces of minerals visible in rocks. Obsidian is smooth and shiny because the lava that formed it cooled too quickly for grains to form. The statement with *in fact* provides additional information about the formation of obsidian.

**C** *VOC Inferential* Reread the sentence in the middle of the third paragraph that begins with *Slow cooling leads to . . .* The word *relatively* means when compared to others. How does the use of the word *relatively* in this sentence add to the reader's knowledge about igneous rocks?

» The word *relatively* signals that the mineral grains in igneous rocks formed from slow cooling of lava are large compared to grains in other rocks described in the chapter.

**D** *VOC Inferential* The last sentence on the page contains the idiom *the naked eye*. *The naked eye* means the human eye. If something can be seen with the naked eye, that thing can be seen just by looking at it with your eyes, without the help of a telescope or microscope or other tools for viewing things. If granite usually contains minerals that are large enough to see with the naked eye, what does that mean?

» A person can see the grains in granite just by looking at the rock. A person does not need any tools to help see the grains in granite because the grains are clearly visible in the rock.

A

## Born from Magma: Igneous Rock

Let's start with **igneous rocks**, the most abundant class of rocks on the earth. Igneous rocks form when magma cools and **solidifies**. When you think of igneous rocks, think of volcanoes.

There are two basic types of igneous rock. One type forms from magma that erupts onto Earth's surface as lava. The lava cools and hardens into rock. The faster it cools, the smaller the mineral grains will be in the resulting rock. **Obsidian** is an igneous rock formed from lava B that cooled very quickly, so quickly, there wasn't time for the minerals to form grains. As a result, obsidian is as smooth and shiny as glass. In fact, it is often called volcanic glass. Basalt is an igneous rock formed from lava that took longer to cool. Basalt is typically a dark-colored rock. It has fairly small mineral grains that give it a fine-grained texture.

The second type of igneous rock forms from magma that solidifies below Earth's surface. Magma cools very slowly when it's deep beneath the surface. Slow cooling leads to igneous rocks with relatively large C mineral grains. The slower the cooling, the larger the grains. **Granite** is a common igneous rock that forms from magma that cooled within Earth's crust. Granite usually contains mineral grains that are large enough to see with the naked eye. D

Igneous rocks

54

E

# The Art of Making Stone Tools

Many prehistoric cultures made tools out of rock. Scientists working in East Africa have found obsidian stone tools that are nearly two million years old. Obsidian was especially prized by ancient tool makers. Obsidian breaks into pieces with sharp edges that are good for cutting and piercing.

To make a very sharp cutting tool, ancient tool makers struck a block of obsidian with another, harder rock. This caused a long, thin blade of obsidian to flake off. Although the blade was fragile, it had incredibly sharp edges. In fact, the edges of obsidian blades are much sharper than metal scalpels used by surgeons today.

Making a spear tip or arrowhead was more time consuming. The tool makers started with a relatively flat piece of obsidian. They shaped it by striking off tiny flakes of rock, one after another, from the edges. They gradually shaped it into a sharp, **durable**—and often beautiful—pointed tool. F

Spear tip

Arrowheads

55

**E** [Read page 55 aloud.]

**F** *VOC Evaluative* *Durable* means able to last a long time in good condition. Why would it be important to people in prehistoric cultures that a rock used to make a tool be durable?

» Some tools were time-consuming to make; if they were durable and lasted a long time, tool makers may not have had to make new tools as often. In addition, if a tool was made of durable rock, the tool would last through many uses, whether it was part of a cutting tool, spear, or arrowhead.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| gneiss | /nees/ |
| Agnes Nyanhongo | /ag*nes/ /nie*an*hong*goe/ |
| Zimbabwe | /zim*bob*wae/ |

**A** [Read the last paragraph on page 58 aloud.]

**B** *COMP Inferential* What role does heat from magma play in determining the class of rock formed?

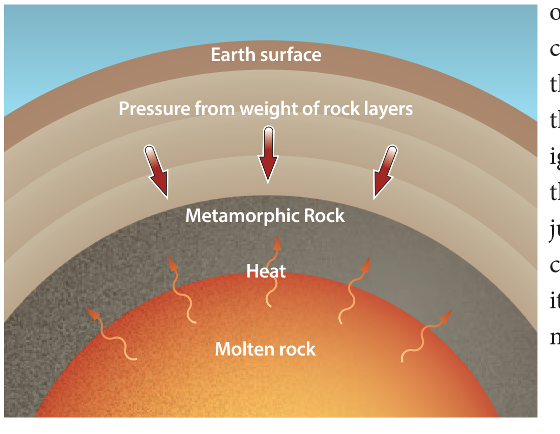
» Magma travels up through cracks in Earth's crust and heats the rocks around the cracks. If the heat of the magma completely melts the rock again, it becomes igneous rock. If the rock is heated just enough to be changed, it becomes metamorphic rock. The amount of heat determines what class of rock is formed.

## Changing Form: Metamorphic Rock

The third major class of rocks is **metamorphic rock**. Metamorphic rocks form when igneous or sedimentary rocks are exposed to extreme heat and pressure. They can even form from older metamorphic rocks. High temperatures and crushing pressure alter the minerals in the rocks. Mineral grains may be flattened or rearranged into layers, swirls, or stripes. They may also be changed into completely different minerals!

Remember granite, the igneous rock? When granite is subjected to intense heat and pressure, it becomes a metamorphic rock called gneiss. When the sedimentary rock limestone is squeezed and heated deep below ground, it becomes a metamorphic rock called marble.

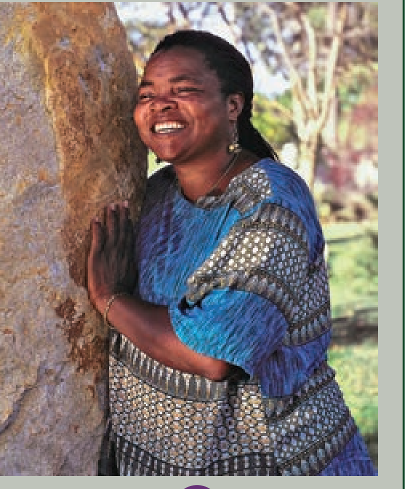
**A** Metamorphic rocks tend to form deep within Earth's crust. The pressure from countless tons of overlying rock is tremendous. Equally powerful is the heat rising from hot magma in the mantle beneath the crust. Metamorphic rocks often form where tectonic plates are slowly colliding. They can also form as magma travels up through cracks **B** in Earth's crust and heats the rocks around the cracks. If the heat of the magma completely melts the rock again, then it becomes igneous rock. If the rock is heated just enough to be changed, however, it instead becomes metamorphic rock.




58

C

# Agnes Nyanhongo's Stone Sculptures



Agnes Nyanhongo D

Zimbabwean sculptor Agnes Nyanhongo became interested in carving rock at an early age. Her father, Claud Nyanhongo, was a sculptor. She worked in his studio as a young girl and learned how to cut and polish rock. She is now one of Zimbabwe's most well-known artists. Agnes Nyanhongo carves many of her sculptures from a type of rock called serpentine. Serpentine is a metamorphic rock. The type of serpentine Agnes Nyanhongo uses for many of her sculptures is very dark in color. She usually polishes only some parts of her sculptures, leaving the rest simply raw stone.

Sculptures carved from serpentine

59

**C** [Read page 59 aloud.]

**D** *COMP Inferential* *Polish* means to make something smooth and shiny. The author states that Agnes Nyanhongo polishes parts of her sculptures. Why might Agnes Nyanhongo have to polish her sculptures?

» Answers may vary, but should include that, because there are grains in metamorphic rock, Agnes Nyanhongo would need to polish her sculptures to make them smooth and shiny. She carves her sculptures out of serpentine, which is a type of metamorphic rock. Metamorphic rock has mineral grains, which give rock texture.

**Challenge** Why might Agnes Nyanhongo choose to leave some parts of her sculptures unpolished?

» Answers may vary, but may include that having both polished and unpolished parts in a sculpture creates interesting color and texture contrasts.

**A** [Read the first two paragraphs on page 60 aloud.]

**B** *VOC Inferential* Permanent fixtures are things that are part of something for a long time without changing. Why might rocks seem like permanent fixtures?

» Answers may vary, but should include that rocks may seem as if they have always been there and have always looked the way they do now. They are large and don't appear to move or change.

**C** *COMP Inferential* Why doesn't the rock cycle have a starting point or ending point?

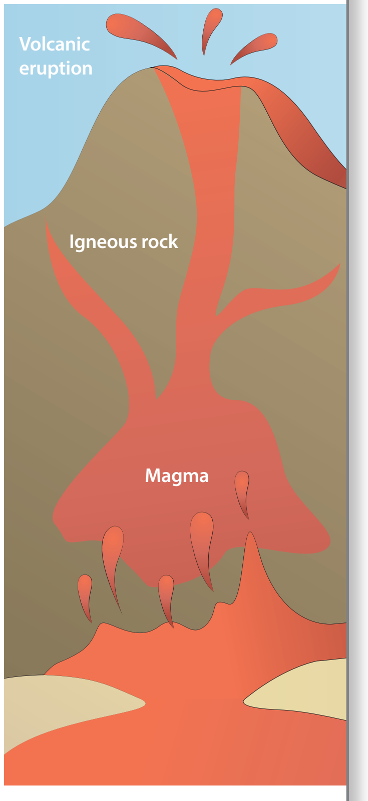
» Answers may vary, but should include that the rock cycle is an ongoing process that never stops. Rocks are created, destroyed, and recreated in a cycle that continually happens. There is no place to mark the start and no place to mark the end because the cycle is ongoing.

A

## The Rock Cycle

B Rocks you see in the world around you might seem like permanent fixtures. Given enough time, however, all rocks change. They are created, destroyed, and recreated in a continuous cycle. Geologists call this ongoing process the **rock cycle**.

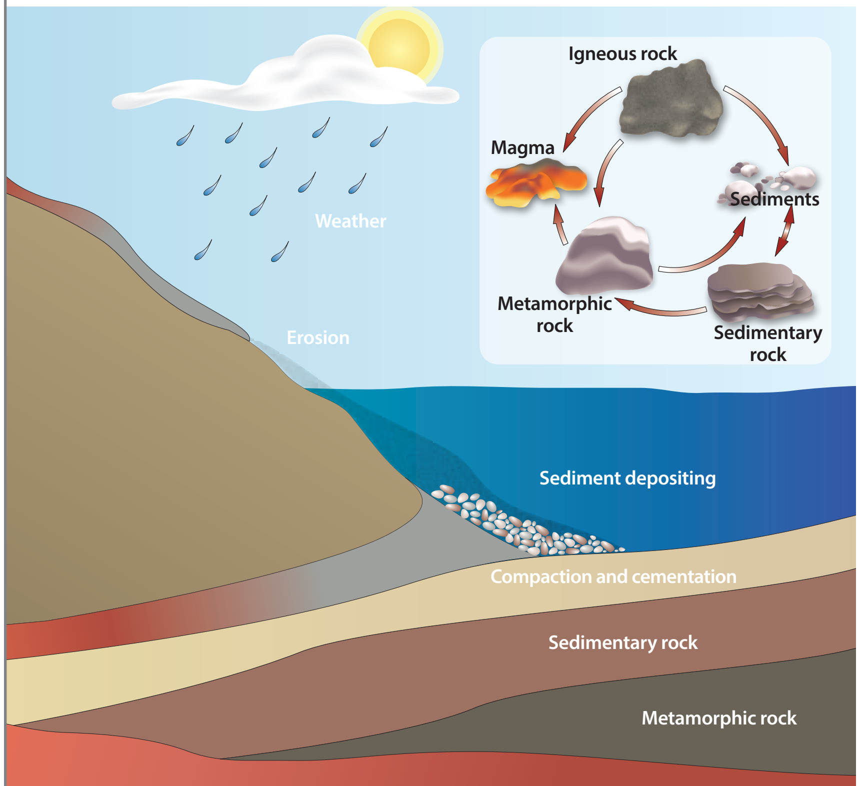
C The rock cycle has no starting or ending point. You can jump in anywhere to see how it works. Let's begin with magma erupting from a towering volcano. The magma (now lava) cools and hardens into igneous rock. Over the course of thousands of years, sun, wind, rain, and freezing temperatures cause the rock to **weather**, or break down into smaller pieces. The pieces continue to weather, slowly breaking down into sediments. Howling winds, flowing water, and gravity gradually move the sediments down the sides of the volcano and beyond. Movement of sediments from place to place is called **erosion**.




Imagine that the sediments end up in a lake, where they settle to the bottom. Over long periods of time, more layers of sediments are deposited on top of them. Compacting and cementing processes eventually turn the deeply buried sediments into sedimentary rock.

Now imagine that the sedimentary rock is near the edge of a tectonic plate. The plate collides with another plate—very slowly, of course. Tremendous heat and pressure generated by the collision gradually turn the sedimentary rock into metamorphic rock. As the plates continue colliding, their rocky edges crumple. The metamorphic

60




rock is slowly pushed up higher onto Earth's surface. Think mountains! Exposed to air, rain, and snow, the rock begins to weather and erode.

Alternatively, one tectonic plate might be sliding beneath another. The metamorphic rock along the edge of the descending plate gets hotter and hotter as it nears the mantle. At some point it melts into magma—magma that someday might erupt from a volcano again.

Understanding how rocks change helps geologists understand how Earth has changed over time.

61

## Note

Activity Page 1.3 relates to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* — 10 minutes

- Have students turn to Activity Pages 1.3 and 1.4 and refer to the displayed Evidence Collector's Chart.
- Remind students that this chart is being used throughout the unit to collect evidence of changes to the earth related to specific causes of geologic change. The evidence represents what geologists examine to determine how powerful forces above and below Earth's surface work to change the earth.
- Have a student read aloud the information under "What is the cause?" in the fifth row. Explain that students must determine what evidence is in the chapter about rocks being created, destroyed, and recreated in a continuous cycle. (pages 60 and 61)
- Have students refer to the remaining images on Activity Page 1.4. Engage students in a discussion about the images, talking about which image represents evidence of rocks being created, destroyed, and recreated in a continuous cycle. (image showing the rock cycle and Earth's rock layers)
- Ensure students understand why the image showing the rock cycle and Earth's rock layers is the correct image. (The image shows the cycle of how different types of rocks are created, destroyed, and recreated and how these types of rocks are related in the cycle.)
- Have students cut out the correct image, glue it to the chart in the "What evidence is there?" column, and write the following information for chapter number, key words, and letter in the chart:

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 6 | *Rocks are created, destroyed, and recreated in a continuous cycle.* | *image: the rock cycle and Earth's rock layers*<br><br>*key words:* igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic rock | I |

- Have students turn to Activity Page 9.1. Ensure students understand the directions and tell them they will complete the activity page for homework.

## Word Work: *Compact* 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "Over long periods of time, the weight of overlying layers compacts the sediments in deeper layers, squeezing them closer together."
2. Say the word *compact* with me.
3. *Compact* means to closely pack or press together.
4. The garbage truck compacts the trash after the workers place it in the truck.
5. What are some other examples of *compact*? Be sure to use the word *compact* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "______ compacts ______ when it ______."]
6. What part of speech is the word *compact*?
   » verb

[Use an *Antonyms* activity for follow-up.] What does the word *compact* mean? An antonym, or word that has the opposite meaning, of the word *compact* is *spread*. I will read several sentences and if the sentence describes something that is being compacted, say, "compact(s)." If the sentence describes something that is spreading out, say, "spread(s)."

1. Pressing snow together to create a good snowball (compacts/spreads) the snow so that it becomes firm and shaped.
   » compacts
2. My father tilted the wheelbarrow full of soil to (compact/spread) the soil where he wanted to plant vegetables.
   » spread
3. Applying pressure (compacts/spreads) the different bits of cookie dough into one solid piece.
   » compacts
4. Many people walking on the same trail over and over (compacts/spreads) the dirt of the trail so that it becomes very hard.
   » compacts
5. The wind (compacts/spreads) the dandelion seeds in the air.
   » spreads

## Materials

- Commas Poster Addition
- Quotation Marks Poster
- Activity Page 9.2

## GRAMMAR — 15 minutes

### Practice Commas and Quotation Marks

- Refer to the Commas Poster Addition and the Quotation Marks Poster and read them with students.
- Refer to the three examples you prepared in advance.

> The text states Earth's crust is made almost entirely of rocks.
>
> I wonder he said aloud if I will ever get to visit the Grand Canyon.
>
> I have seen she exclaimed evidence of weathering and erosion.

- Read each sentence aloud and have students decide where the commas and quotation marks should be placed in each example. Then insert the commas and quotation marks in the correct locations.

> The text states, "Earth's crust is made almost entirely of rocks."
>
> "I wonder," he said aloud, "if I will ever get to visit the Grand Canyon."
>
> "I have seen," she exclaimed, "evidence of weathering and erosion."

- Have students turn to Activity Page 9.2.
- Pair students to work together to complete the first portion of Activity Page 9.2.
- Once students have completed the first portion of Activity Page 9.2, review the correct answers as a whole group.
- Have students complete the second portion of Activity Page 9.2 independently.
- Collect completed Activity Page 9.2 to review and grade at a later time.

## Materials

- Activity Page 9.3

## MORPHOLOGY — 15 minutes

### Practice Root *rupt*

- Explain that you will give students two word choices, each of which features the root *rupt*. Then, you will read a statement and students must decide which word the statement demonstrates.
  - *Disrupt* or *erupt*? A noisy neighbor distracted me while I was trying to practice playing a new song on the piano. (*disrupt*)
  - *Abrupt* or *uninterrupted*? During the marathon, he ran for two hours without stopping. (*uninterrupted*)

– *Rupture* or *abrupt*? A burst in an underground pipe caused the road to be closed all day. (*rupture*)

- Have students turn to Activity Page 9.3. Read the directions and tell students to work in pairs to complete it.
- As time allows, ask a few partner pairs to share their sentences aloud.
- Collect completed Activity Page 9.3 to review and grade at a later time.

## SPELLING 15 minutes

### Practice Spelling Words

- Tell students they will practice writing the spelling words. Remind them to use the Individual Code Chart on Activity Page SR.1 as they practice.
- Have students turn to Activity Page 9.4, explaining that the spelling words are listed in the box on the activity page and on the board/chart paper from the first lesson.
- Have students read sentence #1 silently and fill in the blank. After students complete #1, call on one student to read the sentence aloud with the spelling word in the blank.
- Ask students if anyone had a different answer. Discuss the correct answer to ensure students understand why it is correct.
- Have students check their spelling with the spelling in the word bank on the activity page, make corrections if needed, and then turn their page over.
- Have students say, spell, and say the word again with you but without looking at the activity page. Students may close their eyes, look up at the ceiling, or trace on the back of their paper with their finger to help them visualize the spelling as they spell with you.
- Turn the page over and repeat the steps for the remaining items.
- As time allows, complete the say-spell-say the word again steps for the unused words: *hierarchy*, *calligraphy*, *rupture*, and *anarchy*.
- As time allows, students can write their own sentences using the spelling words on the back of their paper.
- Remind students to study the spelling words for the spelling assessment in the next lesson.

#### Materials

- Activity Pages 9.4, SR.1

## Materials

- Activity Page 9.1

# TAKE-HOME MATERIAL

## Reading

- Have students take home Activity Page 9.1 to read and complete for homework.

# Lesson 10

## Unit 6: Geology

## CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Identify weathering and erosion as two powerful forces that reshape Earth's surface
- ✓ Explain how physical weathering, chemical weathering, and erosion occur
- ✓ Identify geologic features that provide evidence of weathering and erosion

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Spelling** | | |
| Assessment | 15 min. | Activity Page 10.1 |
| **Reading** | | |
| Whole Group: Chapter 7 "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change" | 40 min. | Answer Key for Activity Page 9.1; Activity Pages 9.1, 10.2, 10.3; *The Changing Earth* |
| Word Work: *State* | 5 min. | |
| **Writing** | | |
| Revise and Edit a Wiki Entry | 30 min. | Activity Pages 7.4, 7.5, 8.4; Volcano Wiki Entry |
| **Take-Home Material** | | |
| Reading | * | Activity Page 10.3 |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Spelling**: Students will be assessed on their knowledge of the correct spelling of targeted words.

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to define and provide examples of weathering and erosion.

**Writing**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to revise and edit their writing using a writing rubric and editing checklist as guides.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

### *Spelling*

- Erase or cover the list of spelling words prior to the assessment.

*Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

| |
|---|
| Read to learn how the powerful forces of weathering and erosion reshape Earth's surface. |

*Writing*

- Prepare to display the Volcano Wiki Entry from Lesson 7.
- Prepare to assign students to small groups for additional support as needed.

*Fluency (optional)*

- If students were assigned a selection from the *Fluency Supplement*, determine which students will read the selection aloud and when. See the Unit 1 Teacher Guide introduction for more information on using the *Fluency Supplement*.

## SPELLING 15 minutes

### Assessment

- Have students turn to Activity Page 10.1 for the spelling assessment.
- Using the following list, read the words one at a time in the following manner: Say the word, use it in a sentence, and then repeat the word.
- Tell students that at the end you will review the list once more.
- Remind students to pronounce and spell each word syllable by syllable.

### Materials

- Activity Page 10.1

### Note

This is a good opportunity to use the Tens scoring system to gather formative assessment data. Information about the Tens scoring system appears in the Teacher Resources section of the Unit 1 Teacher Guide.

| Spelling Word | Example Sentence |
|---|---|
| 1. archrival | The superhero outsmarted his archrival and saved the city. |
| 2. paragraph | I read a very interesting paragraph about Yellowstone National Park. |
| 3. rupture | Lava oozed onto Earth's surface from a rupture in the crust. |
| 4. hierarchy | In the hierarchy of a basketball team, the coach is at the top. |
| 5. biographer | The biographer won an award for her book about an undersea explorer. |
| 6. abrupt | The movie's ending was abrupt and did not bring the story to an end. |
| 7. matriarch | Mrs. Baker is the leader and matriarch of the local gardening club. |
| 8. uninterrupted | They must have been tired because they slept uninterrupted for 10 hours. |
| 9. anarchy | When anarchy broke out, the city was destroyed. |
| 10. autograph | When she met her favorite musician, she asked for his autograph. |
| 11. eruption | The people evacuated the island because of a major volcanic eruption. |
| 12. calligraphy | They took a class to learn the art of calligraphy. |

- After reading all of the words, review the list slowly, reading each word once more.
- Tell students that, starting with today's spelling assessment, you will also dictate a sentence for students to write. Remind students you will read the sentence several times.
- Have students write the following sentence as dictated.

| |
|---|
| Scientists examined evidence of the eruption near the volcano. |

- Repeat the sentence slowly several times, reminding students to check their work for appropriate capitalization and punctuation.
- Collect all spelling assessments to grade later. Use of the template provided at the end of this lesson is highly recommended to identify and analyze students' errors.

## READING 45 minutes

### Whole Group: Chapter 7 "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change" 40 minutes

*Review* 5 minutes

- Using the Answer Key at the back of this Teacher Guide, review student responses to Activity Page 9.1, which was assigned for homework in the previous reading lesson.

### Materials

- Answer Key for Activity Page 9.1
- Activity Pages 9.1, 10.2, 10.3
- *The Changing Earth*

### *Introduce the Chapter* **5 minutes**

- Tell students they will read Chapter 7, "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Preview the core vocabulary words before reading the chapter.
- Begin by telling students the first vocabulary words they will encounter in this chapter are *physical weathering* and *chemical weathering*. Tell students these words are explained later in the chapter and included in the glossary so they won't be previewed in this lesson.
- Tell students the next vocabulary word they will encounter in this chapter is *expand*.
- Have them find the word on page 63 of the Reader. Explain that each vocabulary word is bolded the first time it appears in the chapter.
- Explain that the glossary contains definitions of all the vocabulary words in this Reader. Have students refer to the glossary at the back of the Reader, locate *expand*, and then have a student read the definition.
- Explain the following:
  - The part of speech follows each word in an abbreviated format as follows: noun–*n*.; verb–*v*.; adjective–*adj*.; adverb–*adv*.
  - Alternate forms of the word appearing in the chapter may follow the definition. They may be a different part of speech than the original word.
- Have students reference Activity Page 10.2 while you read each word and its meaning noting that:
  - The page number (for the first occurrence of the word in the chapter) appears in bold print after the definition.
  - Words are listed in the order in which they appear in the chapter.

1. **expand**, ***v.*** to get bigger (**63**)
2. **contract**, ***v.*** to shrink slightly or get smaller (**63**)
3. **ultimately**, ***adv.*** finally; at the end of a process (**65**)
4. **pepper**, ***v.*** to sprinkle or cover (**67**)
5. **deposit**, **1.** ***v.*** to put or leave something in a particular place; **2.** ***n.*** material laid down or left by a natural process (***v.*** **deposited**, ***n.*** **deposits**) (**67**)
6. **state**, ***n.*** the condition of being a solid, liquid, or gas (**69**)
7. **silt**, ***n.*** very small sediments deposited by water (**69**)
8. **canyon**, ***n.*** a deep valley with steep sides and often a stream or river flowing through it (**canyons**) (**70**)

| Vocabulary Chart for Chapter 7 "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3<br>Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2<br>General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | state<br>silt<br>canyon | expand<br>contract<br>ultimately<br>pepper<br>deposit |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | cañón | depósito |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | state | pepper |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | eats away at<br>[an idea is almost] impossible to grasp | |

Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

Read to learn how the powerful forces of weathering and erosion reshape Earth's surface.

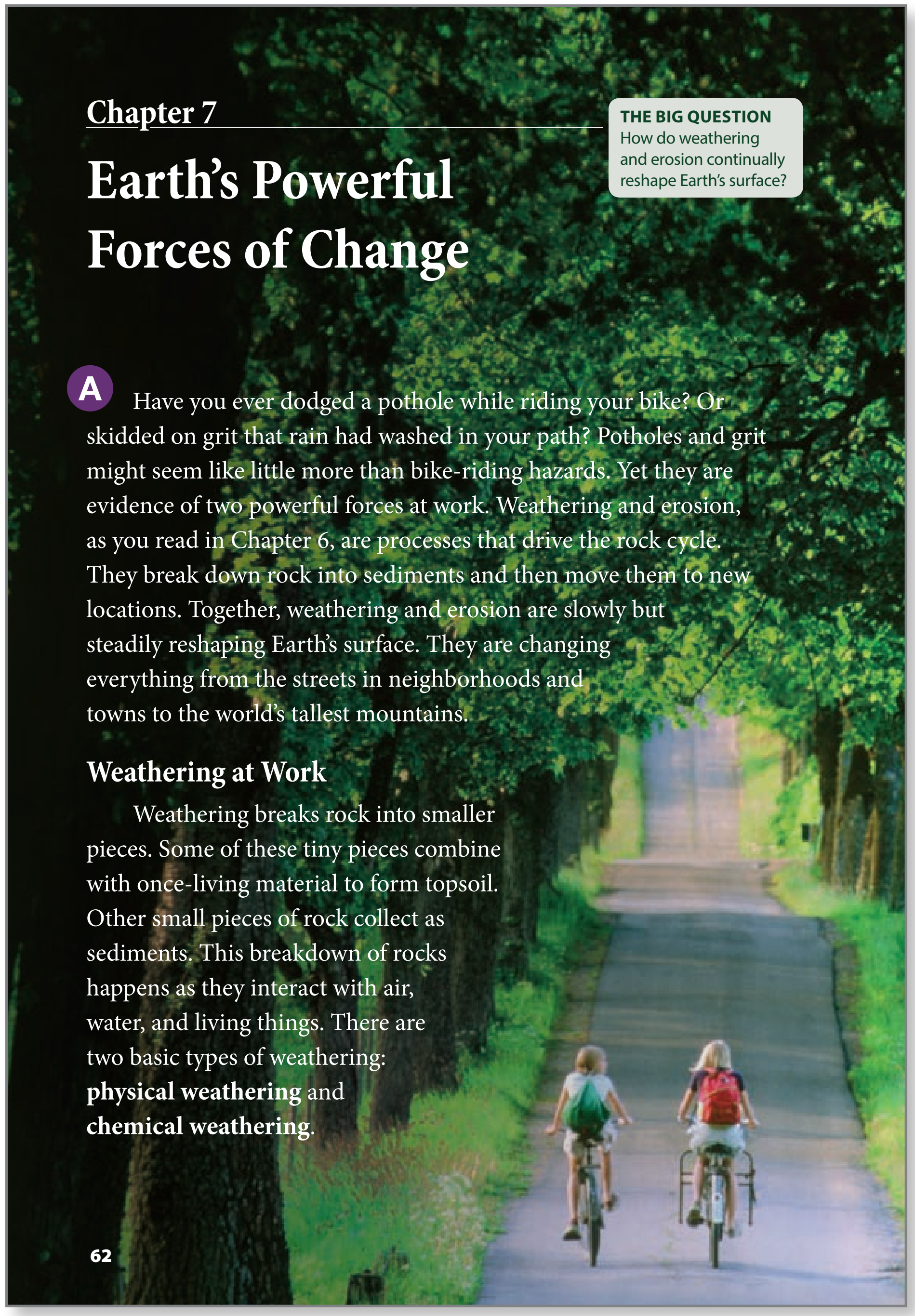
- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

How do weathering and erosion continually reshape Earth's surface?

### *Read "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change"* 20 minutes

Guided reading supports in brackets are intended to guide you in facilitating discussion and should not be read verbatim to students. Guided reading supports not in brackets should be read aloud verbatim.

**A** [Have students read pages 62 and 63 silently.]



## Chapter 7

# Earth's Powerful Forces of Change

**THE BIG QUESTION**
How do weathering and erosion continually reshape Earth's surface?

**A** Have you ever dodged a pothole while riding your bike? Or skidded on grit that rain had washed in your path? Potholes and grit might seem like little more than bike-riding hazards. Yet they are evidence of two powerful forces at work. Weathering and erosion, as you read in Chapter 6, are processes that drive the rock cycle. They break down rock into sediments and then move them to new locations. Together, weathering and erosion are slowly but steadily reshaping Earth's surface. They are changing everything from the streets in neighborhoods and towns to the world's tallest mountains.

### Weathering at Work

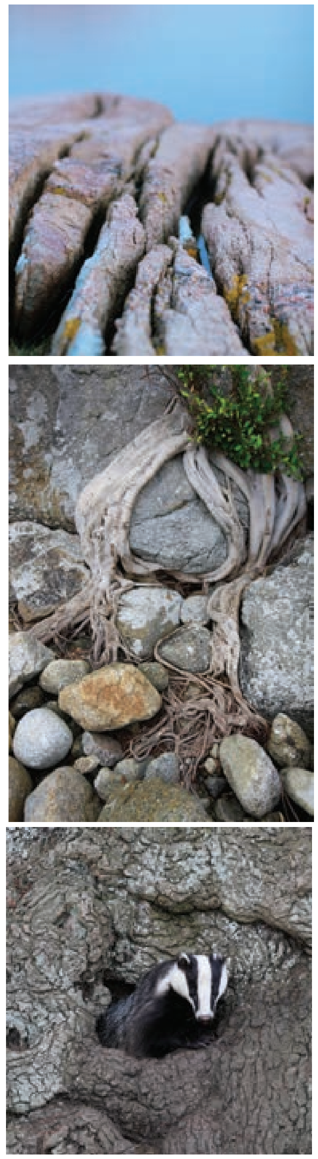
Weathering breaks rock into smaller pieces. Some of these tiny pieces combine with once-living material to form topsoil. Other small pieces of rock collect as sediments. This breakdown of rocks happens as they interact with air, water, and living things. There are two basic types of weathering: **physical weathering** and **chemical weathering**.

62

**B** Physical weathering breaks big rocks into smaller ones without changing the minerals they contain. Widely swinging temperatures cause physical weathering. For example, rocks in a desert bake during the day beneath the sun's scorching heat. As rocks get hot, they **expand**. At night, temperatures in the desert fall. As rocks cool down, they **contract**, or shrink slightly. Expand, contract, expand, contract—this endless cycle gradually causes the rocks' outer layer to crumble or flake off.

**C** Water also causes physical weathering. Water seeps into tiny cracks in rocks. If temperatures drop below freezing, the water turns to ice. Water expands as it freezes, pushing outward and enlarging the cracks. Geologists call this process **ice wedging**. Each time the water freezes, it opens cracks a little wider. Eventually, the rocks split apart. Ice wedging is what makes potholes in streets, too.

Plants and animals also cause rocks to weather. Tree roots squeeze into the cracks in rocks. As the roots grow, they act like wedges, forcing the cracks wider and wider. Eventually the rocks break apart. Badgers, chipmunks, and other animals burrow into cliffs and hillsides like tiny bulldozers. As they dig or tunnel into the ground, they push buried rocks to the surface where most weathering takes place.



Examples of physical weathering

63

**B** *Literal* Explain how physical weathering changes rocks and give some examples of physical weathering.

» Drastic changes in temperature, for example during day and night in the desert, cause rocks to expand and contract. The outer layer eventually crumbles or flakes off. Another example of physical weathering is if water seeps into the cracks of rocks; as the temperature changes from hot to cold, the water may freeze and melt repeatedly, eventually causing a rock to split. Also, roots of plants that squeeze into the cracks of rocks and animals burrowing can cause physical weathering.

**C** *Inferential* A wedge is a piece of wood or metal with one pointed end and one thicker end that is used to split something, to fit into a space, or to separate two things stuck together. Why is ice wedging an appropriate name for a physical weathering process?

» Answers may vary, but should include that ice acts as a wedge, splitting rocks apart. Water seeps into cracks in rocks. It expands as it freezes, acting as a wedge as it pushes outward and enlarges the cracks. The cracks open a little wider each time the water freezes. Eventually the ice wedge forces rocks to split apart.

**Support** What else acts as wedges?

» Tree roots also act as wedges, forcing cracks in rocks to open wider and eventually splitting rocks apart.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
| --- | --- |
| Yunnan | /yoo*nan/ |
| Shilin | /shee*leen/ |

**A** [Have students read pages 64 and 65 silently.]

**B** *Literal* Explain how chemical weathering changes rocks and give some examples of chemical weathering.

» Chemical weathering changes rocks by changing the minerals the rocks contain. When rainwater mixes with chemicals in the air, like carbon dioxide or oxygen, it reacts with minerals in the rocks and changes their shape and color. Some plants, like moss, release chemicals that can change the surface of rocks.

**Support** How does acid rain cause chemical weathering?

» Acid rain dissolves some minerals in rocks. Once the minerals are dissolved, they easily wash away, which weakens rocks. As rocks are weakened, they are less able to withstand the effects of acid rain over time so the rocks change shape.

**A**

**B**

Chemical weathering breaks down rocks by changing the minerals they contain. Rain is a powerful chemical weathering force. As rain falls, it mixes with the gas carbon dioxide in the air. The result is acid rain. Acid rain is strong enough to dissolve some minerals in rocks. Once dissolved, the minerals easily wash away, weakening the rock. Acid rain very slowly carves some rocks into different shapes. It gradually erases the lettering on old gravestones, and blurs the faces of stone statues. It eats away at the outside of ancient and even modern buildings. Where rain seeps into the ground, carbonic acid causes weathering of buried rocks as well. Over long periods of time, this often unobserved weathering creates caves deep underground.

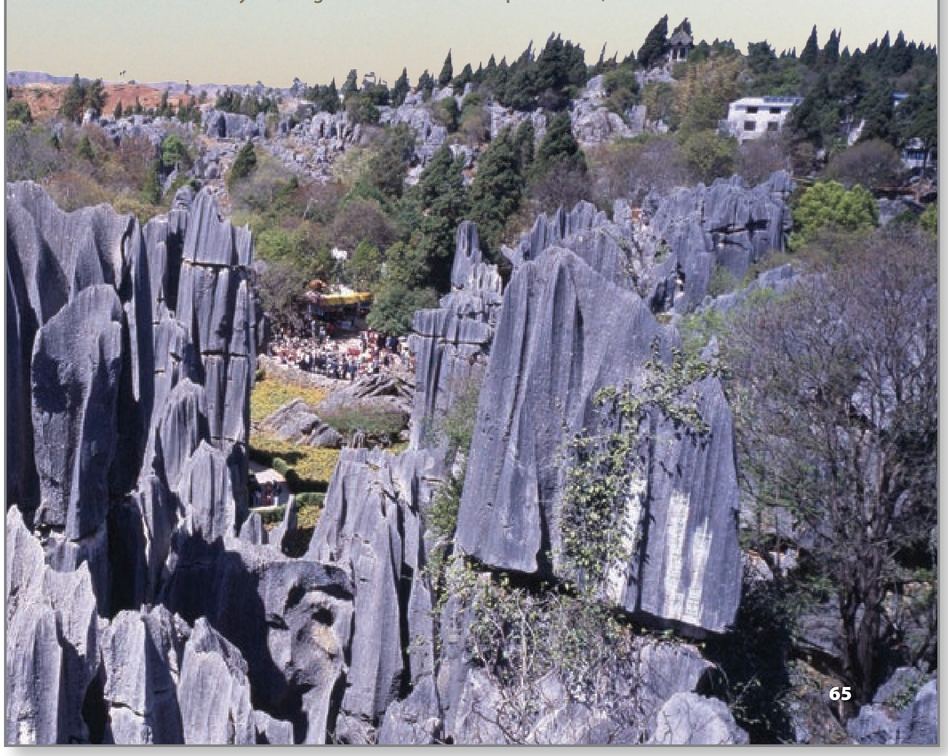
64

Another gas in the air—oxygen—causes chemical weathering in rocks. With a little help from water, oxygen reacts with iron-containing minerals. The reaction changes the minerals, making the rocks brittle and crumbly, and turning them a rusty red color.

Some plants release rock-weathering substances. Take a peek under a patch of moss growing on a rock and you'll see little pits in the rock's surface. Acid from the moss plant caused the damage.

As a result of all weathering, rocks are broken down into smaller pieces and **ultimately** into sediments. Erosion is what gets those sediments moving. C

Towering rock formations created by chemical weathering rise straight up out of the ground near Kunming, the capital of China's Yunnan Province. Some formations are as tall as a 10-story building. The Chinese call this place Shilin, or the Stone Forest. D



65

**C** *Inferential* To compare means to examine similarities; to contrast means to examine differences. Compare and contrast physical weathering and chemical weathering.

» Both types of weathering break rocks down into smaller pieces and ultimately into sediments. Physical weathering breaks big rocks into smaller ones without changing the minerals in the rocks, whereas chemical weathering changes the minerals in the rocks.

**D** [Call attention to and discuss the image on pages 64 and 65.]

**A** [Have students read pages 66 and 67 silently.]

**B** *Literal* How does wind cause weathering and erosion?

» Wind picks up sediments and carries them away, depositing them on land or in water.

**Support** What is erosion?

» any process or force that moves sediments to new locations

### Sediments on the Move

**A** Geologists describe erosion as any process or force that moves sediments to new locations. Wind, flowing water, moving ice, and gravity all transport sediments from place to place. These forces are the primary causes of erosion.

Have you ever stood on a sandy beach on a windy day? Did you notice that gusts of wind sent sand flying past? When air moves quickly **B** across the ground, it picks up sediments and carries them away. Powerful winds can carry sediments for hundreds, even thousands, of miles.

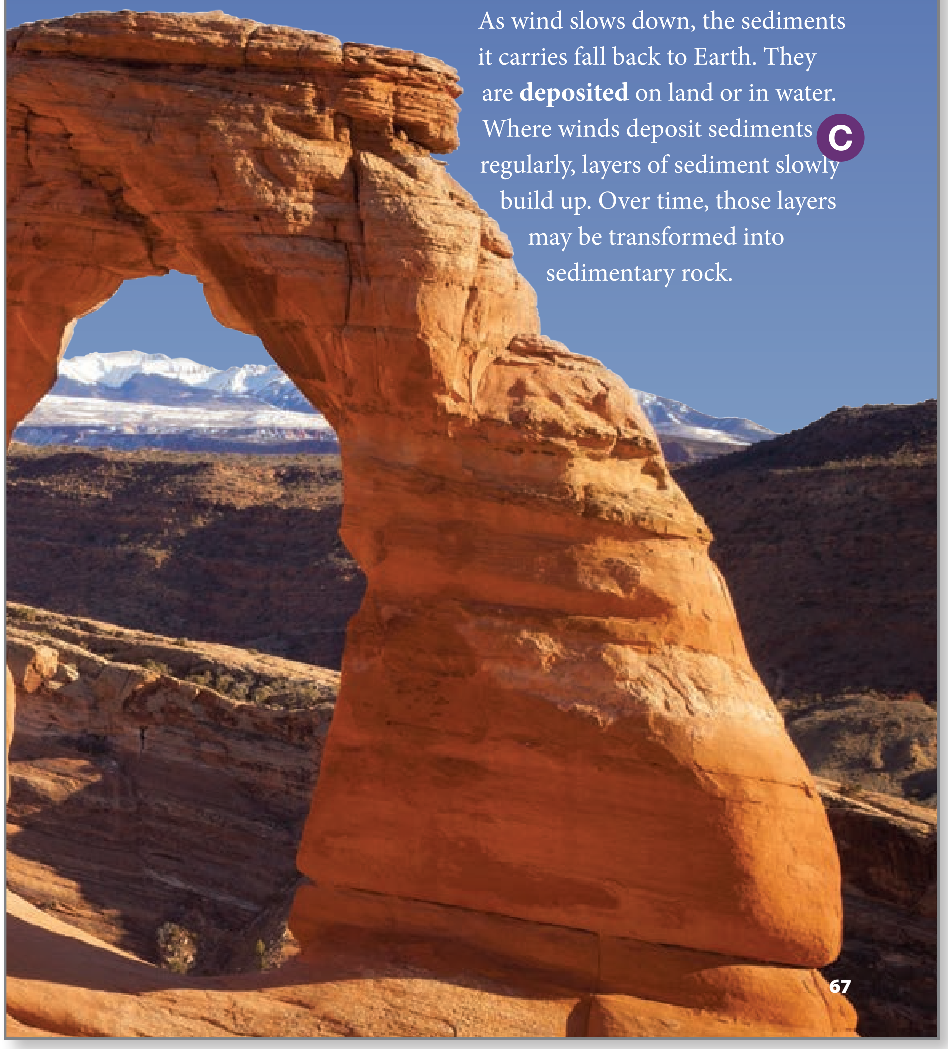
On the windy beach, did your skin sting as it was struck by blowing sand? Wind carrying sediments can act like a sandblasting machine to wear away rocks in its path. When wind-driven sand

Delicate Arch, Arches National Park, Utah

66

hits rock, it chips off tiny pieces. The wind then whisks the pieces away. Over time, this form of weathering can polish rock surfaces or **pepper** them with tiny holes. It can shape huge blocks of rock into delicate stone arches and lofty towers. Weathering and wind erosion can also leave massive boulders balanced on slim supports. Have you seen wind-carved rocks like this?

As wind slows down, the sediments it carries fall back to Earth. They are **deposited** on land or in water. Where winds deposit sediments C regularly, layers of sediment slowly build up. Over time, those layers may be transformed into sedimentary rock.





**C** *Inferential* How are sediments and sedimentary rock related?

» Sedimentary rock is made of sediments. Over time, sediments are compacted and cemented together, layer by layer, transforming them into sedimentary rock.

**A** [Have students read pages 68 and 69 silently.]

68

Glaciers, like this one in Alaska, are powerful forces that can cause erosion.

## Heading Downstream

Like wind, water also causes erosion. The tug of gravity pulls sediments out of wind and water. Flowing water picks up sediments and carries them downhill to new locations. A summer rain can wash fine sediments onto sidewalks and into gutters. A rushing mountain stream can sweep small stones into a valley. A flooded river can surge along with enough force to move large rocks many miles downstream.

B

C

As moving water slows, sediments sink to the bottom of the river or stream. The heaviest sediments are the first to be deposited. The finest sediments are the last. Layers of sediment accumulate at the mouths of rivers and on the bottoms of lakes. Vast layers of sediment are also deposited on the ocean floor over long periods of time. Like wind-deposited sediments, those laid down by water may someday be transformed into sedimentary rock.

Water doesn't have to be in its liquid **state** to erode sediments. Glaciers are enormous masses of ice found in polar regions and near the tops of tall mountains. Although ice is solid, glaciers do move. They flow—very, very slowly—downhill. As countless tons of ice creep over land or down mountainsides, they push, drag, and carry eroded sediments along. Moving glaciers also create sediments as they grind against rocks beside or below them. Glaciers are such powerful forces that they can carve huge U-shaped valleys through mountain ranges.

D

When glaciers melt, they deposit the sediments they have been carrying. About 20,000 years ago, glaciers covered large parts of North America, Europe, and Asia. As the climate warmed, the glaciers melted and retreated northward. They left behind massive deposits of sand, gravel, and **silt**, along with collections of rocks and boulders. You can still see these deposits as hills, mounds, and ridges on the landscape.

69

**B** *Literal* How does water cause erosion?

» Flowing water picks up sediments and carries them downhill to new locations.

**C** *Evaluative* Based on the information in the text, how does the amount of flowing water affect the type of sediments that are eroded?

» The more moving water there is, the larger the sediments and rocks that are moved. A summer rain does not include much water so the sediments it moves are small. A rushing mountain stream has more water than a summer rain and moves faster so it can move small stones into a valley at the bottom of the mountain. A flooded river is overflowing with fast-moving water that is strong enough to move large rocks farther down the river.

**D** *Literal* In what ways do glaciers cause weathering and erosion?

» Glaciers cause weathering when they create sediments as they grind against rocks beside or below them as they move; as glaciers slowly move downhill, they push, drag, and carry eroded sediments along.

**A** [Have students read pages 70 and 71 silently.]

**B** *Inferential* What is one example or piece of evidence provided on these pages that weathering, erosion, and time work together to change Earth's surface?

» Answers may vary, but should include: Over time, the Grand Canyon was created by wind, rain, and the Colorado River working together to cut and shape the landscape. Over time, weathering and erosion wore down the Appalachian Mountains, which are not as tall as they once were.

**A**

## Weathering, Erosion, and Time

Weathering and erosion work slowly. It takes a long time to see their effects. Given time, these processes reshape Earth's surface on a scale so large it's almost impossible to grasp. For example, the Grand **Canyon** in the southwestern United States did not exist when dinosaurs roamed North America. Wind, rain, and the Colorado River slowly **B** created it. These forces cut and shaped the landscape into what it is today—one of the world's largest canyons.

The Grand Canyon

70

Millions of years ago, the Appalachian Mountains in eastern North America were a towering mountain range. The highest peaks may have been more than 20,000 feet above sea level. Weathering and erosion gradually wore the Appalachians down. Their highest point today is just 6,684 feet high. As permanent as mountains seem, weathering and erosion inevitably change them. Even Earth's tallest peaks—Everest in Asia, Aconcagua in South America, Africa's Kilimanjaro, and Europe's Mont Blanc—won't last. They will eventually be worn down by these endless geological processes. But don't worry. Other geological processes are creating new mountains to take their place.

**Note**

Question 1 and Activity Page 10.3 relate to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* — 10 minutes

- Use the following question to discuss the chapter.

1. *Evaluative* How do weathering and erosion continually reshape Earth's surface?
   » Weathering breaks rocks down into smaller pieces. Physical weathering does not change the minerals in rocks. Expanding and contracting, ice wedging, the movement of plant roots and animals, and wind and glaciers all cause physical weathering. Chemical weathering changes the minerals in rocks. Acid rain, the reaction from oxygen, with the help of water, and iron-containing minerals, plants, and lichens all cause chemical weathering. Erosion is any process or force that moves sediments to new locations. Wind, flowing water, moving ice, and gravity all cause erosion. Sediments are moved to new locations, creating new layers of sediments that may be transformed into sedimentary rock.

- Have students turn to Activity Page 10.3. Review the directions and have students complete the activity page for homework.

## Word Work: *State* — 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "Water doesn't have to be in its liquid state to erode sediments."
2. Say the word *state* with me.
3. *State* means the condition of being a solid, liquid, or gas.
4. Water flowing from the faucet is in a liquid state, but water frozen in an ice cube tray is in a solid state.
5. What are some other examples of *state*? Be sure to use the word *state* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "______ is in a ______ state when it ______."]
6. What part of speech is the word *state*?
   » noun

[Use a *Multiple-Meaning Word* activity for follow-up. Tell students the word *state* can have multiple meanings. Share the following with students.]

Meaning #1: state (noun)—the condition of being a solid, liquid, or gas

Meaning #2: state (noun)—one of many smaller units of government that make up a country

Meaning #3: state (verb)—to express something in speech or writing

We have been talking about Meaning #1 for *state*, the condition of being a solid, liquid, or gas. You also read, *In the United States, one of the most famous faults is the San Andreas Fault in California.* This sentence is an example of Meaning #2 for *state*, one of many smaller units of government that make up a country. You also read, *The theory of plate tectonics states that Earth's crust, together with the solid top of the mantle, is broken up into sections.* This sentence is an example of Meaning #3 for *state*, to express something in speech or writing.

I am going to read several sentences. Listen to the context, or the text surrounding *state* in the sentence, for clues as to which meaning is being used. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #1, hold up one finger. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #2, hold up two fingers. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #3, hold up three fingers.

1. My family travels to the state of Tennessee to visit my grandparents.
   » 2
2. The ice cream left out on the kitchen counter quickly turned to a liquid state in the heat.
   » 1
3. My brother stated that he had fed the dogs.
   » 3
4. I am learning the names of all 50 states in the country.
   » 2
5. The weather reporter always states the day's high and low temperatures.
   » 3
6. The pond water changes to a solid state when it freezes.
   » 1

## Materials

- Activity Pages 7.4, 7.5, 8.4
- Volcano Wiki Entry

# WRITING 30 minutes

## Revise and Edit a Wiki Entry

- As needed, allow students time to finish drafting their wiki entry on Activity Page 8.4.

  **Support** You may choose to work with a small group of students who could benefit from extra support in order to guide them in using their notes to draft their wiki entry.

- Have students turn to the Wiki Entry Rubric on Activity Page 7.4.
- Model reviewing the Volcano Wiki Entry with the Wiki Entry Rubric as a guide, just as you did in Lesson 7, by doing the following:
  - Read the first criterion listed in the Exemplary column.
  - Ask students if the Volcano Wiki Entry matches the criterion. If it doesn't, think aloud to revise the sentence(s) to better match the criterion.
  - Continue to model this process for each row of the rubric.
- Give students time to use the Wiki Entry Rubric to revise their writing.

  **Support** You may wish to have students work in pairs to help one another revise their wiki entry. Students could read one another's entries and suggest ways to make adjustments based on the rubric. You may wish to do this step with students in the small group.

- Have students turn to Activity Page 7.5 and complete the Wiki Entry Editing Checklist. Students should add to and/or edit their wiki entry as necessary based on the Wiki Entry Editing Checklist.

  **Support** You may wish to work with students in the small group to complete the Wiki Entry Editing Checklist.

- Circulate around the room as students work to revise and edit their writing, providing support and guidance as needed to assist students with using the Wiki Entry Rubric and the Wiki Entry Editing Checklist to revise and edit their writing.

  **Challenge** Students who have finished revising and editing their draft using the Wiki Entry Rubric and the Wiki Entry Editing Checklist can prepare their draft for publication either by rewriting it or typing it, if computer access is available.

*Wrap Up*

- As time allows, have students share sentences from their wiki entry.
- Collect the drafted wiki entries to assess using the Wiki Entry Rubric provided in Teacher Resources.

## TAKE-HOME MATERIAL

### Reading

- Have students take home Activity Page 10.3 to complete for homework.

### Materials

- Activity Page 10.3

## SPELLING ASSESSMENT ANALYSIS

**Spelling Analysis Chart**

| Student | 1. archrival | 2. paragraph | 3. rupture | 4. hierarchy | 5. biographer | 6. abrupt | 7. matriarch | 8. uninterrupted | 9. anarchy | 10. autograph | 11. eruption | 12. calligraphy |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |

- It may be helpful to refer back to the Pronunciation/Syllabication Chart from Lesson 6.

| Word | CK Code | Syllable Type |
|---|---|---|
| hierarchy | /hie*er*ar*kee/ | open*r-controlled*r-controlled*open |
| matriarch | /mae*tree*ark/ | open*open*r-controlled |
| archrival | /arch*rie*vəl/ | r-controlled*open*ə |
| anarchy | /an*ar*kee/ | closed*r-controlled*open |
| autograph | /aw*toe*graf/ | digraph*open*closed |
| biographer | /bie*o*grə*fer/ | open*open*ə*r-controlled |
| calligraphy | /kəl*li*grə*fee/ | ə*open*ə*open |
| paragraph | /paer*ə*graf/ | r-controlled*ə*closed |
| eruption | /ee*rup*shən/ | open*closed*ə |
| uninterrupted | /un*in*ter*rupt*ed/ | closed*closed*r-controlled*closed*closed |
| rupture | /rup*cher/ | closed*r-controlled |
| abrupt | /ə*brupt/ | ə*closed |

- Students might make the following errors:
  - *arch* words: using 'k' instead of 'ch' for /ark/ or /arch/
  - *graph* words: using 'f' instead of 'ph' for /graf/
  - words ending in 'y': using 'ee' instead of 'y' for /ee/
  - words with /ə/: using 'a,' 'e,' or 'u' instead of the proper letter for /ə/
  - *hierarchy*: using 'i' or 'ire' instead of 'ier' for /hie*er/
  - *eruption*: using 'shun' instead of 'tion' for /shən/
  - *rupture*: using 'ch' instead of 't' for /ch/
- Although any of the above student-error scenarios may occur, misspellings may be due to many other factors. You may find it helpful to use the analysis chart to record any student errors. For example:
  - Is the student consistently making errors on specific vowels? Which ones?
  - Is the student consistently making errors at the ends of the words?
  - Is the student consistently making errors in multisyllable words, but not single-syllable words?
- Also, examine the dictated sentence for errors in capitalization and punctuation.

# Lesson 11

## Unit 6: Geology

### CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Identify weathering and erosion as two powerful forces that reshape Earth's surface
- ✓ Explain how physical weathering, chemical weathering, and erosion occur
- ✓ Identify geologic features that provide evidence of weathering and erosion

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Reading** | | |
| Close Reading: Chapter 7 "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change" | 40 min. | Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 10.3; *The Changing Earth*; Evidence Collector's Chart; scissors; glue |
| Word Work: *Deposit* | 5 min. | |
| **Grammar** | | |
| Introduce Sequencing Multiple Adjectives | 15 min. | Adjectives Chart; Activity Page 11.1 |
| **Morphology** | | |
| Review Suffixes –*ly* and –*y* and Roots *graph* and *rupt* | 15 min. | Activity Page 11.2 |
| **Spelling** | | |
| Introduce Spelling Words | 15 min. | Activity Pages 11.3, 11.4, SR.1 |
| **Take-Home Material** | | |
| Grammar; Morphology; Spelling | * | Activity Pages 11.1–11.4; *Fluency Supplement* selection (optional) |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to describe details of the processes of weathering and erosion.

**Grammar**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to identify and use multiple adjectives in the correct sequence.

**Morphology**: By the end of this lesson, students will have reviewed the meanings and uses of the suffixes –*ly* and –*y* and the roots *graph* and *rupt*.

**Spelling**: By the end of this lesson, students will be prepared to practice spelling targeted words.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

### *Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

| |
|---|
| Read to closely examine the author's words, sentences, and literary devices for a deeper understanding of how weathering and erosion reshape Earth's surface. |

- Display the Evidence Collector's Chart from Lesson 1.

### *Grammar*

- Display the Adjectives Chart on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit.

| Article | Adjective(s) | | | | | Noun |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **General → Specific** | | | | | |
| | **Opinion/ Observation** | **Physical Description (size, shape, age, color)** | **Material** | **Origin** | **Purpose** | |

- Prepare the following examples on the board/chart paper.

| |
|---|
| The big, old, yellow dog loves to play fetch. |
| read old I a Russian folktale scary |

### *Fluency (optional)*

- Choose and make sufficient copies of a text selection from the online *Fluency Supplement* to distribute and review with students for additional fluency practice. If you choose to do a fluency assessment, you will assess students in Lesson 15. See the Unit 1 Teacher Guide introduction for more information on using the *Fluency Supplement*.

## Materials

- Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 10.3
- *The Changing Earth*
- Evidence Collector's Chart
- scissors
- glue

## Note

Close reading lessons present excellent opportunities to ensure that English learners and other students who need additional support fully comprehend a reading selection.

# READING 45 minutes

## Close Reading: Chapter 7 "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change" 40 minutes

### *Review* 5 minutes

- Review student responses to Activity Page 10.3, which was assigned for homework.

### *Review the Chapter* 5 minutes

- Tell students they will reread Chapter 7, "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper.

> Read to closely examine the author's words, sentences, and literary devices for a deeper understanding of how weathering and erosion reshape Earth's surface.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

> How do weathering and erosion continually reshape Earth's surface?

### *Close Reading*

The practice of close reading involves directing students' attention to specific aspects of a text. The guided reading supports in this close reading of Chapter 7, "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change," are intended to provide this focus and are labeled as follows:

- *VOC* indicates questions or comments that focus on vocabulary to explain meanings or check student understanding and may highlight multiple-meaning words or idioms.
- *SYN* indicates questions or comments that focus on syntax to explain complex sentences and syntactic structure.
- *COMP* indicates questions or comments that focus on students' understanding of the text. These questions require text-based responses and are sequenced to build a gradual understanding of the key details of the text. Students may provide multiple responses using different pieces of evidence, grounding inferences logically in the text.
- *LIT* indicates questions or comments that focus on literary devices, which are techniques an author uses to produce a specific effect such as alliteration, similes, metaphors, etc.

Not all question types will be included in each close reading lesson.

These labels and their explanations are for your reference and are not intended to be shared with students. Also, guided reading supports in brackets are intended to guide you in facilitating discussion and should not be read verbatim to students. Guided reading supports not presented in brackets should be read aloud verbatim.

There are many ways for students to respond to the questions. Vary how you elicit students' responses to promote student engagement. For example:

- Have students work in pairs. Following each question, direct students to consult with their partner about the correct response before one student responds.
- Have students work in small groups of three or four students. Following each question, direct students to consult with others in their group about the correct response before one student responds.
- Following a question, have all students provide a written response before one student responds orally.

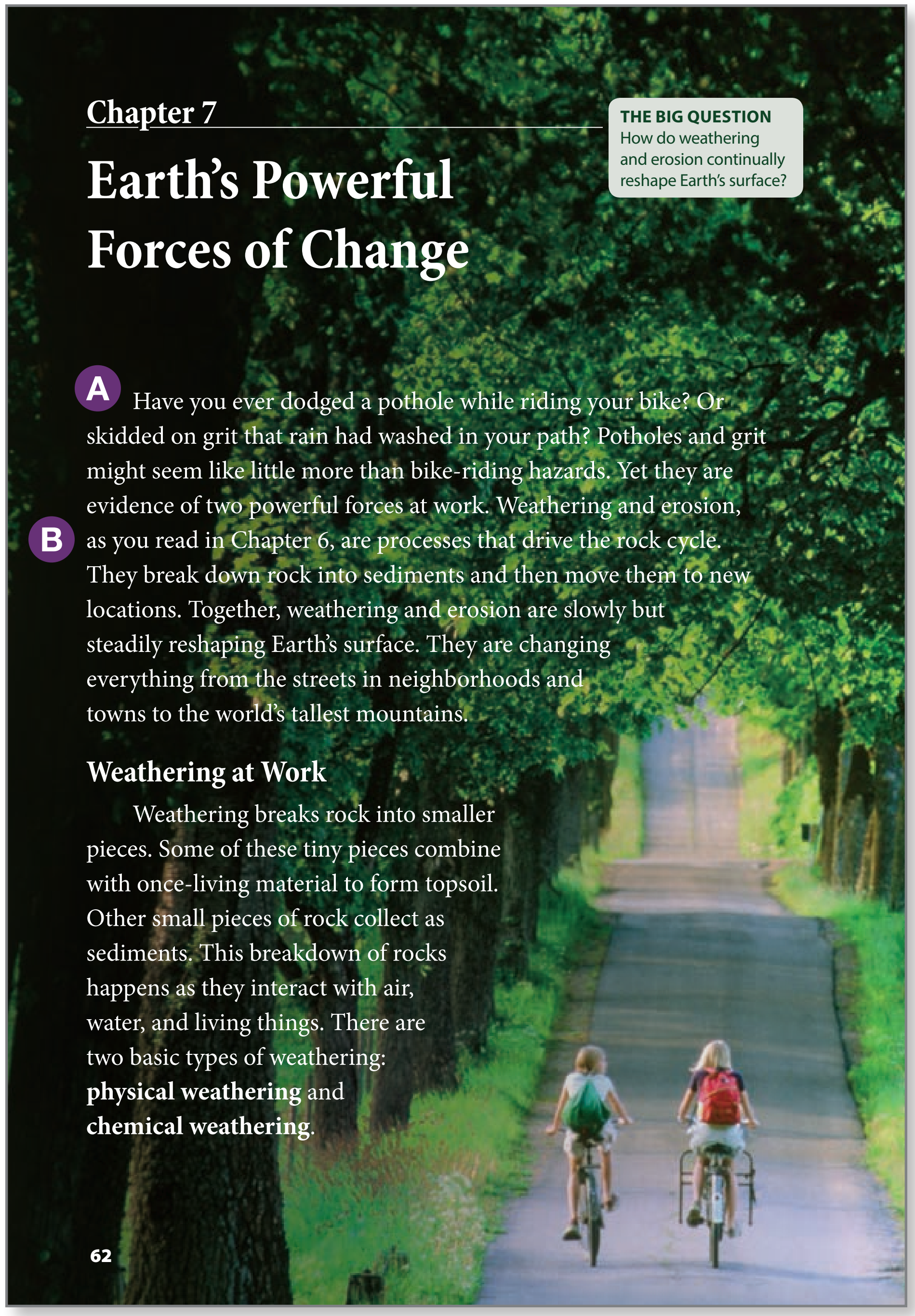
### *Read "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change"* **20 minutes**

- Read the title of the chapter as a class, "Earth's Powerful Forces of Change." As you read portions of the chapter, pause to explain or clarify the text at each point indicated.

**A** [Have students read the first paragraph on page 62 silently.]

**B** *VOC Inferential* A familiar meaning of the word *drive* is to operate a vehicle and direct the movement of it or to take someone or something to a place in a vehicle. *Drive* can also mean to serve as the basis for something. The author uses the word *drive* when stating, “Weathering and erosion, as you read in Chapter 6, are processes that drive the rock cycle.” What does this statement mean?

» Weathering and erosion serve as the basis for the rock cycle happening; the rock cycle occurs due to weathering and erosion.



Chapter 7

# Earth’s Powerful Forces of Change

**THE BIG QUESTION**
How do weathering and erosion continually reshape Earth’s surface?

**A** Have you ever dodged a pothole while riding your bike? Or skidded on grit that rain had washed in your path? Potholes and grit might seem like little more than bike-riding hazards. Yet they are evidence of two powerful forces at work. Weathering and erosion, **B** as you read in Chapter 6, are processes that drive the rock cycle. They break down rock into sediments and then move them to new locations. Together, weathering and erosion are slowly but steadily reshaping Earth’s surface. They are changing everything from the streets in neighborhoods and towns to the world’s tallest mountains.

## Weathering at Work

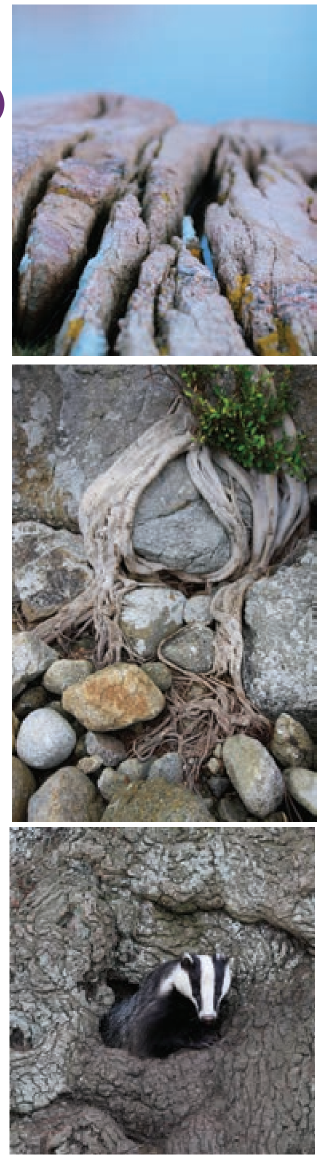
Weathering breaks rock into smaller pieces. Some of these tiny pieces combine with once-living material to form topsoil. Other small pieces of rock collect as sediments. This breakdown of rocks happens as they interact with air, water, and living things. There are two basic types of weathering: **physical weathering** and **chemical weathering**.

62

**C** Physical weathering breaks big rocks into smaller ones without changing the minerals they contain. Widely swinging **D** temperatures cause physical weathering. For example, rocks in a desert bake during the day beneath the sun's scorching heat. As rocks get hot, they **expand**. At night, temperatures in the desert fall. As rocks cool down, they **contract**, or shrink slightly. Expand, contract, expand, contract—this endless cycle gradually causes the rocks' outer layer to crumble or flake off.

Water also causes physical weathering. Water seeps into tiny cracks in rocks. If temperatures drop below freezing, the water turns to ice. Water expands as it freezes, pushing outward and enlarging the cracks. Geologists call this process **ice wedging**. Each time the water freezes, it opens cracks a little wider. Eventually, the rocks split apart. Ice wedging is what makes potholes in streets, too.

Plants and animals also cause rocks to weather. Tree roots squeeze into the cracks in rocks. As the roots grow, they act like wedges, forcing the cracks wider and wider. Eventually the rocks break apart. Badgers, chipmunks, and other animals burrow into cliffs and hillsides like tiny bulldozers. As they dig or tunnel into the ground, they push buried rocks to the surface where most weathering takes place.



Examples of physical weathering

63

**C** [Have students read the first paragraph on page 63 silently.]

**D** *VOC Inferential* *Swinging* means shifting from one condition to another. The author states that *Widely swinging temperatures cause physical weathering*. What is meant by the phrase, *widely swinging temperatures*?

» *Widely swinging temperatures* means temperatures change drastically from one extreme to another.

*COMP Inferential* How do widely swinging temperatures cause physical weathering?

» The scorching heat during the day causes rocks to expand; as temperatures cool at night, rocks contract. Over time, this cycle of expanding and contracting causes rocks' outer layer to crumble or flake off, which is a form of physical weathering.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Yunnan | /yoo*nan/ |
| Shilin | /shee*leen/ |

**A** [Have students read page 64 silently.]

**B** *LIT* What does the idiom *eats away at* mean?

» *Eats away at* means erodes. In this paragraph, the author is saying that acid rain erodes the outside of buildings.

**Support** An idiom is a phrase that does not make sense using the meaning of the individual words, but that has a meaning of its own.

**C** *COMP Inferential* How do geologists know there is unobserved weathering?

» Caves that form underground are evidence of unobserved weathering. Rain seeps into the ground, causing carbonic acid to weather buried rocks. When geologists find underground caves, they find evidence of unobserved weathering.

**Support** *Unobserved* means not seen.

**A** Chemical weathering breaks down rocks by changing the minerals they contain. Rain is a powerful chemical weathering force. As rain falls, it mixes with the gas carbon dioxide in the air. The result is acid rain. Acid rain is strong enough to dissolve some minerals in rocks. Once dissolved, the minerals easily wash away, weakening the rock. Acid rain very slowly carves some rocks into different shapes. It gradually erases the lettering on old gravestones, and blurs the faces of **B** stone statues. It eats away at the outside of ancient and even modern buildings. Where rain seeps into the ground, carbonic acid causes **C** weathering of buried rocks as well. Over long periods of time, this often unobserved weathering creates caves deep underground.

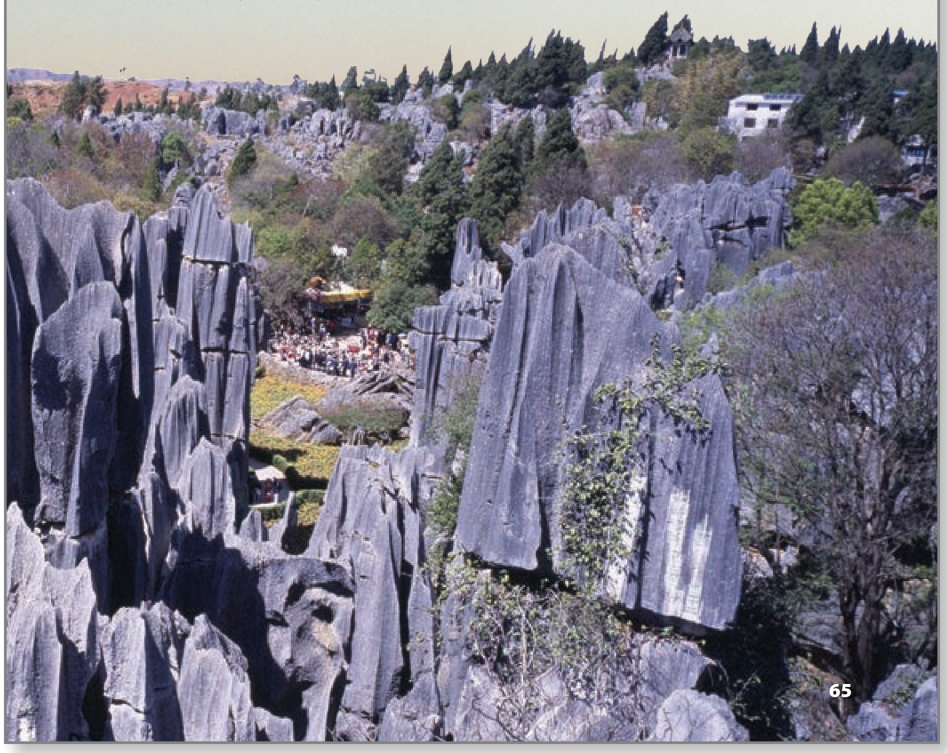
64

**D** **E** Another gas in the air—oxygen—causes chemical weathering in rocks. With a little help from water, oxygen reacts with iron-containing minerals. The reaction changes the minerals, making the rocks brittle and crumbly, and turning them a rusty red color.

Some plants release rock-weathering substances. Take a peek under a patch of moss growing on a rock and you'll see little pits in the rock's surface. Acid from the moss plant caused the damage.

As a result of all weathering, rocks are broken down into smaller pieces and **ultimately** into sediments. Erosion is what gets those sediments moving.

Towering rock formations created by chemical weathering rise straight up out of the ground near Kunming, the capital of China's Yunnan Province. Some formations are as tall as a 10-story building. The Chinese call this place Shilin, or the Stone Forest.



65

**D** [Have students read the first paragraph on page 65 silently.]

**E** *SYN Inferential* What does the author mean by the phrase *with a little help from water*?

» Oxygen only reacts with iron-containing minerals when water is also present. Oxygen and water work together to react to iron-containing minerals, making rocks brittle and crumbly and turning them a rusty red color.

**A** [Have students read the third paragraph beginning on page 66 and ending on page 67 silently.]

**B** *VOC Inferential* Again, the author uses a form of the word *drive*. In this paragraph, the author states *When wind-driven sand hits rock, it chips off tiny pieces*. What does *wind-driven* mean?

» moved and guided by wind

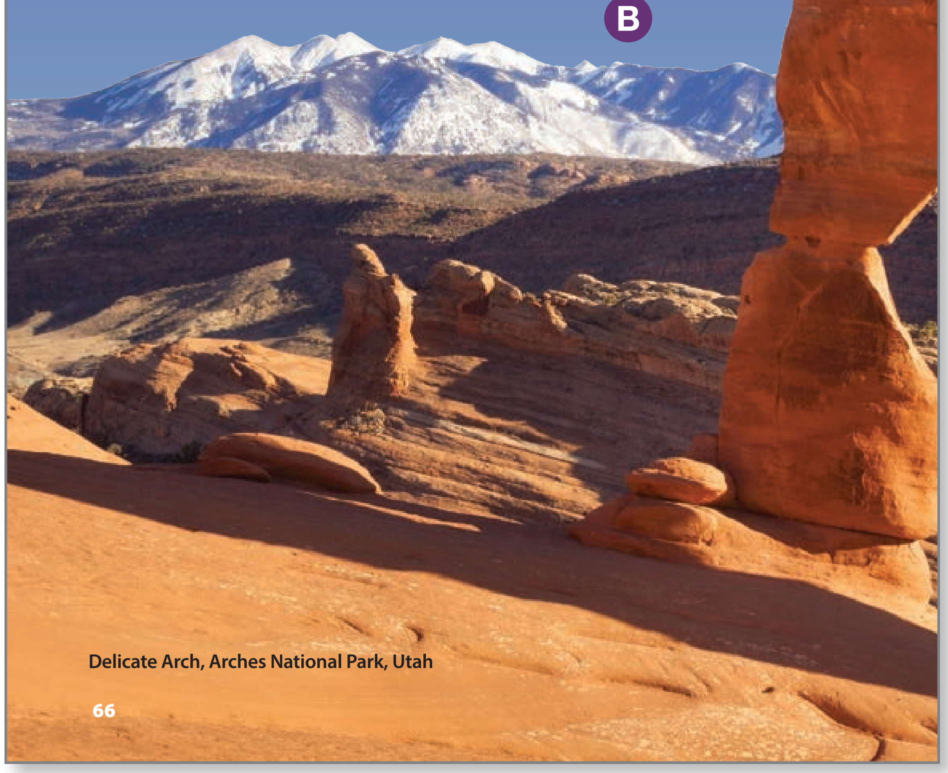
**C** *COMP* A sandblasting machine is a powerful machine that uses air to shoot sand out at a high speed. A sandblasting machine is used to clean, polish, or decorate a surface with sand. Sometimes, wind carrying sediments blows very hard, throwing or blasting the sediments at rocks as if a sandblasting machine was being used to change rocks.

## Sediments on the Move

Geologists describe erosion as any process or force that moves sediments to new locations. Wind, flowing water, moving ice, and gravity all transport sediments from place to place. These forces are the primary causes of erosion.

Have you ever stood on a sandy beach on a windy day? Did you notice that gusts of wind sent sand flying past? When air moves quickly across the ground, it picks up sediments and carries them away. Powerful winds can carry sediments for hundreds, even thousands, of miles.

**A** On the windy beach, did your skin sting as it was struck by blowing sand? Wind carrying sediments can act like a sandblasting **C** machine to wear away rocks in its path. When wind-driven sand **B**

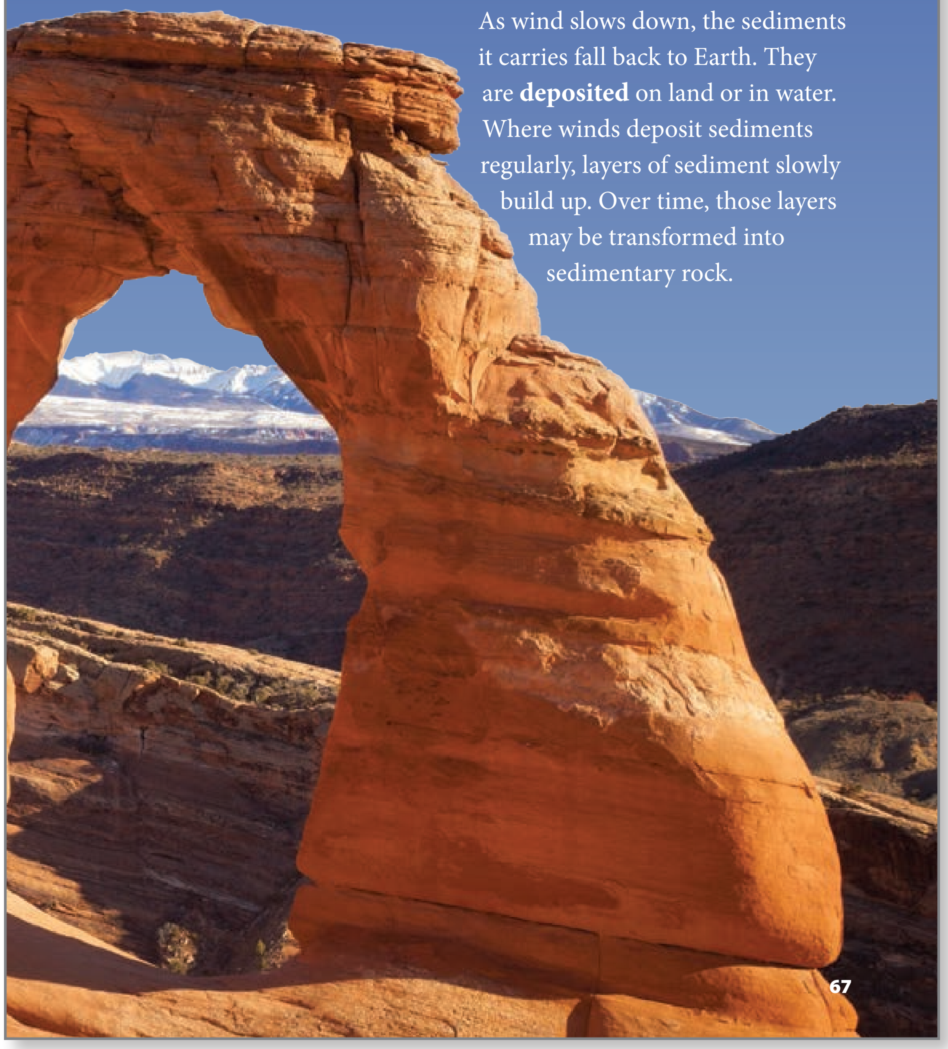


Delicate Arch, Arches National Park, Utah

66

hits rock, it chips off tiny pieces. The wind then whisks the pieces away. Over time, this form of weathering can polish rock surfaces or **D** **pepper** them with tiny holes. It can shape huge blocks of rock into delicate stone arches and lofty towers. Weathering and wind erosion can also leave massive boulders balanced on slim supports. Have you seen wind-carved rocks like this?

As wind slows down, the sediments it carries fall back to Earth. They are **deposited** on land or in water. Where winds deposit sediments regularly, layers of sediment slowly build up. Over time, those layers may be transformed into sedimentary rock.



67

**D** *VOC* In this paragraph, *pepper* is a verb that means to sprinkle or cover. *Pepper* can also be a noun that means a food seasoning made by grinding the dried berries of an Indian plant and their black hard covers; it can also be a noun meaning a hollow vegetable that is usually green, yellow, or red and can be eaten raw or cooked.

Glaciers, like this one in Alaska, are powerful forces that can cause erosion.

A

## Heading Downstream

Like wind, water also causes erosion. The tug of gravity pulls B sediments out of wind and water. Flowing water picks up sediments and carries them downhill to new locations. A summer rain can wash fine sediments onto sidewalks and into gutters. A rushing mountain stream can sweep small stones into a valley. A flooded river can surge along with enough force to move large rocks many miles downstream.

As moving water slows, sediments sink to the bottom of the river or stream. The heaviest sediments are the first to be deposited. The C finest sediments are the last. Layers of sediment accumulate at the mouths of rivers and on the bottoms of lakes. Vast layers of sediment are also deposited on the ocean floor over long periods of time. Like wind-deposited sediments, those laid down by water may someday be transformed into sedimentary rock.

Water doesn't have to be in its liquid **state** to erode sediments. Glaciers are enormous masses of ice found in polar regions and near the tops of tall mountains. Although ice is solid, glaciers do move. They flow—very, very slowly—downhill. As countless tons of ice creep over land or down mountainsides, they push, drag, and carry eroded sediments along. Moving glaciers also create sediments as they grind against rocks beside or below them. Glaciers are such powerful forces that they can carve huge U-shaped valleys through mountain ranges.

When glaciers melt, they deposit the sediments they have been carrying. About 20,000 years ago, glaciers covered large parts of North America, Europe, and Asia. As the climate warmed, the glaciers melted and retreated northward. They left behind massive deposits of sand, gravel, and **silt**, along with collections of rocks and boulders. You can still see these deposits as hills, mounds, and ridges on the landscape.

69

**A** [Have students read the first two paragraphs on page 69 silently.]

**B** *COMP* Gravity is the natural force that causes things to fall to Earth. The author uses *tug of gravity* to emphasize that sediments are naturally pulled out of wind and water as they are moving due to the force of gravity.

**C** *COMP Inferential* Why are the finest sediments deposited last?

» If something is fine, it is very small, meaning it doesn't weigh much. Heavy sediments weigh more and sink faster. Fine sediments take longer to reach the bottom because their weight doesn't pull them down as quickly.

**A** [Have students read page 70 silently.]

**B** *SYN* The phrase *on a scale so large it's almost impossible to grasp* means that these processes shape Earth's surface in such a big way over time that it is extremely hard to understand just how much of an impact these processes actually have on Earth's surface.

**A**

## Weathering, Erosion, and Time

Weathering and erosion work slowly. It takes a long time to see their effects. Given time, these processes reshape Earth's surface on a **B** scale so large it's almost impossible to grasp. For example, the Grand **Canyon** in the southwestern United States did not exist when dinosaurs roamed North America. Wind, rain, and the Colorado River slowly created it. These forces cut and shaped the landscape into what it is today—one of the world's largest canyons.

The Grand Canyon

70

C Millions of years ago, the Appalachian Mountains in eastern North America were a towering mountain range. The highest peaks may have D been more than 20,000 feet above sea level. Weathering and erosion gradually wore the Appalachians down. Their highest point today is just 6,684 feet high. As permanent as mountains seem, weathering and erosion inevitably change them. Even Earth's tallest peaks—Everest in Asia, Aconcagua in South America, Africa's Kilimanjaro, and Europe's Mont Blanc—won't last. They will eventually be worn down by these endless geological processes. But don't worry. Other geological processes are creating new mountains to take their place.

71

**C** [Have students read page 71 silently.]

**D** **Challenge** *SYN* What math equation would you use to find out the difference between the highest peaks of the Appalachian Mountains millions of years ago and their highest point today?

» 20,000 feet minus 6,684 feet; the difference is 13,316 feet

## Note

Activity Page 1.3 relates to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* — 10 minutes

- Have students turn to Activity Pages 1.3 and 1.4 and refer to the displayed Evidence Collector's Chart.
- Remind students that this chart is being used throughout the unit to collect evidence of changes to the earth related to specific causes of geologic change. The evidence represents what geologists examine to determine how powerful forces above and below Earth's surface work to change the earth.
- Have a student read aloud the information under "What is the cause?" in the sixth row. Explain that students must determine what evidence is in the chapter about weathering breaking rocks into smaller pieces and erosion moving these pieces, both over time. (pages 63–71)
- Have students refer to the remaining images on Activity Page 1.4. Engage students in a discussion about the images, talking about which image represents evidence of weathering breaking down rocks and erosion moving the pieces over time. (image showing the Grand Canyon)
- Ensure students understand why the image showing the Grand Canyon is the correct image. (The image of the Grand Canyon shows the effects of weathering, erosion, and time working together to shape the landscape, which is evidence of how the processes of weathering and erosion work together over time to change Earth's surface.)
- Have students cut out the correct image, glue it to the chart in the "What evidence is there?" column, and write the following information for chapter number, key words, and letter in the chart:

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | *Over time, weathering breaks rocks into smaller pieces and erosion moves these pieces to new locations.* | *image: the Grand Canyon*<br><br>*key words:* processes reshape Earth's surface | C |

## Word Work: *Deposit* 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "Where winds deposit sediments regularly, layers of sediment slowly build up."
2. Say the word *deposit* with me.
3. *Deposit* means to put or leave in a particular place.
4. During fierce storms, strong wind gusts deposit leaves all over the roads.
5. What are some other examples of ways you can use *deposit*? Be sure to use the word *deposit* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "______ deposit(s) ______ when ______." or "______ was deposited when______."]
6. What part of speech is the word *deposit*?
   » verb

[Use a *Synonyms* activity for follow-up.] What does the word *deposit* mean? What are some synonyms, or words that have a similar meaning, of *deposit*? [Prompt students to provide words like *put*, *leave*, and *place*.] With a partner, create a sentence for each of the synonyms of *deposit* he or she provides.

# GRAMMAR 15 minutes

## Introduce Sequencing Multiple Adjectives

- Tell students that adjectives are words that describe nouns. Adjectives provide details about nouns, such as size, color, shape, and material.
- Have students think of adjectives to describe objects in the classroom and share them aloud. (*full* bookshelf, *large* board, *sharp* pencil, *green* folder, etc.) Adjectives can come before or after the noun, as in *The pencil is sharp*. or *This is a sharp pencil*.
- Remind students that the words *a*, *an*, and *the* are special kinds of adjectives called articles. Articles provide additional detail about the nouns with which they are used. Articles tell us whether a specific noun is being described (*the* rock; *the* aftershock) or a general noun is being described (*a* rock; *an* aftershock).
- Tell students that when more than one adjective is being used to describe a noun, there is a common convention, or rule, for their order.
- The convention states that the order should begin with the most general adjectives and end with the most specific adjectives; the convention also refers to the specific order in which multiple adjectives are sequenced. Adjectives are classified and sequenced by type.

### Materials

- Adjectives Chart
- Activity Page 11.1

## Note

Many native English speakers will sequence multiple adjectives correctly based on their oral language experience. English learners in particular may find this chart helpful.

- Tell students that according to the conventional order, the article is first and the noun comes last. (*an earthquake*, *a big earthquake*)
- Refer to the chart you prepared in advance to explain the correct sequence of multiple adjectives. Read aloud the different types listed in the chart. (*opinion/observation*, *physical description*, *material*, *origin*, and *purpose*)
- Point out that *opinion/observation* refers to adjectives that describe a noun based on a particular point of view. *Physical description* refers to adjectives that describe the size, shape, age, or color of a noun, in that order. *Material* refers to adjectives that describe how, or with what, a noun is made. *Origin* refers to adjectives that describe a noun based on where it comes from, or its origin. *Purpose* refers to adjectives that describe a noun based on its use.
- Ask students to think of adjectives that would fall under each category. List the adjectives under each type's heading in the chart as demonstrated in the following example.

| Article | Adjective(s) | | | | | | | | Noun |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | General → Specific | | | | | | | | |
| | Opinion/ Observation | Physical Description (size, shape, age, color) | | | | Material | Origin | Purpose | |
| | good | big | round | young | blue | silver | American | cooking | |
| | bad | small | triangular | old | red | wooden | Italian | writing | |
| | fun | tiny | square | new | yellow | plastic | German | sleeping | |
| | exciting | giant | flat | ancient | green | metal | Russian | running | |

- Explain that all of the adjective types are rarely, if ever, used all at once in a sentence. It is common, however, for two or three adjectives to be used in a sentence at one time. Whether a sentence contains two adjectives or five, the adjectives are sequenced in the conventional order as presented in the chart. For example, if there are adjectives of three different types in one sentence, such as color, size, and material, then they are sequenced in the conventional order, which is size, color, and material.
- Refer to the first example you prepared in advance and read it with students.

| |
|---|
| The big, old, yellow dog loves to play fetch. |

- Ask students to identify the noun in the sentence. (*dog*) Ask students to identify the article in the sentence. (*the*) Ask students to identify the adjectives in the sentence. (*big*, *old*, and *yellow*)
- Explain that the types of adjectives used in this first sentence refer to size (*big*), age (*old*), and color (*yellow*). Note that the adjectives are listed in the proper order, with the article coming first, the adjectives describing the size, age, and color coming in that order next, and the noun coming last. Also note that when more than one adjective is used in a series, or in a row, then the adjectives are separated by commas.

- Ask a student to read the words in the next example.

read old I a Russian folktale scary

- Ask students to identify the part of speech for each word. (*read*: verb; *old*, *an*, *Russian*: adjectives; *I*, *folktale*: nouns) For each adjective, ask students to identify its type. (*old*: physical description/age; *an*: article; *Russian*: origin)
- Ask students to reorder the words to create a sentence with the adjectives ordered correctly according to the chart. Reinforce the correct order of the adjectives.

I read a scary, old, Russian folktale.

- Have students turn to Activity Page 11.1 and read the directions. Review the example and then ask students to complete the first item. Circulate throughout the room to be sure all students understand. Have students complete Activity Page 11.1 for homework, or if you feel they need more assistance, complete the activity page as a teacher-guided activity.

## MORPHOLOGY 15 minutes

### Review Suffixes –*ly* and –*y* and Roots *graph* and *rupt*

- Remind students that a suffix is a syllable or syllables placed at the end of a root word to change the word's meaning.
- Remind students that a root is a main element of a word that forms the base of its meaning. A prefix or suffix added to the root can change the meaning. It can also change the part of speech of a root.
- Tell students today they will review suffixes and roots that have been covered in previous lessons.
- Remind students that the suffix –*ly* is of Latin origin and means "in a ______ way" with the blank being the word to which –*ly* is added. Point out that it is pronounced /lee/.
- Remind students that when –*ly* is added to the end of an adjective, the word becomes an adverb. Remind students that adverbs describe verbs. The adverbs created with the suffix –*ly* describe how a verb happens.
- Write *busy* on the board/chart paper. Briefly discuss the meaning of the word and then use it in a sentence. (*Busy* means having a lot to do or being full of activity. The department store was very *busy* and crowded, so I had to wait in line for a long time.)
- Remind students that when you add the suffix –*ly* to an adjective ending in –*y*, you must first change the –*y* to –*i*, and then add –*ly*.

#### Materials

- Activity Page 11.2

- Change the –*y* in *busy* to an –*i* and add the suffix –*ly*. Have students read the new word; then discuss the meaning of the word, and use it in a sentence. (*Busily* means in a busy way or in a way that relates to having a lot to do. The adults *busily* worked in the kitchen preparing Thanksgiving dinner.)
- Remind students that the suffix –*y* is of English origin and means "full of." Point out that it is pronounced /ee/.
- Write *taste* on the board/chart paper. Briefly discuss the part of speech and meaning of the word. Then use it in a sentence. (*Taste* is a verb meaning to test the flavor of something. When my sister *tasted* a lemon, she made a funny face because it was so sour.) Note that *taste* can also be a noun meaning the flavor of something when it is in your mouth.
- Remind students that when you add the suffix –*y* to a word ending in –*e*, you must remove the –*e* before adding –*y*.
- Change the –*e* in *taste* to –*y*. Have students read the new word; then discuss the part of speech and the meaning of the word, and use it in a sentence. (*Tasty* is an adjective meaning full of flavor or delicious. The chicken we had for dinner last night was very *tasty*.)
- Remind students that *graph* is a Greek root that means "write" and is pronounced /graf/.
- Write *biography* on the board/chart paper. Briefly discuss the part of speech and meaning of the word. Then use it in a sentence. (*Biography* is a noun meaning a written history of someone's life. I read an interesting *biography* about Theodore Roosevelt.)
- Remind students that *rupt* is a Latin root that means "to break or burst" and is pronounced /rupt/.
- Write *abruptly* on the board. Briefly discuss the part of speech and the meaning of the word. Then use it in a sentence. (*Abruptly* is an adverb meaning in a sudden and unexpected way. We had to leave the beach *abruptly* when an unexpected storm rolled in.)
- Continue in this manner for the remaining words, using the following chart as a guide.

| Root | Meaning | Affixed Word | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| kind | (adjective) doing good for others | kindly | (adverb) in a kind way; in a way that is doing good for others | My sister kindly made soup for me when I was sick. |
| mess | (noun) a state of disorder | messy | (adjective) full of disorder | Her dad told her she couldn't play until she cleaned her messy room. |
| graph | write (Greek) | photograph | (noun) a picture taken with a camera | We saw a photograph of the damage caused by an earthquake. |
| rupt | to break or burst (Latin) | interrupt | (verb) to stop by breaking through | My parents say that it is rude to interrupt people when they are having a conversation. |

- Have students turn to Activity Page 11.2. Briefly review the directions. Complete the first two sentences together as a class. Have students complete the rest of Activity Page 11.2 for homework, or if you feel they need more assistance, complete the entire activity page as a teacher-guided activity.

## SPELLING 15 minutes

### Introduce Spelling Words

- Explain that students will practice 10 words related to the content of the Reader, *The Changing Earth*. These words do not follow one single spelling pattern. Tell students they will be assessed on these words and will write a dictated sentence related to one or more of these words in Lesson 15.
- Introduce the words by writing them on the board/chart paper. First say the word aloud, and then sound out each syllable, naming each letter aloud as you write it. Continue syllable by syllable until the word is spelled correctly. You may wish to use the pronunciation chart to guide students in saying the words.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. fault | 6. tectonic |
| 2. tsunami | 7. molten |
| 3. geyser | 8. seismograph |
| 4. erosion | 9. epicenter |
| 5. glacier | 10. conclusion |

### Note

You will not write the information in the shaded columns on the board/chart paper, as that information is intended for use during oral instruction. Complete as many examples as time permits.

### Materials

- Activity Pages 11.3, 11.4, SR.1

### Note

Remember to point out specific spelling patterns in each word and their relationship to the sounds and spellings on the Individual Code Chart.

### *Pronunciation/Syllabication Chart*

The following chart includes pronunciation and syllabication information for the spelling words. The first column lists the words. The second column breaks the words into decodable sounds based on the Core Knowledge code approach to decoding words. The third column lists syllable types in each word. This information is provided so you can present these new, unfamiliar spelling words in a way that calls upon and reinforces the manner in which students were taught to decode and encode in the earlier grades.

As you introduce and write each word, it may be helpful if you point out particular spelling patterns within each word and show students where these spellings are reflected on the Individual Code Chart. For example, you might note that the final sound in the word *seismograph* is /f/ and then point out the 'ph' spelling for /f/ that is included on the Individual Code Chart.

If you are unfamiliar with the CKLA phonics approach and/or have limited phonics training, you may also find the following materials in the Teacher Resources section of the Unit 1 Teacher Guide helpful: "Using Chunking to Decode Multisyllable Words" and "Sound and Spelling of Schwa."

If you have taught CKLA in Grades K–3, you will notice the sound-spelling notation is different in Grade 4 than in previous grades. In Grades K–3, we noted each individual sound spelling within //. For example, the sound spellings for *fault* would be /f/ /aw/ /l/ /t/. In Grade 4, we use a sound-spelling notation that follows linguistic and dictionary conventions, making each notation easier to see and read. For example, the word *fault* is now notated as /fawlt/.

| Word | CK Code | Syllable Type |
|---|---|---|
| fault | /fawlt/ | digraph |
| tsunami | /s<u>oo</u>*no*mee/ | open*open*open |
| geyser | /gie*zer/ | digraph*r-controlled |
| erosion | /i*roe*zshən/ | open*open*ə |
| glacier | /glae*sher/ | open*r-controlled |
| tectonic | /tek*ton*ik/ | closed*closed*closed |
| molten | /moel*ten/ | closed*closed |
| seismograph | /siez*mə*graf/ | digraph*ə*closed |
| epicenter | /ep*i*sen*ter/ | closed*open*closed*r-controlled |
| conclusion | /kun*kl<u>oo</u>*zshən/ | closed*open*ə |

- After writing and pronouncing the words, use the following chart to define each word and provide an example of how to use it in a sentence.

| Spelling Word | Definition | Example Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| fault | (noun) a crack in Earth's crust | Huge blocks of rock moving along a fault can trigger an earthquake. |
| tsunami | (noun) a gigantic wave caused by an earthquake in oceanic crust | A tsunami can travel as fast as 500 miles per hour and can grow to become a wall of water as tall as a four-story building. |
| geyser | (noun) an underground hot spring that periodically erupts, shooting hot water and steam into the air | Old Faithful is a geyser in Yellowstone National Park that erupts multiple times a day. |
| erosion | (noun) any process or force that moves sediments to new locations | Erosion can be a slow process caused by wind, flowing water, moving ice, or gravity. |
| glacier | (noun) an enormous, slow-moving mass of ice found in polar regions and near tops of tall mountains | As the climate gets warmer, a glacier that was once very large can melt and eventually disappear. |
| tectonic | (adjective) relating to the process of plate movement on Earth's surface | Tectonic plates move slowly but their movements have dramatically changed Earth's surface over millions of years. |
| molten | (adjective) melted | Molten rock moves slowly, like a pot of syrup being stirred. |
| seismograph | (noun) an instrument used to track seismic waves traveling through the earth | If a major earthquake happens, a seismograph records the seismic waves as big zigzags. |
| epicenter | (noun) the point on Earth's surface directly above an earthquake's focus | Scientists compare multiple seismograms in order to pinpoint an earthquake's epicenter. |
| conclusion | (noun) a decision or opinion formed based on information you have | Alfred Wegener reached the conclusion that all the continents were once joined together as one landmass based on evidence. |

- Tell students the word list will remain on display until the assessment so they can refer to it until then.
- Have students turn to Activity Pages 11.3 and 11.4. Explain that they will take home Activity Page 11.3 to practice spelling the words for homework and complete Activity Page 11.4 for homework.

## TAKE-HOME MATERIAL

### Grammar; Morphology; Spelling

- Have students take home Activity Pages 11.1, 11.2, and 11.4 to complete for homework and Activity Page 11.3 to practice spelling the words.
- Have students take home a text selection from the *Fluency Supplement* if you are choosing to provide additional fluency practice.

### Materials

- Activity Pages 11.1–11.4
- *Fluency Supplement* selection (optional)

# Lesson 12

## Unit 6: Geology

## CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Explain how the movement of tectonic plates can create different kinds of mountains
- ✓ Identify different types of mountains and key features of each
- ✓ Identify and locate major mountain ranges on Earth's continents

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Reading** | | |
| Small Group: Chapter 8 "Earth's Mighty Mountains" | 40 min. | *The Changing Earth*; world map; Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 12.1, 12.2; Evidence Collector's Chart; scissors; glue |
| Word Work: *Sheer* | 5 min. | |
| **Writing** | | |
| Plan a Descriptive Paragraph | 45 min. | Descriptive Paragraph Example; Activity Page 12.3; *The Changing Earth* |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to describe the different ways that mountains are formed.

**Writing**: By the end of this lesson, students will have planned for writing a descriptive paragraph about a rock or other item in the rock cycle.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

*Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

| |
|---|
| Read to understand how tectonic plates interact to form different types of mountains. |

- Display a world map. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit. Be prepared to locate the following during the lesson: India's Himalayas; South America's Andes Mountains; Germany's Harz Mountains; Wyoming's Grand Tetons; the Basin and Range Province of Utah, Nevada, and Arizona; and South Dakota's Black Hills.

- Display the Evidence Collector's Chart from Lesson 1.

*Writing*

- Create a descriptive paragraph to display. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of the following Descriptive Paragraph Example in the digital components for this unit.

**Descriptive Paragraph**

My name is Leah Lava, and I feel as hot as the sun! That's probably because I'm lava shooting down the side of an active volcano. I hear a deep rumble behind me as the rocks and debris spew out of the mountain, and I wonder if the plume is still reaching toward the blackening sky like an opening umbrella. As soon as I feel the air touch me, I begin to cool down. Thank goodness! It was getting awfully hot. As I cool, I harden, forming igneous rock. After all that hot activity, I like feeling wind blow across me and rain rinse my body. Sometimes I get uncomfortable in the scorching sun or the freezing cold, but I feel calm listening to the birds chirping around me and tasting the water that trickles over me.

*Grammar; Morphology; Spelling*

- Collect Activity Pages 11.1, 11.2, and 11.4 to review and grade as there are no grammar, morphology, or spelling lessons today.

## READING 45 minutes

### Small Group: Chapter 8 "Earth's Mighty Mountains" 40 minutes

*Introduce the Chapter* 5 minutes

- Tell students they will read Chapter 8, "Earth's Mighty Mountains."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Preview the core vocabulary words before reading the chapter.
- Begin by telling students the first vocabulary word they will encounter in this chapter is *sea level.*
- Have them find the words on page 73 of the Reader. Explain that each vocabulary word is bolded the first time it appears in the chapter.
- Explain that the glossary contains definitions of all the vocabulary words in this Reader. Have students refer to the glossary at the back of the Reader, locate *sea level*, and then have a student read the definition.

### Materials

- *The Changing Earth*
- world map
- Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 12.1, 12.2
- Evidence Collector's Chart
- scissors
- glue

- Explain the following:
  - The part of speech follows each word in an abbreviated format as follows: noun–*n.*; verb–*v.*; adjective–*adj.*; adverb–*adv.*
  - Alternate forms of the word appearing in the chapter may follow the definition. They may be a different part of speech than the original word.
- Have students reference Activity Page 12.1 while you read each word and its meaning noting that:
  - The page number (for the first occurrence of the word in the chapter) appears in bold print after the definition.
  - Words are listed in the order in which they appear in the chapter.

1. **sea level**, ***n.*** the average height of the ocean's surface (**73**)
2. **sheer**, ***adj.*** very steep, almost straight up and down (**78**)
3. **bulge**, ***v.*** to stick out or swell (**80**)

| Vocabulary Chart for Chapter 8 "Earth's Mighty Mountains" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3**<br>**Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2**<br>**General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | sea level | sheer<br>bulge |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | | |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | | sheer |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | above sea level | |

- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

Read to understand how tectonic plates interact to form different types of mountains.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

How do the movements and forces of tectonic plates build mountains?

### *Establish Small Groups*

Before reading the chapter, divide students into two groups using the following guidelines:

- **Small Group 1**: This group should include students who need extra scaffolding and support to read and comprehend the text. Use the guided reading supports to guide students through reading the text. This is an excellent time to make notes in your anecdotal records. Students may complete Activity Page 12.2 with your support during reading.
- **Small Group 2**: This group should include students who are capable of reading and comprehending text without guided support. These students may work as a small group, as partners, or independently to read the chapter, discuss it with others in Small Group 2, and then complete Activity Page 12.2. Make arrangements to check that students in Small Group 2 have answered the questions on Activity Page 12.2 correctly. You may choose to do one of the following to address this:
  - collect the pages and correct them individually
  - provide an answer key to students to check their own or a partner's work after they have completed the activity page
  - confer with students individually or as a group at a later time

Over the course of the year, students may change groups, depending on individual students' needs.

### *Read "Earth's Mighty Mountains"* **25 minutes**

The following guided reading supports are intended for use with Small Group 1. Guided reading supports in brackets are intended to guide you in facilitating discussion and should not be read verbatim to students. Guided reading supports not in brackets should be read aloud verbatim.

A [Have students read pages 72 and 73 silently.]

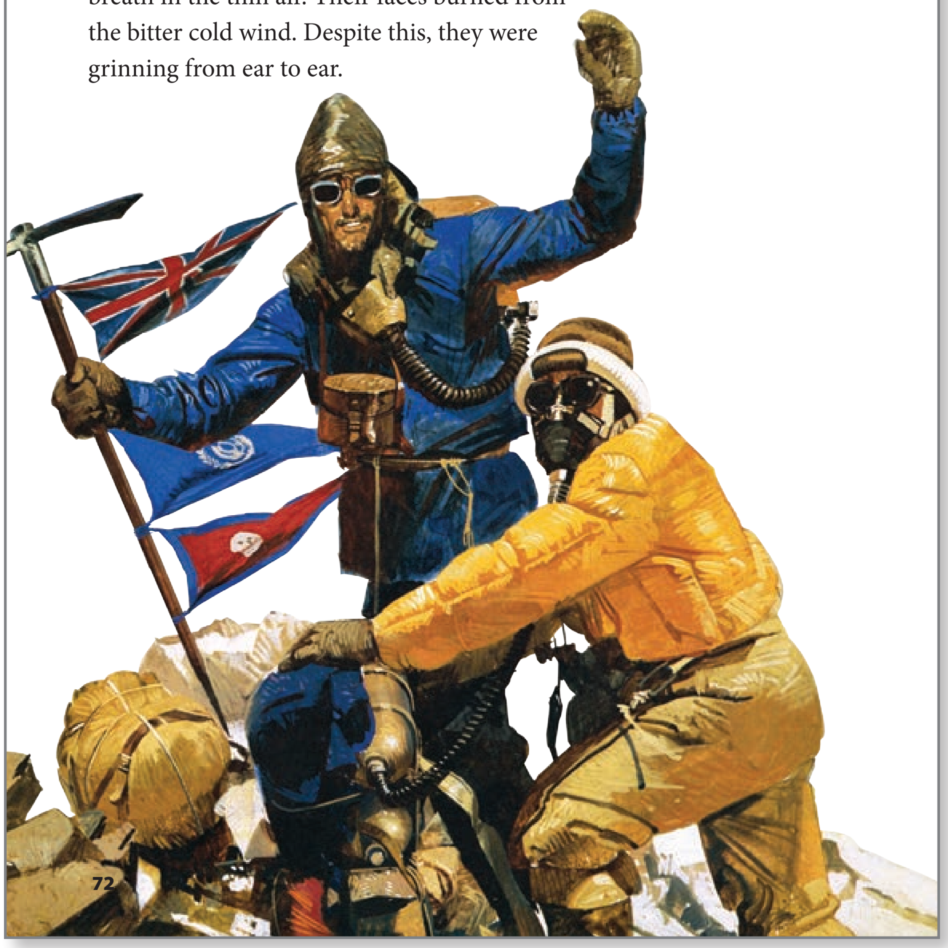
A

Chapter 8

# Earth's Mighty Mountains

**THE BIG QUESTION**
How do the movements and forces of tectonic plates build mountains?

The year was 1953. Mountain climbers Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay stood on the hard-packed snow. They gasped for breath in the thin air. Their faces burned from the bitter cold wind. Despite this, they were grinning from ear to ear.



72

Hillary and Norgay had just made it to the top of Mount Everest. They were the first people to reach Earth's highest point, 29,029 feet above **sea level**.

Mountains are some of Earth's most awe-inspiring features. In 1953, geologists were still searching for answers as to how mountains form. By the 1960s, scientific evidence pointed to plate tectonics as a driving force behind mountain building. As you read in Chapter 2, our planet's rocky exterior isn't one solid piece. It is broken up into a collection of gigantic tectonic plates.

Earth's tectonic plates move slowly, but their movements **B** have dramatically changed Earth's features over time. Plate movements have shuffled Earth's continents into different positions. They have destroyed old oceans and created new ones. They have also built mountains and mountain ranges in several different ways.

73

**B** *Inferential* What role have tectonic plates had in changing Earth's features?

» Tectonic plates have dramatically changed Earth's features over many millions of years, so tectonic plates have had a major role in changing Earth's features.

*Literal* What evidence in the text supports this role?

» *plate movements have shuffled Earth's continents into different positions; they have destroyed old oceans and created new ones; they have also built mountains and mountain ranges in several different ways*

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Tethys Sea | /teth*ees/ /see/ |
| Eurasian | /yer*ae*zshən/ |
| Urals | /yer*əlz/ |

**A** [Have students read pages 74 and 75 silently.]

**B** [Have a student locate India on a world map. Point out the location of the Himalayas.]

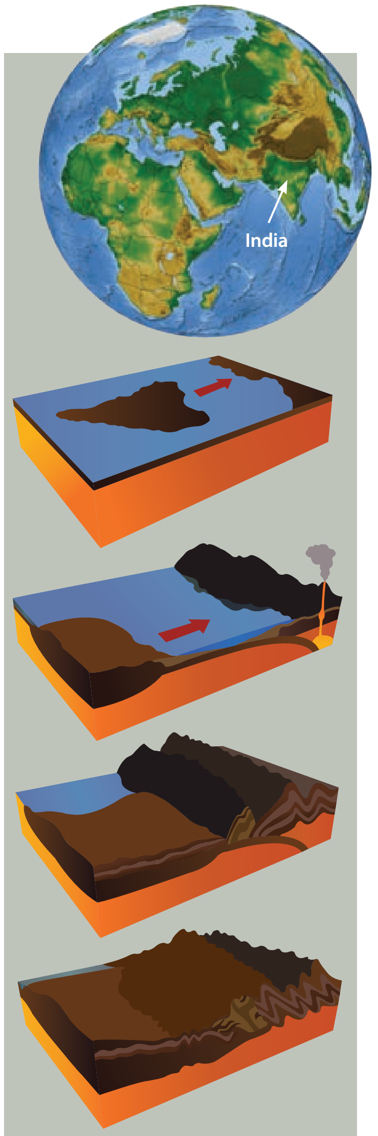
**A**

## Colliding Continents

Some of Earth's highest mountain ranges formed as sections of continental crust collided over millions of years. The collision that formed Mount Everest is a good example. Everest is part of the Himalayas, a vast, towering mountain range between India and China. The Himalayas formed when continents on two tectonic plates met head-on.

**B** Can you find India on the map? It lies along the southern edge of Asia. India wasn't always where it is today. Hundreds of millions of years ago, India was an island. It sat out in the middle of the Indo-Australian Plate. It was separated from Asia, which sits on the Eurasian Plate, by an ancient ocean called the Tethys Sea.

The Indo-Australian Plate began creeping northward about 200 million years ago. Driven by moving magma in the mantle below, it slowly collided with the Eurasian Plate. Where the two plates met, subduction took place. The heavier oceanic crust of the Indo-Australian Plate slid under the lighter continental crust of the Eurasian Plate.




The Indo-Australian Plate moved slowly northward, carrying India along with it.

74

As the Indo-Australian Plate kept moving northward, India was carried along. It inched closer and closer to Asia. The Tethys Sea began to disappear. India finally collided with Asia around 40 million years ago. India's rocky continental crust pressed directly against Asia's continental crust.

As the two landmasses continued to be pushed harder and harder together, the continental crust began to crumple. Enormous pressure created by the moving tectonic plate caused the rocky crust to heave upward. Great masses of rock gradually rose up into a series of enormous folds. The Himalayas were born! C

More and more rocks were uplifted as the Indo-Australian Plate kept moving. The Himalayas rose higher and higher. In fact, they are still rising. They are growing taller at about the same rate that your fingernails grow! D

Geologists classify the Himalayas as **fold mountains**. The name refers to the way rocks are pushed up into huge folds by moving tectonic plates. The Alps, Europe's highest mountains, are fold mountains that formed much like the Himalayas. The Appalachians in North America and the Urals in Russia also formed through collisions of continental crust.

75

**C** *Literal* According to the text, how are fold mountains formed?

» Tectonic plates collide, pushing continental crust together with so much pressure that the crust crumples. The rocky crust gets pushed upward, creating folds.

**Support** [Demonstrate movement of the tectonic plates in creating fold mountains by using your left hand to represent the Indo-Australian Plate and your right had to represent the Eurasian Plate. Act out how Mount Everest was created by slowly moving your left hand (Indo-Australian Plate), palm down, fingertips towards the fingertips of your right hand (Eurasian Plate). When your fingertips touch, slide the fingertips of your left hand (Indo-Australian Plate) under the right hand (Eurasian Plate). Continue to move hands back and forth, one over the other, gradually pushing your fingers upward to represent the rocky crust moving upward in folds.]

**D** [Have students record the following answers about fold mountains in the appropriate places in the chart on Activity Page 12.2:

» **How are they formed?** tectonic plates collide, pressure crumples the crust and the crust gets pushed upward, creating folds

» **What are some examples and where are they located?** Himalayas, between India and China in Asia]

**A** [Have students read pages 76 and 77 silently.]

**B** *Literal* What are some common features of fold mountains?

» Answers may vary, but should include: fold mountains contain quite a bit of sedimentary rock; they look like folds of rock.

**C** **Challenge** How did fossils of ocean animals end up at the top of Mount Everest?

» The movement of the tectonic plates pushed sedimentary rock that was at the bottom of the ocean upward as Mount Everest was formed. The sedimentary rock from the ocean floor includes fossils of ocean animals.

A

B

Like many other fold mountains, the Himalayas contain quite a bit of sedimentary rock. Why? In the case of the Himalayas, it started with the Tethys Sea. For millions of years, erosion washed sediments from Asia and the ancient island of India into the Tethys Sea. Countless layers of sediments, along with remains of ocean animals, were deposited on the seafloor. Over time, pressure and heat helped turn these sediments into sedimentary rock.

As plate movements slowly brought India and Asia together, some of these seafloor sedimentary rocks were pushed up. Heat and pressure from the colliding plates transformed some of them into metamorphic rocks. Other sedimentary rocks remained relatively unchanged. This is how fossils of ancient ocean animals ended up on top of Mount Everest.

## Fossils at the Top of the World

C

Trilobites and crinoids are two of the most common types of fossils on Mount Everest. Trilobites were hard-shelled ocean animals related to modern-day crabs and lobsters. Trilobites lived on the bottom of Earth's ancient oceans, including the Tethys Sea. Crinoids were animals, too, but they looked more like plants. Trilobites and most crinoids became extinct about 250 million years ago. A few types of crinoids still survive far below the ocean's surface.

76

The Andes Mountains in Peru are fold mountains.

## Folding at the Edges

Along South America's western coast, the oceanic Nazca Plate has been sliding under the South American Plate for millions of years. This has caused massive folds of rock to pile up along the edge of the continent. These folds are now the Andes Mountains, the longest mountain range on land. D E

As you read in Chapter 4, the edge of a subducting plate melts as it descends into Earth's hot mantle. The resulting magma moves up through cracks in the crust. It may erupt on the surface to form volcanoes. The edge of the Nazca Plate is melting as it slides beneath the South American Plate. Erupting magma has created many volcanoes in the Andes Mountain range. F

77

**D** *Literal* What is another example of fold mountains and where are they located?

» The Andes Mountains in South America are fold mountains.

**E** [Have a student locate South America on a world map. Point out the location of the Andes Mountains.]

**F** [Have students record the following answers about fold mountains in the appropriate places in the chart on Activity Page 12.2:

» **What are common features or characteristics?** sedimentary rock, look like folds

» **What are some examples and where are they located?** Andes Mountains in South America]

**A** [Have students read pages 78 and 79 silently.]

**B** *Literal* How are fault-block mountains formed?

» Fault-block mountains form when gigantic blocks of rock move up and down along faults.

**Support** [Demonstrate the movement of tectonic plates in creating fault-block mountains by holding hands out flat, palms down, parallel to one another, but not touching. Explain that the space between your hands represents the fault. Move one hand up and down while holding the other hand steady.]

**C** *Literal* What are some common features of fault-block mountains mentioned in the text?

» Fault-block mountains typically have one steep side and one sloping side; the steep side of fault-block mountains form high cliffs.

**D** [Locate Germany's Harz Mountains, Wyoming's Grand Tetons, and the Basin and Range Province of Utah, Nevada, and Arizona on a world map.]

**E** [Have students record the following answers about fault-block mountains in the appropriate places in the chart on Activity Page 12.2:

» **How are they formed?** gigantic blocks of rock move up and down along faults

» **What are common features or characteristics?** one steep side, with a high cliff, and one sloping side

» **What are some examples and where are they located?** Harz Mountains in Germany; Grand Tetons in Wyoming; Basin and Range Province in Utah, Nevada, and Arizona]

**F** *Evaluative* How are fold mountains and fault-block mountains similar? How are they different?

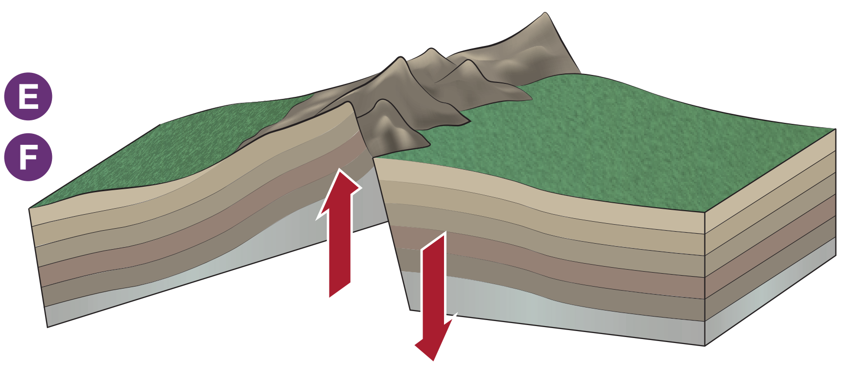
» Answers may vary, but should include: They are similar in that they both form along tectonic plate boundaries and they are both part of long mountain ranges. They are different because fold mountains form when tectonic plates collide and pressure crumples the crust, pushing the crust upward, creating folds. In contrast, fault-block mountains are formed when gigantic blocks of rock move up and down along faults, slipping past each other, leaving rocks on one side very high up and rocks on the other side lower.

## Faults and Blocks

The longest, highest mountain ranges on land are mostly fold mountains. However, moving tectonic plates build mountains in other ways. **Fault-block mountains** form when gigantic blocks of rock move up and down along faults.

At some faults, such as the San Andreas Fault in California, blocks of rock move horizontally past each other as they slip. At other faults, slips cause blocks of rock on one side of the fault to move up. These slips also cause blocks on the other side of the fault to move down. Repeated slips gradually force these rock blocks higher—and lower—to create fault-block mountain ranges.

Fault-block mountains typically have one steep side and one sloping side. The steep side forms a high, **sheer** cliff. Germany's Harz Mountains are one example of fault-block mountains. Others include the Grand Tetons in Wyoming and the Basin and Range Province of Utah, Nevada, and Arizona.



Fault-block mountains form when blocks of rock move up and down along fault lines.

78

The Grand Teton Mountains in Wyoming are fault-block mountains.

79

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| Navajo | /nov*ə*hoe/ |
| Gutzon Borglum | /gootz*un/ /bor*glum/ |

**A** [Have students read pages 80 and 81 silently.]

**B** *Literal* According to the text, how are dome mountains formed?

» Some dome mountains form when magma pushes upward into Earth's crust from the mantle. The magma cools into igneous rock before reaching the surface. The igneous rock causes the crust to bulge.

**C** *Literal* What are some common features of dome mountains?

» Dome mountains look like great humps of rock with rounded tops; they don't have sharp, jagged peaks; they usually occur as isolated mountains on otherwise flat plains.

A

## Under the Dome

Most people think of sharp, jagged peaks when they hear the word *mountains*. **Dome mountains** are quite different. Dome mountains look like great humps of rock with rounded tops. They usually occur as isolated mountains on otherwise flat plains.

C

Some dome mountains form when magma pushes upward into Earth's crust from the mantle. The magma cools into igneous rock before reaching the surface. This huge lump of igneous rock causes the crust above it to **bulge**, like a blister on skin. Utah's Navajo Mountain is a good example of a dome mountain that formed this way.

B

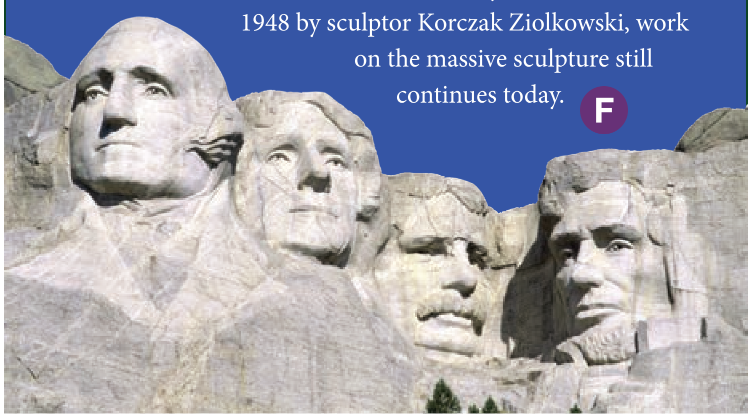
Navajo Mountain, Utah

80

## Mountains on the Prairie

D E

You can see the Black Hills of western South Dakota from a long way off. These dome mountains rise up from the surrounding grassy plains as dark, hunched shapes. They are the highest mountains east of the Rocky Mountains. Very ancient granite forms the core of the Black Hills. Millions of years of weathering and erosion have exposed this igneous rock in many places. The sculptor Gutzon Borglum made one tall granite formation in the Black Hills famous. He carved the faces of four presidents into the rock to create Mount Rushmore National Memorial. Another sculpture in the Black Hills has also gained attention—as the world's largest sculpture in progress. Crazy Horse Memorial honors North American Indian heritage and depicts the face of the Sioux leader Crazy Horse. Started in 1948 by sculptor Korczak Ziolkowski, work on the massive sculpture still continues today. F



81

**D** [Locate South Dakota on a world map and point out the location of the Black Hills. Locate Utah on a world map and point out the location of Navajo Mountain.]

**E** [Have students record the following answers about dome mountains in the appropriate places in the chart on Activity Page 12.2:

» **How are they formed?** magma pushes upward into Earth's crust, cools into igneous rock, and causes a bulge

» **What are common features or characteristics?** look like humps of rock with rounded tops, usually isolated on flat plains

» **What are some examples and where are they located?** Navajo Mountain in Utah, Black Hills in South Dakota]

**F** *Evaluative* How are dome mountains different from fold and fault-block mountains?

» Dome mountains have rounded tops whereas fold and fault-block mountains have steep, tall peaks. Dome mountains are usually isolated on otherwise flat plains, whereas fold and fault-block mountains are part of continuous mountain chains that are long and span vast areas.

## Note

Question 1 and Activity Page 1.3 relate to The Big Question of the chapter.

***Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson*** **10 minutes**

- Use the following question to discuss the chapter.

1. *Literal* How do the movements and forces of tectonic plates build mountains?
   - » The different interactions of tectonic plates build different types of mountains. Fold mountains are built when tectonic plates collide at their boundaries or if a plate with oceanic crust subducts beneath a plate with continental crust. Fault-block mountains are built when blocks of rock move up and down along faults, which are usually located at plate boundaries. Dome mountains are built when the magma beneath the plates pushes up into the crust. Volcanoes, most of which form along tectonic plate boundaries, also build mountains as they erupt.

- Have students turn to Activity Pages 1.3 and 1.4 and refer to the displayed Evidence Collector's Chart.
- Remind students that this chart is being used throughout the unit to collect evidence of changes to the earth related to specific causes of geologic change. The evidence represents what geologists examine to determine how powerful forces above and below Earth's surface work to change the earth.
- Have a student read aloud the information under "What is the cause?" in the seventh row. Explain that students must determine what evidence is in the chapter about the tectonic plates subducting and moving up against each other, and of magma pushing up into the crust. (pages 74, 75, 77, 78, 80)
- Have students refer to the remaining images on Activity Page 1.4. Engage students in a discussion about the images, talking about which image represents evidence of tectonic plates subducting or moving up against each other, or of magma pushing up into the crust. (image showing three types of mountains)
- Ensure students understand why the image showing three types of mountains is the correct image. (The image shows an example of the three types of mountains—fold mountains, which are evidence of tectonic plates subducting underneath one another; fault-block mountains, which are evidence of tectonic plates moving up and down against each other; and dome mountains, which are evidence of magma pushing up into the crust.)
- Have students cut out the correct image, glue it to the chart in the "What evidence is there?" column, and write the following information for chapter number, key words, and letter in the chart:

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | *Tectonic plates subduct underneath one another and move up and down against each other, and magma pushes up into the crust.* | *image: three types of mountains*<br><br>*key words:* fold, fault-block, and dome mountains | E |

- As needed, have students complete the chart on Activity Page 12.2. Then have students label the map on Activity Page 12.2. You may wish to display the world map found in the digital components for this unit.
- Collect Activity Page 12.2 to review at a later date.

## Word Work: *Sheer* 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, “The steep side forms a high, sheer cliff.”
2. Say the word *sheer* with me.
3. *Sheer* means very steep, almost straight up and down.
4. The sheer drop of the roller coaster as it sped down the track made me feel sick!
5. What are some other examples of things that are sheer? Be sure to use the word *sheer* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students’ responses to make complete sentences: “______ is sheer because ______.”]
6. What part of speech is the word *sheer*?
   » adjective

[Use a *Multiple-Meaning Word* activity for follow-up. Tell students the word *sheer* is a word with multiple meanings. Share the following with students.]

Meaning #1: sheer—very steep, almost straight up and down

Meaning #2: sheer—very thin, almost see-through

Meaning #3: sheer—total, to the fullest degree

I am going to read several sentences. Listen to the context or the text surrounding *sheer* in the sentence for clues as to which meaning is being used. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #1, hold up one finger. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #2, hold up two fingers. When you think a sentence is an example of Meaning #3, hold up three fingers.

1. He told us our idea was an example of sheer brilliance.
   » 3
2. The curtain was made of sheer material so that the sun could still shine through.
   » 2
3. The satin dress was covered with a lovely layer of sheer lace.
   » 2
4. I had a very difficult time hiking up the side of the sheer mountain.
   » 1
5. I couldn't make sense of the riddle; it was sheer nonsense.
   » 3
6. We were told to stay away from the edge of the island because it had sheer cliffs that were dangerous.
   » 1

## Materials

- Descriptive Paragraph Example
- Activity Page 12.3
- *The Changing Earth*

## WRITING 45 minutes

### Plan a Descriptive Paragraph

***Introduce a Descriptive Paragraph*** **15 minutes**

- Remind students they learned about descriptive writing in Unit 1, *Personal Narratives*. Remind them that they wrote a descriptive paragraph about an object.
- Tell students they will write a similar piece, but this time they will focus on a type of rock or other item in the rock cycle, such as igneous rock, lava, magma, metamorphic rock, sediments, or sedimentary rock.
- Explain that students will write one paragraph in which they personify a rock or item in the rock cycle. The assignment will showcase their knowledge of rock types and should also be fun and creative.
- Direct students' attention to the Descriptive Paragraph Example you prepared in advance.

**Descriptive Paragraph**

My name is Leah Lava, and I feel as hot as the sun! That’s probably because I’m lava shooting down the side of an active volcano. I hear a deep rumble behind me as rocks and debris spew out of the mountain, and I wonder if the plume is still reaching toward the blackening sky like an opening umbrella. As soon as I feel the air touch me, I begin to cool down. Thank goodness! It was getting awfully hot. As I cool, I harden, forming igneous rock. After all that hot activity, I like feeling wind blow across me and rain rinse my body. Sometimes I get uncomfortable in the scorching sun or the freezing cold, but I feel calm listening to the birds chirping around me and tasting the water that trickles over me.

- Remind students there are specific parts in a descriptive paragraph.
- Tell students their paragraph will have a topic sentence that states the main idea.
- Ask students to identify the topic sentence in the Descriptive Paragraph Example and explain what information it provides.
  - *My name is Leah Lava, and I feel as hot as the sun!* is the topic sentence, which tells that the paragraph will be about Leah Lava.
- Tell students that detail sentences support the main idea with sensory details.
- Ask students to identify a detail sentence in the Descriptive Paragraph Example and describe the details it provides. Students may say any of the following about sentences two through eight:
  - lava shooting down the side of an active volcano
  - a deep rumble, rocks and debris spew out of the mountain, plume reaching toward the blackening sky like an opening umbrella
  - I cool down as the air touches me
  - awfully hot
  - cool and harden to form igneous rock
  - hot activity followed by wind blowing across me and rain rinsing my body
- Tell students that a descriptive paragraph should have a concluding sentence that summarizes or restates the main idea.
- Ask students to identify the concluding sentence in the Descriptive Paragraph Example.
  - *Sometimes I get uncomfortable in the scorching sun or the freezing cold, but I feel calm listening to the birds chirping around me and tasting the water that trickles over me.* is the concluding sentence. It describes how Leah Lava feels, as in the topic sentence. It also adds more information about Leah Lava to end the paragraph.

- Remind students that they also learned about *personification* in Unit 1, *Personal Narratives*. *Personification* means giving human characteristics to nonhuman things.
- Tell students they will personify, or give human characteristics to, the rock or other item they select to write about.
- Tell students that writers use personification for different effects. In the sample paragraph, the author personifies Leah Lava to create a connection between the reader and the content. Personification also captures the reader's attention because it is unusual to read about scientific information in this format.
- Tell students that when an author uses personification, it often makes the piece funny and entertaining. When the reader is entertained, he/she will understand and retain the information better.
- Tell students that the rock or other item they choose will be the focus of their descriptive paragraph.
- Explain that writers focus when they select one specific moment, object, or idea, and use precise details to write about it. A rock or other item moving through one part of the rock cycle is the focus for this paragraph.
- Direct students' attention to the Descriptive Paragraph Example you prepared in advance.
- Tell students that several different types of literary devices are used in the Descriptive Paragraph Example. Discuss examples of personification and descriptive language in the Descriptive Paragraph Example using the following as guidelines.
  - Where does the author first use personification? (In the first sentence, the author personifies lava by giving it a human name, Leah Lava, and saying that she feels hot.)
  - Next, remind students that a simile is a comparison of two different things, usually using *like* or *as*.
  - Ask students to identify two similes in the Descriptive Paragraph Example. (*as hot as the sun*, *like an opening umbrella*)
  - Also remind students that alliteration is the repetition of words with the same letter or sound.
  - Ask students to find an example of alliteration. (*Leah Lava*)
  - Remind students that good descriptive writing makes use of strong verbs.
  - Ask students to identify which verbs the author uses to appeal to the five senses—touch, sight, taste, smell, and hearing. (*feel/feeling*, *shooting down*, *hear*, *spew*, *reaching toward*, *touch*, *cool*, *harden*, *blow*, *rinse*, *listening*, *chirping*, *tasting*, *trickles*)

– Point out that this paragraph shows Leah Lava changing into a kind of rock. What does Leah Lava become? (igneous rock)

### *Plan a Descriptive Paragraph* **30 minutes**

- Have students turn to Activity Page 12.3.
- Call on a student to read the directions for Item 1 aloud.
- Review the information in the chart as a class. Tell students that this information will help them choose a focus for their descriptive paragraph.
- Then have students complete Item 1.
- Explain that they will use the characteristics in the chart to provide details about their chosen item.
- Call on students to read aloud the remaining items on the activity page and ensure students understand what each item is about. Use the following as a guide:
  - **Item 2**: Point out that in the Descriptive Paragraph Example, the author used alliteration for the character name, Leah Lava.
  - **Item 3**: Tell students to review the information in the chart as well as information in Chapter 6, "Earth's Building Blocks," to help them think about characteristics to include.
  - **Item 4**: Again, tell students the information in the chart and in Chapter 6, "Earth's Building Blocks," will be helpful for choosing additional details to include.
  - **Item 5**: Tell students to end the paragraph memorably by using a vivid image, funny piece of dialogue, question, or statement that engages the reader.
- Tell students to complete the rest of the activity page independently.

  **Support** You may wish to allow students to work with a partner to complete the activity page.

- Circulate and check in with students, ensuring they are planning appropriately.

### *Wrap Up*

- Choose several students to share the name of their main character or one of the details they have chosen to include in their paragraph.
- Collect Activity Page 12.3 to review and monitor student progress. Be prepared to give this activity page back to students in the next lesson.

# Lesson 13

## Unit 6: Geology

## CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Explain how seafloor spreading causes mid-ocean ridges and ocean trenches
- ✓ Describe the seafloor features hydrothermal vents and seamounts

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Reading** | | |
| Read-Aloud: Chapter 9 "Earth's Undersea World" | 40 min. | *The Changing Earth*; Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 13.1, 13.2; Evidence Collector's Chart; scissors; glue; Geology Riddle |
| Word Work: *Expedition* | 5 min. | |
| **Writing** | | |
| Draft a Descriptive Paragraph | 45 min. | Descriptive Paragraph Example; Activity Page 12.3; *The Changing Earth* |
| **Take-Home Material** | | |
| Reading | * | Activity Page 13.2 |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be able to identify geological features on the seafloor, explain how they are formed, and explain how they impact things around them.

**Writing**: By the end of this lesson, students will have used a plan to draft a descriptive paragraph about a type of rock or item in the rock cycle.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

*Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

> Read to discover how geological features on the seafloor are formed and how they affect the ocean life around them.

- Display the Evidence Collector's Chart from Lesson 1.
- Prepare and cover the following Geology Riddle. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit.

This word is the most important tool,

Difficult to find, challenging to rule.

It comes in many shapes and sizes

And is often full of surprises.

It's the one thing scientists need to uncover.

It's the key to what they hope to discover.

### *Writing*

- Have feedback on Activity Page 12.3 ready to return to students.
- Display the Descriptive Paragraph Example used in Lesson 12. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit.

## READING — 45 minutes

### Read-Aloud: Chapter 9 "Earth's Undersea World" — 40 minutes

#### *Review* — 5 minutes

- Have students answer the following question about the previous chapter.
  - How do the movements and forces of tectonic plates build mountains?
    - » Answers may vary, but should include: some mountains were formed as the continental crust collided over millions of years; others formed when gigantic blocks of rock moved up and down along faults.

#### *Introduce the Chapter* — 5 minutes

- Tell students you will read aloud Chapter 9, "Earth's Undersea World." They should follow along in their Reader as you read.
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter.
- Preview the core vocabulary words before reading the chapter.
- Begin by telling students the first vocabulary word they will encounter in this chapter is *submersible*.
- Have them find the word on page 82 of the Reader. Explain that each vocabulary word is bolded the first time it appears in the chapter.

### Materials

- *The Changing Earth*
- Activity Pages 1.3, 1.4, 13.1, 13.2
- Evidence Collector's Chart
- scissors
- glue
- Geology Riddle

- Explain that the glossary contains definitions of all the vocabulary words in this Reader. Have students refer to the glossary at the back of the Reader, locate *submersible*, and then have a student read the definition.
- Explain the following:
  - The part of speech follows each word in an abbreviated format as follows: noun–*n*.; verb–*v*.; adjective–*adj*.; adverb–*adv*.
  - Alternate forms of the word appearing in the chapter may follow the definition. They may be a different part of speech than the original word.
- Have students reference Activity Page 13.1 while you read each word and its meaning noting that:
  - The page number (for the first occurrence of the word in the chapter) appears in bold print after the definition.
  - Words are listed in the order in which they appear in the chapter.

1. **submersible**, ***n.*** a small vehicle that can travel deep under water for research (**submersibles**) (**82**)
2. **rugged**, ***adj.*** having a rough, uneven surface (**83**)
3. **hydrothermal vent**, ***n.*** a deep-sea geyser that forms as seawater sinks down through cracks in the oceanic crust and then releases extremely hot, mineral-rich water back up through cracks in the crust (**hydrothermal vents**) (**85**)
4. **seamount**, ***n.*** an underwater volcano that forms wherever magma is erupting through oceanic crust (**seamounts**) (**87**)
5. **underlie**, ***v.*** to be located under something (**underlies**) (**87**)
6. **firsthand**, ***adv.*** coming directly from actually seeing or experiencing something (**87**)
7. **school**, ***n.*** a large number of ocean animals of one type swimming together (**schools**) (**88**)

| Vocabulary Chart for Chapter 9 "Earth's Undersea World" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3<br>Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2<br>General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | submersible<br>hydrothermal vent<br>seamount<br>school | rugged<br>underlie<br>firsthand |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | | |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | school | |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | pitch black | |

- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

> Read to discover how geological features on the seafloor are formed and how they affect the ocean life around them.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

> How does the movement of tectonic plates shape and change the seafloor?

### *Read "Earth's Undersea World"* — 20 minutes

Read the chapter aloud, as students follow along in their Readers. As you read, stop to read and discuss the corresponding guided reading supports. Guided reading supports in brackets are directional and not intended to be read aloud. All other phrases and sentences are intended to be read aloud verbatim. Whenever asking a guided reading support question, explicitly encourage students to refer to the text and reread prior to offering an answer.

**A** [Read pages 82 and 83 aloud.]

A

Chapter 9

# Earth's Undersea World

**THE BIG QUESTION**
How does the movement of tectonic plates shape and change the seafloor?

Imagine that you are dropping down, down, down into the middle of the Atlantic Ocean. The seawater outside the **submersible** gets darker and darker. Soon the light fades completely. Outside is a watery world as black as night. Finally, the sub's lights pick up shapes below as the ocean bottom comes into view. You see lumpy hills and looming peaks of dark volcanic rock. Welcome to the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. The ridge marks the boundary between several enormous tectonic plates. Portions of these plates form the bottom of the Atlantic Ocean.

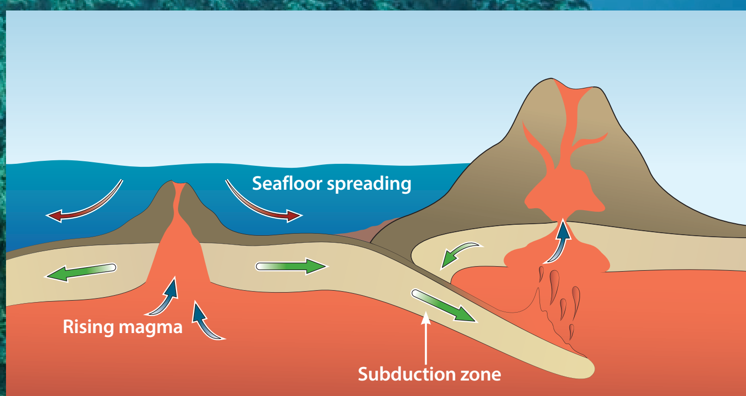
82

## Mountains and Moving Plates

In Chapter 8, you learned some of the ways Earth's slowly moving tectonic plates build mountains. Over millions of years, their movements have created many mountains and mountain ranges on land. Moving plates also build mountains underwater. In fact, there are more mountains on the seafloor than on all of Earth's continents and islands combined.

**B** The Mid-Atlantic Ridge is a long, **rugged** underwater mountain range. It runs for thousands of miles along the boundary between tectonic plates that meet in the center of the Atlantic Ocean. The plates are very slowly moving apart at this boundary. **C**

Remember Alfred Wegener? Wegener proposed the idea of continental drift in the early 1900s. At the time, though, no one knew of any force powerful enough to move continents around on Earth's surface. The theory of seafloor spreading was a big clue to solving the mystery. **D**




Seafloor spreading was one of several key pieces of geological evidence that led to the theory of plate tectonics. Think of the continents as riding on top of the plates. As the plates move, so do the continents.

83

**B** *Literal* What is the Mid-Atlantic Ridge?

» The Mid-Atlantic Ridge is a long, underwater mountain range. It runs for thousands of miles along the boundary between the tectonic plates that meet in the center of the Atlantic Ocean.

**C** *Inferential* What is seafloor spreading?

» Seafloor spreading is the process of oceanic plates moving apart very slowly. As the seafloor spreads, the continents on either side of the Atlantic are pushed farther apart.

**D** *Evaluative* Why is the concept of seafloor spreading important to geology?

» Seafloor spreading helps explain Alfred Wegener's theory of continental drift. For many years, scientists struggled to understand how a force would be strong enough to rip apart the continents. Now scientists know that as the seafloor spreads a few inches each year, the continents are pushed apart very, very slowly. This suggests that Wegener's theory of continental drift is correct and that the continents did not break apart in a sudden, cataclysmic event, but in a slow process that took thousands of years.

**A** [Read pages 83 and 84 aloud.]

**B** *Inferential* Why is the chain of mid-ocean ridges the most volcanically active mountain range in the world?

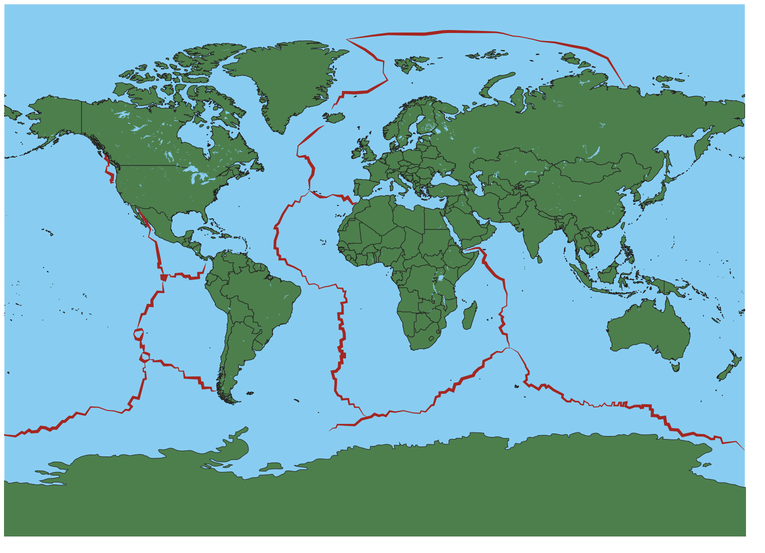
» Volcanoes form where there are cracks and weak spots in Earth's crust, which is mostly along tectonic plate boundaries. Mid-ocean ridges are found wherever tectonic plates are slowly moving apart. Because the chain of mid-ocean ridges makes up the world's longest mountain range, this also means it has the most cracks or weak spots in Earth's crust of any mountain range, making it the most volcanically active mountain range in the world.

**A**

It was the study of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge that first made scientists consider the possibility of seafloor spreading. They concluded that, as the seafloor spreads, the continents on either side of the Atlantic are pushed farther apart.

Scientists soon discovered that the Mid-Atlantic Ridge is just one of many mid-ocean ridges. These ridges are found in all the world's oceans, wherever tectonic plates are slowly moving apart. Altogether, mid-ocean ridges form a near-continuous chain of mountains that wraps around the earth like the stitching on a baseball. Spanning **B** 40,389 miles, the chain of mid-ocean ridges is by far the world's longest mountain range. It is also the most volcanically active.

The Mid-Atlantic Ridge is just a part of this gigantic underwater mountain chain. Erupting lava has built up high walls of basalt on either side of the rift. The rift itself is nearly as deep as the Grand Canyon! If you travel along the ridge, you'll soon see more than just high walls of dark rock.



Mid-ocean ridges form a near-continuous chain of underwater mountains.

84

## Hydrothermal Vents

At first glance, it looks like a fire. Black smoke is billowing up from a spot in the ridge. It's not smoke, though. It's searing hot, dark water gushing out of cracks in the rock. It's a **hydrothermal vent**.

**C** Hydrothermal vents are a bit like geysers in Yellowstone National Park. These deep-sea geysers are much, much hotter than anything on land. Hydrothermal vents form as seawater sinks down through cracks in the oceanic crust. As it nears the magma lying below the crust, the water is heated to incredibly high temperatures. It can reach an astonishing 750°F! The water is so hot that it dissolves minerals from the surrounding basalt. The minerals become part of the hot liquid, like salt does when it's stirred into a glass of water.

At a hydrothermal vent, the super-heated, mineral-rich water comes roaring back up through cracks in the crust. It shoots out of the rock with the force of water blasting out of a fire hydrant. When hot vent water meets cold seawater, the dissolved minerals in vent water become solid again. They form tiny particles. The particles make the vent water look like dark smoke.

85

**C** *Literal* What are hydrothermal vents?

» Hydrothermal vents are deep-sea geysers that release extremely hot water and minerals into the ocean.

*Literal* How are they formed?

» They form when water seeps through cracks in the oceanic crust and is heated by the hot magma below. The very high temperatures heat the water and force it back up through the cracks in an explosion of water and minerals.

**A** [Read pages 86 and 87 aloud.]

**B** *Evaluative* Why are scientists interested in hydrothermal vents?

» Scientists may discover new types of animals; they have discovered that communities of amazing and unique animals live around many hydrothermal vents but because scientists have only explored a handful of hydrothermal vents, there could be many more animals they have not yet discovered. In addition, hydrothermal vents occur where there are cracks in the oceanic crust, which helps scientists understand plate tectonics.

A

## Hunting for Hydrothermal Vents


Hydrothermal vents

How do scientists find hydrothermal vents? They hunt for them from ships at sea. Hot, mineral-rich vent water moves slowly away from hydrothermal vents. It forms a plume, or cloud, of mineral particles that drifts away from the vent, like smoke from a chimney. If the scientists locate a plume, they send down a robot vehicle. When it locates the vent, the robot sends pictures back to the scientists.

There is more to hydrothermal vents than clouds of hot, black water. Communities of amazing and unusual animals live around many of these deep-sea geysers. Red-topped giant tube worms are the largest animals near vents. Some types of giant tube worms can grow as tall as a person. The vents are also home to ghostly white crabs, football-sized clams, and pale, blind shrimp.

B

Scientists believe there are tens of thousands of hydrothermal vents along the world's mid-ocean ridges. Scientists, however, have explored only a handful of them. Finding a new one is always exciting. Scientists often discover new types of animals as well.


Giant tube worms near a hydrothermal vent in the Pacific Ocean

86

## Seamounts and Subduction Zones

**Seamounts** are another type of underwater mountain. Seamounts are underwater volcanoes that come in many shapes and sizes. Some are just a few hundred feet high. Others tower thousands of feet above the seafloor, although their tops are still far beneath the ocean's surface. If a seamount grows high enough to rise above the ocean's surface, it becomes an island.

Seamounts can form wherever magma is erupting through the oceanic crust. Many seamounts form alongside mid-ocean ridges or along subduction zones.

Finally, seamounts can also form over hotspots far from plate boundaries. The islands that make up the Hawaiian Island chain began as seamounts. As you read in Chapter 4, each island formed over a hotspot that **underlies** the center of the Pacific Plate. As a result of repeated volcanic eruptions, each island began as a small seamount that grew over time. Eventually, its top broke the water's surface, making it an island.


Seamount that grew into an island

Scientists estimate that there are at least 100,000 seamounts over 3,000 feet tall in the world's oceans. Since most seamounts are far below the ocean's surface, studying them is a challenge. Scientists have explored a few **firsthand**, traveling down in submersibles. More often, they send robot vehicles down to do the investigating. C

87

**C** *Literal* Why are seamounts challenging for scientists to study?

» Most seamounts are far below the ocean's surface and the only way to explore them is by submersibles or by sending robot vehicles down to do the investigating.

**Support** What is a seamount?

» A seamount is an underwater volcano that forms wherever magma is erupting through the oceanic crust.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
| --- | --- |
| anemones | /ə*nem*o*nees/ |
| Jacques Piccard | /jok/ /pee*kar/ |
| *Trieste* | /treest/ |

**A** [Read pages 88 and 89 aloud.]

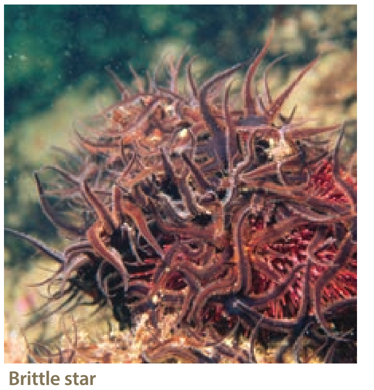
**B** *Literal* What is an ocean trench?

» An ocean trench is a narrow, extremely deep valley where the seafloor dips down as one plate slides under another along a subduction zone.

**A**

No two seamounts are exactly alike. Many are teeming with life, even those that are very deep. Water flowing around these deep-sea volcanoes brings up nutrients from the ocean bottom. Nutrients fuel the growth of tiny, single-celled organisms in the water. These, in turn, become food for larger organisms, including animals that live on and around seamounts. Seamounts are often home to deep-sea corals, sponges, brittle stars, crabs, and anemones. Great **schools** of fish live around seamounts, too.

Deep-sea coral



Brittle star

## Into the Trenches

Seamounts aren't the only undersea features that form along subduction zones. Where one plate slides under another, the seafloor dips down to create narrow, extremely deep valleys. These ocean trenches are the deepest places on the planet. **B**

The Mariana Trench in the Pacific Ocean is the deepest ocean trench. It lies just off the Mariana Islands, east of the Philippines. The Mariana Trench is hundreds of miles long, but just 43 miles wide. It is like a deep slash in the ocean bottom. The trench's deepest known point is an area called the Challenger Deep. It is 36,070 feet beneath the ocean's surface, which is almost 7 miles down. By comparison, the average depth of the ocean is about 14,000 feet.

88

What is it like in the ocean's deepest spot? It is pitch black. The temperature of the water is only a few degrees above freezing. The water pressure is very high—equivalent to having three big SUVs pressing down on every inch of your body!

**C** Only three people have traveled to the bottom of the Mariana Trench. (More people have landed on the moon!) Several robot vehicles have also made the trip. These visits have provided only brief glimpses of this remote and extreme environment.

## The Lucky Three

As of 2014, people have traveled to the bottom of the Mariana Trench only twice. The first expedition took place in 1960. The explorers were U.S. Navy Lieutenant Don Walsh and Swiss scientist Jacques Piccard. Their underwater vehicle was *Trieste*. It took *Trieste* almost five hours to descend from the ocean's surface to the bottom of Challenger Deep. Piccard and Walsh peered out a small window onto a part of the planet that humans had not seen before.


Piccard and Walsh in *Trieste*

In 2012, Canadian filmmaker and ocean explorer James Cameron also made the trip. His vessel, *Deepsea Challenger*, was a slim, one-person, underwater vehicle. Cameron's descent took just over two and a half hours. He did something Walsh and Piccard weren't able to do. He filmed the descent and the view he had of the ocean floor at 35,756 feet.

89

**C** *Inferential* Why have only three people traveled to the bottom of the Mariana Trench?

» It is the deepest ocean trench, which means it takes a very long time to reach the bottom. In addition, it is pitch black, the water temperature is around freezing, and the water pressure is very high, all of which create a challenging environment to send submersibles or robot vehicles into.

## Note

Question 1 and Activity Page 1.3 relate to The Big Question of the chapter.

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* — 10 minutes

- Use the following question to discuss the chapter.

1. *Inferential* How does the movement of tectonic plates shape and change the seafloor?
    » The seafloor is covered with interesting geological features, most of which occur near the edges of tectonic plates. Tectonic plates on the seafloor are slowly spreading apart. This confirms Wegener's theory of continental drift. When plates collide or slip beneath each other under water, mountains and volcanoes are formed. As volcanoes erupt over and over again, lava builds up and hardens into mountains called seamounts. If these seamounts get tall enough, they emerge from the ocean's surface to create islands. Sometimes when plates slip under each other, deep trenches, or valleys, are formed. Studying plate tectonics helps us understand why the seafloor is not just a smooth surface, but one filled with valleys, ridges, and volcanoes.

- Have students turn to Activity Pages 1.3 and 1.4 and refer to the displayed Evidence Collector's Chart.
- Remind students that they have collected evidence of changes to the earth related to specific causes of geologic change throughout the unit. The evidence represents what geologists examine to determine how powerful forces above and below the earth's surface work to change the earth.
- Have a student read aloud the information under "What is the cause?" in the last row. Explain that students must determine what evidence is in the chapter about seafloor spreading and underwater subduction zones. (pages 83, 84, 88)
- Have students refer to the one remaining image on Activity Page 1.4. Engage students in a discussion about why the image showing a diagram of seafloor spreading and underwater subduction zones represents evidence of the cause statement. (The image shows a diagram that illustrates how seafloor spreading and subduction impact Earth's surface under water.)
- Have students cut out the image, glue it to the chart in the "What evidence is there?" column, and write the following information for chapter number, key words, and letter in the chart:

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9 | *Tectonic plates interact to create seafloor spreading and underwater subduction zones.* | *image:* *diagram showing seafloor spreading and underwater subduction zones*<br><br>*key words:* deep ocean trenches, mid-ocean ridges, hydrothermal vents | V |

- Note for students that they have now collected all the evidence from *The Changing Earth* in their chart. Also note they have collected eight letters along with the evidence.
- Remind students you told them at the beginning of the unit they would use the letters they collected to create a word to answer a geology riddle.
- Uncover the geology riddle you prepared in advance. Have a student read the riddle aloud. If time permits, have students write the riddle on Activity Page 1.3 in the appropriate place.
- Have students briefly work with a partner to unscramble the collected letters to answer the riddle. Students should write the answer on Activity Page 1.3 in the appropriate place.
- When students have solved the riddle, call on one student to share and explain the answer. (EVIDENCE; Evidence helps geologists understand how and why the earth changes. Evidence comes in many forms, such as rock formations, volcanoes, faults, and seafloor spreading.)
- Tell students they will take home Activity Page 13.2 to read and complete for homework.

## Word Work: *Expedition* — 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "The first expedition took place in 1960."
2. Say the word *expedition* with me.
3. *Expedition* means a journey taken to explore a place no one has been before.
4. Only three people have ever made an expedition to the Mariana Trench.
5. What are some other examples of an *expedition*? Be sure to use the word *expedition* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "______ went on an expedition to discover ______." or "I want to go on an expedition to learn about ______.]
6. What part of speech is the word *expedition*?
   » noun

[Use a *Synonyms* activity for follow-up.] What does the word *expedition* mean? What are some words that are synonyms, or words that have a similar meaning of *expedition*? [Prompt students to provide words like *journey*, *trip*, and *voyage*.] With a partner, create a sentence for each of the synonyms of *expedition* he or she provides.

## Materials

- Descriptive Paragraph Example
- Activity Page 12.3
- *The Changing Earth*

# WRITING 45 minutes

## Draft a Descriptive Paragraph

### *Review Descriptive Paragraph Planning* 10 minutes

- Direct students' attention to the Descriptive Paragraph Example you prepared in advance. Remind them of the features of this paragraph and the use of personification.
  - Features: topic sentence, detail sentences, concluding sentence, focus, literary devices

**Descriptive Paragraph Example**

My name is Leah Lava, and I feel as hot as the sun! That's probably because I'm lava shooting down the side of an active volcano. I hear a deep rumble behind me as rocks and debris spew out of the mountain, and I wonder if the plume is still reaching toward the blackening sky like an opening umbrella. As soon as I feel the air touch me, I begin to cool down. Thank goodness! It was getting awfully hot. As I cool, I harden, forming igneous rock. After all that hot activity, I like feeling wind blow across me and rain rinse my body. Sometimes I get uncomfortable in the scorching sun or the freezing cold, but I feel calm listening to the birds chirping around me and tasting the water that trickles over me.

- Pass out students' copies of Activity Page 12.3 that you reviewed from the previous lesson.
- Remind students they planned for writing their own descriptive paragraph using Activity Page 12.3. Briefly discuss the activity page, calling on students to share information about what they are planning to write. Remind students that everyone will have different item names and descriptive details.

### *Draft a Descriptive Paragraph* 35 minutes

- Tell students they will now draft their descriptive paragraph using planning information from Activity Page 12.3. Students may also reference Chapter 6, "Earth's Building Blocks," in *The Changing Earth* if needed.
- Review the parts of a descriptive paragraph with students as follows:
  - Remind them that a topic sentence states the main idea.
  - Remind them that detail sentences support the main idea with sensory details.
  - Remind them that a concluding sentence summarizes or restates the main idea.
- Explain that students should write as many clear, well-planned sentences as possible for the descriptive paragraph.
- Remind students to use literary devices like personification, alliteration, and simile.

- Tell students that personification is descriptive language that assigns human characteristics to nonhuman things.
- Tell students that alliteration is the use of words with the same letter or sound.
- Tell students that a simile is a comparison of two different things, usually using *like* or *as*.
- Tell students to end with something memorable—a vivid image, a funny piece of dialogue, a question, or a statement that engages the audience.
- Remind students to use details to create a clear picture for readers.
- Circulate and check in with students ensuring they are writing at least six to ten sentences.

  **Challenge** Encourage students to write more than one paragraph if they have time. They might include details about the formation of their item and any changes that might occur. For example, Leah Lava changed from lava to igneous rock. Ask students what the next stage in the rock cycle will be. Suggest they write about how their item might change in the next stage.

### *Wrap Up*

- As time permits, ask students to share their favorite sentence in their paragraph.
- Model responses by commenting on the first two student examples. Feedback should show students how to offer constructive criticism by being specific. "I like that you chose the word ______. I like how the name uses alliteration. I like the image your sentence created in my mind because it reminds me of ______."
- Collect student narratives to review and monitor student progress. Written feedback may include comments such as:
  - "I like the creative name you chose. Nice use of alliteration."
  - "You've written a clear beginning, middle, and end. For future writing, I would like to see you consider using literary devices like personification and alliteration."

## TAKE-HOME MATERIAL

### Reading

- Have students take home Activity Page 13.2 to read and complete for homework.

### Materials

- Activity Page 13.2

# Lesson 14

## Unit 6: Geology

## CORE CONTENT OBJECTIVES

Students will:

- ✓ Explain how seafloor spreading causes mid-ocean ridges and ocean trenches
- ✓ Describe the seafloor features hydrothermal vents and seamounts

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Reading** | | |
| Partner: Chapter 9 "Earth's Undersea World" | 40 min. | Answer Key for Activity Page 13.2; Activity Pages 13.2, 14.1; *The Changing Earth* |
| Word Work: *Firsthand* | 5 min. | |
| **Grammar** | | |
| Practice Sequencing Multiple Adjectives | 15 min. | Adjectives Chart; Activity Page 14.2 |
| **Morphology** | | |
| Practice Suffixes *–ly* and *–y* and Roots *graph* and *rupt* | 15 min. | Activity Page 14.3 |
| **Spelling** | | |
| Practice Spelling Words | 15 min. | Activity Pages 14.4, SR.1 |

### Primary Focus of Lessons

**Reading**: By the end of this lesson, students will be better able to explain unique characteristics of geological features on the seafloor and the impact of those characteristics.

**Grammar**: By the end of this lesson, students will have had additional practice identifying and using multiple adjectives in the correct sequence.

**Morphology**: By the end of this lesson, students will have had additional practice using words with the suffixes *–ly* and *–y* and words with the roots *graph* and *rupt* in sentences.

**Spelling**: By the end of this lesson, students will have gained additional practice spelling targeted words.

## ADVANCE PREPARATION

### *Reading*

- Write the purpose for reading on the board/chart paper. Alternatively, you may access a digital version of this and The Big Question in the digital components for this unit.

| |
|---|
| Read to better understand unique characteristics of geological features on the seafloor. |

### *Grammar*

- Display the Adjectives Chart from Lesson 11. Alternatively, you may access a digital version in the digital components for this unit.

### *Morphology*

- Determine student pairs for completing Activity Page 14.3.

### *Spelling*

- Determine student pairs for completing Activity Page 14.4.

# READING 45 minutes

## Partner: Chapter 9 "Earth's Undersea World" 40 minutes

### *Review* 5 minutes

- Using the Answer Key at the back of this Teacher Guide, review student responses to Activity Page 13.2, which was assigned for homework in the previous reading lesson.

### *Review the Chapter* 5 minutes

- Tell students they will reread Chapter 9, "Earth's Undersea World."
- Have students turn to the table of contents, locate the chapter, and then turn to the first page of the chapter. Have a student read the title aloud.
- You may wish to review the following vocabulary words before you reread the chapter:

### Materials

- Answer Key for Activity Page 13.2
- Activity Pages 13.2, 14.1
- *The Changing Earth*

1. **submersible**, ***n.*** a small vehicle that can travel deep underwater for research (**submersibles**) (**82**)
2. **rugged**, ***adj.*** having a rough, uneven surface (**83**)
3. **hydrothermal vent**, ***n.*** a deep-sea geyser that forms as seawater sinks down through cracks in the oceanic crust and then releases extremely hot, mineral-rich water back up through cracks in the crust (**hydrothermal vents**) (**85**)
4. **seamount**, ***n.*** an underwater volcano that forms wherever magma is erupting through oceanic crust (**seamounts**) (**87**)
5. **underlie**, ***v.*** to be located under something (**underlies**) (**87**)
6. **firsthand**, ***adv.*** coming directly from actually seeing or experiencing something (**87**)
7. **school**, ***n.*** a large number of ocean animals of one type swimming together (**schools**) (**88**)

- Remind students they can look up a word in the glossary if they forget its meaning.
- Read the purpose for reading from the board/chart paper:

Read to better understand unique characteristics of geological features on the seafloor.

- Have one student read The Big Question at the beginning of the chapter. Ensure students understand the meaning of The Big Question before reading the chapter.

How does the movement of tectonic plates shape and change the seafloor?

### *Read "Earth's Undersea World"* 20 minutes

Pair students to read and discuss the chapter. You may wish to use any or all of the following pairings: strong readers with readers who need more support; readers of similar skill levels; or English language learners with native speakers. Student pairings should change throughout the year. As students read, circulate among the class, monitoring students' focus and progress.

- Using established procedures, have students read the chapter in pairs. Students may ask their partner for help sounding out or defining words, as necessary. Have students make a note of vocabulary, phrases, or concepts they do not understand, noting the page number, so they may seek clarification.
- Have students complete Activity Page 14.1 with their partners while they read.
- Review the following pronunciations with students.

| Word(s) | CK Code |
|---|---|
| anemones | /ə*nem*o*nees/ |
| Jacques Piccard | /jok/ /pee*kar/ |
| *Trieste* | /treest/ |

### *Discuss the Chapter and Wrap Up the Lesson* — 10 minutes

- Review the correct answers to Activity Page 14.1 with the whole class. You may wish to select different students to read each question and share their responses, including the page numbers where the answer was located.

1. *Inferential* Seafloor spreading explains which of the following?
   » E. A and B only
2. *Literal* Which phrase describes the Mid-Atlantic Ridge?
   » B. a long, rugged underwater mountain range
3. *Literal* **Part A** Fill in the following chart to indicate which seafloor feature the animals live around, hydrothermal vents or seamounts.

| Animals | Where they live |
|---|---|
| white crabs | hydrothermal vents |
| brittle stars | seamounts |
| schools of fish | seamounts |
| pale, blind shrimp | hydrothermal vents |
| sponges | seamounts |
| deep-sea corals | seamounts |
| giant tube worms | hydrothermal vents |
| anemones | seamounts |
| football-sized clams | hydrothermal vents |

*Inferential* **Part B** Why might these animals live near these particular seafloor features?
» Answers may vary, but could include: animals may live near these features because of the tiny, single-celled organisms that grow there as a result of the nutrients brought up by seamounts.

4. *Inferential* Match each cause to its effect by writing the correct letter for the effect next to the correct cause.

   Seamount emerges from the ocean's surface
   » C. islands are formed

   One tectonic plate slides under another
   » D. a trench is formed

   Tectonic plates move apart very slowly
   » B. seafloor spreading

   Seafloor spreading
   » A. continental drift

   Water seeps into the earth's crust and is heated by magma
   » F. hydrothermal vents are formed

   Tectonic plates collide
   » E. mountains are formed

5. *Evaluative* On page 84, the author uses a simile when describing the mountain chain formed by mid-ocean ridges, saying it is *like stitching on a baseball*. Explain what this simile means.
   » Answers may vary, but should include that stitching on a baseball goes all around the baseball with no starting point or stopping point, meaning it is continuous. By comparing the mountain chain formed by mid-ocean ridges to stitching on a baseball, the author is saying that the mountain chain goes all over the earth without a starting point or stopping point, meaning it is continuous.

## Word Work: *Firsthand* — 5 minutes

1. In the chapter you read, "Scientists have explored a few (seamounts) firsthand, traveling down in submersibles."
2. Say the word *firsthand* with me.
3. *Firsthand* means coming directly from actually seeing or experiencing something.
4. Only a few astronauts have had the opportunity to explore the surface of the moon firsthand.
5. What are some other examples of *firsthand*? Be sure to use the word *firsthand* in your response. [Ask two or three students to use the target word in a sentence. If necessary, guide and/or rephrase students' responses to make complete sentences: "Something I have experienced *firsthand* is ______."]
6. What part of speech is the word *firsthand*?
   » adverb

[Use a *Making Choices* activity for follow-up.] I am going to describe several situations. If the situation I describe is something that is actually seen or experienced at that moment, say, "firsthand." If the situation I describe is not actually seen or experienced at that moment, say, "not firsthand."

1. Discovering a new ocean animal while traveling underwater in a submersible
   » firsthand
2. Looking at a photo of a newly discovered ocean animal
   » not firsthand
3. Reading about a car accident in the newspaper
   » not firsthand
4. Seeing a car hit another car at a traffic light
   » firsthand
5. Traveling on a plane to visit another country
   » firsthand
6. Watching a movie about another country
   » not firsthand

## GRAMMAR 15 minutes

### Practice Sequencing Multiple Adjectives

- Remind students that articles are special kinds of adjectives that indicate whether a specific noun is being described (*the* mountain*, the* island) or whether a general noun is being described (*a* mountain, *an* island). Articles are *a*, *an*, and *the*.
- Review the Adjectives Chart from Lesson 11. Remind students of the conventional order to follow when more than one adjective is used.
- Have students turn to Activity Page 14.2 and review the completed example. Tell students to complete the rest of the page independently.
- Once students have completed the activity page, review the correct answers by calling on different students to share their answers, as time permits.

### Materials

- Adjectives Chart
- Activity Page 14.2

## MORPHOLOGY 15 minutes

### Practice Suffixes *–ly* and *–y* and Roots *graph* and *rupt*

- Have students turn to Activity Page 14.3. Select a student to read the directions aloud.
- Complete the first sentence together as a whole group. Ask students for ideas and then write an example sentence on the board/chart paper.
- Tell students to work in pairs to complete the remainder of the activity page.
- As time allows, ask different partner pairs to share their sentences aloud.
- If students do not complete the activity page in class, have them complete it for homework.
- Collect completed Activity Page 14.3 to review and grade at a later time.

**Materials**

- Activity Page 14.3

## SPELLING 15 minutes

### Practice Spelling Words

- Tell students they will practice writing the spelling words. Remind them to use the Individual Code Chart on Activity Page SR.1 as they practice.
- Have students turn to Activity Page 14.4. Explain that they will work with a partner to create sentences for each of these words.
- If time allows, have students share some of the sentences they wrote aloud.
- Collect completed Activity Page 14.4 to review and grade at a later time.
- Remind students that they will complete their spelling assessment during the next lesson.

**Materials**

- Activity Pages 14.4, SR.1

# Lesson 15

## Unit 6: Geology

| LESSON AT A GLANCE | TIME | MATERIALS |
|---|---|---|
| **Spelling** | | |
| Assessment | 15 min. | Activity Page 15.1 |
| **Unit Assessment** | | |
| Unit Assessment | 75 min. | Activity Page 15.2 |
| Optional Fluency Assessment | | Student Copy of Fluency Assessment text; Recording Copy of Fluency Assessment text, one for each student; Fluency Scoring Sheet, one for each student |

### ADVANCE PREPARATION

*Spelling*

- Erase or cover the list of spelling words prior to the assessment.

*Unit Assessment*

- Determine how many students will be assessed for fluency, and make that number of copies of the Recording Copy of "Our Home, Earth" and the Fluency Scoring Sheet.

*Fluency (optional)*

- If students were assigned a selection from the *Fluency Supplement*, determine which students will read the selection aloud and when. See the Unit 1 Teacher Guide introduction for more information on using the *Fluency Supplement*.

## Materials

- Activity Page 15.1

## Note

This is a good opportunity to use the Tens scoring system to gather formative assessment data. Information about the Tens scoring system appears in the Teacher Resources section of the Unit 1 Teacher Guide.

# SPELLING 15 minutes

## Assessment

- Have students turn to Activity Page 15.1 for the spelling assessment.
- Using the following list, read the words one at a time in the following manner: Say the word, use it in a sentence, and then repeat the word.
- Tell students that at the end, you will review the list once more.
- Remind students to pronounce and spell each word syllable by syllable.

| Spelling Word | Example Sentence |
|---|---|
| 1. molten | Molten rock moves slowly beneath Earth's surface. |
| 2. fault | The San Andreas Fault is one of the most famous faults in the U.S. |
| 3. geyser | When a geyser erupts, it releases a fountain of steam and hot water. |
| 4. epicenter | Surface waves are first detectable at an earthquake's epicenter. |
| 5. seismograph | The first known seismograph was invented by a Chinese scientist. |
| 6. glacier | At Glacier National Park in Montana, you can see the impact glaciers have in shaping the earth. |
| 7. tsunami | A tsunami can do significant damage when it crashes on land. |
| 8. erosion | Over a very long period of time, erosion can reshape Earth's surface. |
| 9. conclusion | Inge Lehmann came to the conclusion that Earth's core has two parts. |
| 10. tectonic | Earth's tectonic plates have been slowly moving and interacting for billions of years. |

- After reading all of the words, review the list slowly, reading each word once more.
- Have students write the following sentence as dictated:

> Scientists use records from a seismograph to determine the location of an earthquake's epicenter.

- Repeat the sentence slowly several times, reminding students to check their work for appropriate capitalization and punctuation.
- Collect all spelling assessments to grade later. Use of the template provided at the end of this lesson is highly recommended to identify and analyze students' errors.

## UNIT ASSESSMENT 75 minutes

### Unit Assessment

- Make sure each student has a copy of Activity Page 15.2. You may have collected this activity page from students at the beginning of the unit.
- Tell students they will read two selections, answer questions about each, and respond to a writing prompt. In the next sections, they will answer grammar and morphology questions evaluating the skills they have practiced in this unit.
- Encourage students to do their best.
- Once students have finished the assessment, encourage them to review their papers quietly, rereading and checking their answers carefully.
- Circulate around the room as students complete the assessment to ensure everyone is working individually. Assist students as needed, but do not provide them with answers.

### Reading Comprehension

- The reading comprehension section of the Unit Assessment contains two selections and accompanying questions. The first selection is an informational text that describes Japan's prevalence of earthquakes based on its geographic position near the intersection of several tectonic plates. The second selection is a literary text with two short earthquake myths from different Native American tribes.
- These texts were created using guidance from the Common Core State Standards (CCSS) and recommendations from Student Achievement Partners (AchievetheCore.org). These texts are considered worthy of students' time to read and meet the expectations for text complexity at Grade 4. The texts feature core content and domain vocabulary from the *Geology* unit that students can draw on in service of comprehending the text.
- The questions pertaining to these texts are aligned to the CCSS and are worthy of students' time to answer. Questions have been designed so they do not focus on minor points in the text, but rather, they require deep analysis. Thus, each item might address multiple standards. In general, the selected-response items address Reading standards and the constructed-response item addresses Writing standards. To prepare students for CCSS-aligned assessments, such as those developed by the Partnership for Assessment of Readiness for College and Careers (PARCC) and Smarter Balanced, some items replicate how technology may be incorporated in those assessments, using a paper and pencil format.

### Optional Fluency Assessment

- You may wish to assess students' fluency in reading, using the selection "Our Home, Earth." Assessing fluency requires that you work one-on-one with individual students to administer the assessment. Because this assessment requires you to work with one student at a time, you may wish to administer it either while other

#### Materials

- Activity Page 15.2

#### Note

This is a good opportunity to use the Tens scoring system to gather formative assessment data. Information about the Tens scoring system appears in the Teacher Resources section of the Unit 1 Teacher Guide.

#### Materials

- Student Copy of Fluency Assessment text
- Recording Copy of Fluency Assessment text, one for each student
- Fluency Scoring Sheet, one for each student

students complete the unit assessment or at a different time while students read enrichment selections and complete accompanying activity pages. Alternatively, you may have other time during the school day when you can administer this assessment as well.

### *Administration Instructions*

- Turn to the student copy of "Our Home, Earth" that follows the Unit Assessment Analysis section. This is the text students will read aloud. Turn to this copy each time you administer this assessment.
- Using one Recording Copy of "Our Home, Earth" for each student, create a running record as you listen to each student read orally.
- Call the student you will assess to come sit near you.
- Explain that you are going to ask him or her to read a selection aloud and you are going to take some notes as he or she reads. Also, explain that he or she should not rush but rather read at his or her regular pace.
- Read the title of the selection aloud for the student, as the title is not part of the assessment.
- Begin timing when the student reads the first word of the selection. As the student reads aloud, make a running record on the Recording Copy using the following guidelines:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Words read correctly** | No mark is required. |
| **Omissions** | Draw a long dash above the word omitted. |
| **Insertions** | Write a caret (^) at the point where the insertion was made. If you have time, write down the word that was inserted. |
| **Words read incorrectly** | Write an "X" above the word. |
| **Substitutions** | Write the substitution above the word. |
| **Self-corrected errors** | Replace original error mark with an "SC." |
| **Teacher-supplied words** | Write a "T" above the word (counts as an error). |

- When one minute has elapsed, draw a vertical line on the Recording Copy to mark where the student was in the text at that point. Allow the student to finish reading the selection aloud.

- Assess the student's comprehension of the selection by asking him or her to respond orally to the following questions:

1. *Literal* What three words are important when thinking about geology?
   » heat, pressure, and time
2. *Inferential* Why do people have to think about time in terms of years instead of minutes, hours, and days when thinking about geology?
   » Heat and pressure take a long time to change the earth in ways that geologists can find evidence of. If you think about time in minutes, hours, and days, it is unlikely that evidence of change will be detected because geological changes happen so very slowly.
3. *Inferential* Which rock layers in the Grand Canyon are half as old as the earth is believed to be?
   » the rock layers at the very bottom of the canyon
4. *Inferential* Why is the Grand Canyon such an amazing thing for geologists to study?
   » There are many rock layers in the Grand Canyon and each layer provides clues about the earth's formation and history, giving geologists a lot to study and a lot of information to help shape people's understanding of how the earth formed and how it changes.

- Repeat this process for additional students as needed. Scoring can be done later, provided you have kept running records and marked the last word students read after one minute elapsed.

# SPELLING ASSESSMENT ANALYSIS

**Spelling Analysis Chart**

| Student | 1. molten | 2. fault | 3. geyser | 4. epicenter | 5. seismograph | 6. glacier | 7. tsunami | 8. erosion | 9. conclusion | 10. tectonic |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |

- It may be helpful to refer back to the Pronunciation/Syllabication Chart from Lesson 11.

| Word | CK Code | Syllable Type |
|---|---|---|
| fault | /fawlt/ | digraph |
| tsunami | /soo*no*mee/ | open*open*open |
| geyser | /gie*zer/ | digraph*r-controlled |
| erosion | /i*roe*zshən/ | open*open*ə |
| glacier | /glae*sher/ | open*r-controlled |
| tectonic | /tek*ton*ik/ | closed*closed*closed |
| molten | /moel*ten/ | closed*closed |
| seismograph | /siez*mə*graf/ | digraph*ə*closed |
| epicenter | /ep*i*sen*ter/ | closed*open*closed*r-controlled |
| conclusion | /kun*kloo*zshən/ | closed*open*ə |

- Students might make the following errors:
  - *fault*: using ‘aw’ instead of ‘au’ for /aw/
  - *tsunami*: using ‘s’ instead of ‘ts’ for /s/; using ‘oo’ instead of ‘u’ for /oo/; using ‘y’ or ‘e’ instead of ‘i’ for /ee/
  - *geyser*: using ‘ie’ instead of ‘ey’ for /ie/
  - *erosion*: using ‘zhun’ instead of ‘sion’ for /zshən/
  - *glacier*: using ‘sh’ instead of ‘c’ for /sh/; using ‘er’ instead of ‘ier’ for /er/
  - *tectonic*: using ‘k’ instead of ‘c’ for /k/
  - *seismograph*: using ‘ie’ instead of ‘ei’ for /ie/; using ‘f’ instead of ‘ph’ for /graf/
  - *epicenter*: using ‘e’ instead of ‘i’ for /i/; using ‘s’ instead of ‘c’ for /s/
  - *conclusion*: using ‘oo’ instead of ‘u’ for /oo/; using ‘zhun’ instead of ‘sion’ for /zshən/
- Although any of the above student-error scenarios may occur, misspellings may be due to many other factors. You may find it helpful to use the analysis chart to record any student errors. For example:
  - Is the student consistently making errors on specific vowels? Which ones?
  - Is the student consistently making errors at the ends of the words?
  - Is the student consistently making errors in multisyllable words, but not single-syllable words?
- Also, examine the dictated sentence for errors in capitalization and punctuation.

# UNIT ASSESSMENT ANALYSIS

## Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis of the Text

The texts used in the reading comprehension assessment, "Earth's Forces at Work in Japan" (informational text) and "Earthquake Myths" (literary text), have been profiled for text complexity using the quantitative measures described in the Common Core State Standards for English Language Arts, Supplement to Appendix A, "New Research on Text Complexity," (CoreStandards.org/resources). Both selections fall within the Common Core 4th–5th Grade Band.

### *Reading Comprehension Item Annotations and Correct Answer and Distractor Rationales*

*Note: To receive a point for a two-part question, students must correctly answer both parts of the question.

| Item | Correct Answer(s) | Standards |
|---|---|---|
| **1** *Literal* | D | RI.4.1, RI.4.2 |
| ***2 Part A** *Inferential* | 2 – 1923 earthquake<br>1 – 2011 Great Tohoku earthquake<br>3 – 1995 earthquake | RI.4.1, RI.4.5 |
| ***2 Part B** *Inferential* | It was one of the strongest earthquakes known to hit Japan in recorded history, causing violent shaking and much destruction and because it triggered an enormous tsunami that caused the worst damage, with towering waves crashing ashore and surging far inland. | RI.4.1, RI.4.3, W.4.2d, W.4.4 |
| **3** *Inferential* | C | RI.4.1, RI.4.4, L.4.4a |
| **4** *Literal* | B | RI.4.1, RI.4.3, RI.4.4 |
| **5** *Evaluative* | Earthquakes almost always strike suddenly and happen very quickly. This makes it very difficult to warn people about an earthquake far in advance. Even though Sendai was close to the epicenter, the earthquake early warning system was only able to give people 15 seconds of warning that an earthquake was coming because earthquakes strike so suddenly and happen so quickly. | RI.4.1, RI.4.3, W.4.2d, W.4.4 |
| **6** *Inferential* | B | RI.4.1, RI.4.3, RI.4.4, L.4.4a |
| **7** *Inferential* | C | RI.4.1, RI.4.3, RI.4.4, RI.4.8, L.4.4a |
| **8** *Inferential* | C | RL.4.1, RL.4.4, L.4.4a |
| ***9 Part A** *Inferential* | B | RL.4.1, RL.4.4, L.4.5b |

| Item | Correct Answer(s) | Standards |
|---|---|---|
| **9 Part B Literal* | He was true to his word by bringing several other turtles to the Great Spirit, which is what he said he would do. | RL.4.1, RL.4.4, W.4.4 |
| *10 Inferential* | A | RL.4.1 |
| **11 Part A Inferential* | D | RL.4.1 |
| **11 Part B Literal* | Some swam in one direction and the rest in another, causing the land on their backs to rumble and shake and make big cracks appear in the soil. | RL.4.1, W.4.4 |
| *12 Evaluative* | B | RL.4.1 |
| *13 Inferential* | C | RL.4.1 |
| *14 Evaluative* | D | RL.4.1, RL.4.2 |

### *Writing Prompt Scoring*

The writing prompt addresses CCSS W.4.2, W.4.2a-e, W.4.4, L.4.2, and L.4.6.

| Score | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Criteria** | One or more clear similarity is identified across at least two of the texts and one or more clear difference is identified across at least two of the texts. Examples from the text to support the similarity and difference are provided. The similarity and difference both relate to causes and/or effects of earthquakes. | One clear similarity is identified across at least two of the texts or one clear difference is identified across at least two of the texts. An example from the text is provided. The similarity or difference relates to causes or effects of earthquakes. | A similarity or difference is identified but it is not clear which texts it references. An unrelated example is provided from the text. | A similarity or difference is not identified across texts. No example is provided in the answer. |

*Grammar Answer Key*

1. The first expedition to the bottom of the Mariana Trench took place on January 23, 1960.
2. The text states, "Earth's tectonic plates have been slowly moving and interacting for billions of years."
3. Mount Rushmore National Memorial<br>13000 S Dakota 244<br>Keystone, SD 57751
4. "What if," wondered Wegener, "continents were like enormous pieces of ice?"
5. Geologists found fossils of an ancient fern in similar rock layers in Africa, India, Australia, and South America.
6. a large, old, Hawaiian volcano
7. the smooth, shiny, obsidian rock
8. a powerful, giant tsunami

*Morphology Answer Key*

1. abruptly
2. eruption
3. speedy
4. biography
5. rupture
6. carefully

## Optional Fluency Assessment

The following is the text for the Optional Fluency Assessment, titled "Our Home, Earth." Turn to this copy of the selection each time you administer this assessment.

You will also find a Recording Copy of the text for doing a running record of oral reading for each student you assess. There is also a Fluency Scoring Sheet. Make as many copies of the Recording Copy and the Fluency Scoring Sheet as you need, having one for each student you assess.

# Our Home, Earth

There are three important words to keep in mind whenever you are thinking about geology. Heat is the first. You can feel heat from a flame or from the sun on a sunny day. Heat causes many changes to the earth.

The second word is pressure, like the force you use when you push on something. Pressure also causes many changes to the earth.

Time is the third important geology word to remember. To understand geology, you need to think about time in a whole new way. Forget about minutes, hours, and days. These amounts of time don't mean much in geology. Geologists think in terms of many, many years. It takes a long time for pressure and heat to do what they do.

The Grand Canyon, located in Arizona, provides a lot of clues about the earth's formation and history. It took millions of years for rushing water in the river to carve through the rocks to make this canyon. No other place on earth allows geologists to see and study so many different layers of rock at the same time. The rock on the upper rim of the Grand Canyon is estimated by some scientists to be about 230 million years old, whereas the rock layers at the very bottom of the canyon are estimated to have formed over 2 billion years ago. That bottom rock is half as old as the earth is believed to be itself!

Student Name ______________________________ Date__________

# Recording Copy

# Our Home, Earth

There are three important words to keep in mind whenever you are thinking about 14
geology. Heat is the first. You can feel heat from a flame or from the sun on a sunny day. 34
Heat causes many changes to the earth. 41

The second word is pressure, like the force you use when you push on something. 56
Pressure also causes many changes to the earth. 64

Time is the third important geology word to remember. To understand geology, you 77
need to think about time in a whole new way. Forget about minutes, hours, and days. 93
These amounts of time don't mean much in geology. Geologists think in terms of many, 108
many years. It takes a long time for pressure and heat to do what they do. 124

The Grand Canyon, located in Arizona, provides a lot of clues about the earth's 138
formation and history. It took millions of years for rushing water in the river to carve 154
through the rocks to make this canyon. No other place on earth allows geologists to see 170
and study so many different layers of rock at the same time. The rock on the upper rim 188
of the Grand Canyon is estimated by some scientists to be about 230 million years old, 204
whereas the rock layers at the very bottom of the canyon are estimated to have formed 220
over 2 billion years ago. That bottom rock is half as old as the earth is believed to be itself! 240

**Word Count: 240**

Student Name ______________________________ Date__________

# Fluency Scoring Sheet

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | **Words Read in One Minute** |
| — | | **Uncorrected Mistakes in One Minute** |
| | | **W.C.P.M** |

| **W.C.P.M.** | **National Percentiles for Winter, Grade 4** |
|---|---|
| 166 | 90th |
| 139 | 75th |
| 112 | 50th |
| 87 | 25th |
| 61 | 10th |
| **Comprehension Total ______ / 4** | |

## Guidelines for Fluency Assessment Scoring

To calculate a student's W.C.P.M. (Words Correct Per Minute) score, use the information you wrote on the Recording Copy and follow these steps. You may wish to have a calculator available.

1. Count Words Read in One Minute. This is the total number of words the student read or attempted to read in one minute. It includes words the student read correctly as well as words the student read incorrectly. Write the total in the box labeled Words Read in One Minute.
2. Count the Uncorrected Mistakes in One Minute. You noted these on the Recording Copy. They include words read incorrectly, omissions, substitutions, and words you had to supply. Write the total in the box labeled Uncorrected Mistakes in One Minute on the Fluency Scoring Sheet. (A mistake that the student self-corrects is not counted as a mistake.)
3. Subtract Uncorrected Mistakes in One Minute from Words Read in One Minute to get Words Correct. Write the number in the box labeled W.C.P.M. Although the analysis does not include any words the student read correctly (or incorrectly) after one minute, you may use this information from your Recording Copy for anecdotal purposes.

As you evaluate W.C.P.M. scores, here are some factors to consider.

It is normal for students to show a wide range in fluency and in W.C.P.M. scores. However, a major goal of Grade 4 is to read with sufficient fluency to ensure comprehension and independent reading of school assignments in this and subsequent grade levels. A student's W.C.P.M. score can be compared with the score of other students in the class (or grade level) and also with the national fluency norms obtained by Hasbrouck and Tindal (2006). Hasbrouck and Tindal suggest that a score falling within 10 words above or below the 50th percentile should be interpreted as within the normal, expected, and appropriate range for a student at that grade level at that time of year. For example, if you administered the assessment during the fall of Grade 4, and a student scored 84 W.C.P.M., you should interpret this as within the normal, expected, and appropriate range for that student.

*Oral Reading Fluency Norms for Grade 4 from Hasbrouck and Tindal (2006)*

| Percentile | Fall W.C.P.M | Winter W.C.P.M. | Spring W.C.P.M |
|---|---|---|---|
| 90 | 145 | 166 | 180 |
| 75 | 119 | 139 | 152 |
| 50 | 94 | 112 | 123 |
| 25 | 68 | 87 | 98 |
| 10 | 45 | 61 | 72 |

### *Reference*

Hasbrouck, Jan and Gerald A. Tindal. "Oral reading fluency norms: A valuable assessment tool for reading teachers." *The Reading Teacher 59* (2006): 636–644.

# Pausing Point

## Unit 6: Geology

### End-of-Unit Content Assessment

Use the first day of the Pausing Point to administer the assessment of content knowledge acquired by reading *The Changing Earth*. Make sure each student has a copy of Activity Page PP.2. You may have collected this activity page from students at the beginning of the unit.

- Allow students as much time as they need to complete the assessment during the first Pausing Point day. In most cases, this assessment will take approximately 30 to 45 minutes.
- Tell students to read and answer the questions about what they have learned about geology. Encourage students to do their best and review their work once they have finished.
- Circulate around the room as students complete the assessment to ensure that everyone is working individually.
- Use the following Remediation and Enrichment suggestions to plan activities for the remainder of the first Pausing Point day.

### *Content Assessment Answer Key*

1. C
2. C
3. sedimentary; igneous; metamorphic
4. B
5. D
6. erosion; physical weathering; chemical weathering
7. C
8. A
9. B
10. A
11. ocean trench; mid-ocean ridge
12. B
13. extinct volcano; active volcano; dormant volcano
14. A
15. D
16. B
17. D
18. B
19. D
20. E
21. B
22. F
23. A
24. C
25. A. fold mountains; C. dome mountains; B. fault-block mountains
26. B
27. B
28. A. inner core; B. outer core; C. mantle; D. crust
29. B
30. D

## Pausing Point for Differentiation of Instruction

Please use the final four days of this unit (or three days if you chose to pause one day after Lesson 7) to address results of the Content Assessment, Unit Assessment (for reading comprehension; fluency, if applicable; grammar; and morphology), and Spelling Assessments. Use each student's scores on the Unit Assessment to determine which remediation and/or enrichment opportunities will benefit particular students. In assigning these remediation and/or enrichment activities, you may choose to have students work individually, in small groups, or as a whole class.

## Remediation

### *Content*

If students demonstrate a need for remediation on any of the *Geology* content, refer to the Reader chapters covering that content. You may wish to reteach any such chapter as a teacher read-aloud, regardless of the type of reading lesson initially used for that chapter. Additionally, you should focus more heavily on the questions labeled **Support** in the Teacher Guide materials for that chapter.

## Notes

This is a good opportunity to use the Tens scoring system to gather formative assessment data. Information about the Tens scoring system appears in the Teacher Resources section of the Unit 1 Teacher Guide.

### *Reading Comprehension*

It is important to understand that poor performance on the Reading Comprehension section of the end-of-unit assessment may be attributable to any number of factors. To ascertain which remediation efforts will be most worthwhile, it is highly recommended that you ask any student who performed poorly on this section to read at least one of the assessment passages aloud to you orally, one on one. As the student reads, make note of any words the student struggles with or reads incorrectly. If the student occasionally misreads words in the text, analyze the types of errors in code knowledge and consult the CKLA Decoding and Encoding Remediation Supplement. This online publication provides further guidance in assessing, analyzing, and remediating specific decoding skills so targeted remediation can be provided. If the student frequently misreads words in the text, this is indication of a more global decoding problem that may require further assessment and remediation by a reading specialist. The Decoding and Encoding Remediation Supplement can be accessed online at CoreKnowledge.org/CKLA-files and at CKLA.Amplify.com.

If the student does not misread words, but reads haltingly, a lack of fluency may impede comprehension. Administer the optional fluency assessment to verify whether the student's reading rate is below the norm. If so, remediation efforts should be targeted at building fluency.

Once the student finishes reading the passage(s) aloud, ask the comprehension questions orally. Analyze whether the student makes errors on the same questions answered incorrectly on the written assessment, as well as the type of questions answered incorrectly. Does the student have difficulty answering particular types of questions? If so, guided rereading of specific chapters in a small group setting with other students who are struggling may be helpful. Choose chapters that were not already used for small group instruction and provide specific guidance as to how to use the text to arrive at the correct answer.

Also analyze whether there was a marked difference between the student's comprehension of the informational and literary passages. Good performance on the informational passage requires students to use the domain specific vocabulary and knowledge presented throughout the unit. Students who performed poorly on the informational passage may benefit from rereading chapters from the unit, with more intensive focus on the domain vocabulary.

Good performance on the literary passage of this assessment requires some knowledge of domain specific vocabulary from this unit (though not to the same extent as the informational passage), as well as general knowledge of Tier 2 and academic vocabulary. Students who performed poorly on the literary passage, but did well on the informational passage, may benefit from specific practice with Tier 2 and academic vocabulary.

### *Fluency*

Students who struggle with fluency will benefit from having multiple opportunities to reread a particular text. If students demonstrate a need for remediation related to fluency, you may have them either reread selections from the Reader or choose an excerpt from the *Fluency Supplement*.

### *Grammar and Morphology*

If students demonstrate a need for remediation in the foundational grammar and morphology skills required for the lessons in Grade 4, consult the CKLA Grade 3 Skills Strand materials for additional grammar and morphology lessons and activities. Alternatively, for students who demonstrate a general proficiency in grammar and morphology, but who demonstrate a need for remediation in connection with specific skills covered in *Geology*, you may provide more targeted remediation by reteaching only the lessons for those skills. For additional practice with the grammar and morphology skills taught in this unit, you may wish to have students complete the Pausing Point activity pages in the Activity Book.

### *Spelling*

If students demonstrate a need for remediation in spelling, but they exhibit general proficiency in code knowledge, have them use the Individual Code Chart to assist in spelling unfamiliar words, syllable by syllable.

If students exhibit specific code knowledge problems, as revealed by the spelling assessment analyses, they may benefit from remediation to target specific letter-sound correspondences. You may access the *Decoding and Encoding Remediation Supplement* online at CoreKnowledge.org/CKLA-files and at CKLA.Amplify.com.

### *Writing*

Use time during the Pausing Point to return to Activity Page 8.4, the draft wiki entry that each student completed, along with the completed Wiki Entry Rubric and Wiki Entry Editing Checklist. Meet briefly with individual students to discuss areas in which improvement is needed. You may wish to allow students additional time to revise and edit their wiki entry. You may also wish to allow students to publish their wiki entry by recopying their revised and edited draft onto a clean page.

You may wish to suggest that students needing more practice write a new wiki entry on a different topic, such as the rock cycle, weathering, or erosion. Provide additional structure and guidance for students, making copies of both the Wiki Entry Rubric and Wiki Entry Editing Checklist available (see the Teacher Resources), and circulate and check in with students as they write.

## Enrichment

If students have mastered the content and skills in the *Geology* unit, their experience with the domain concepts may be enriched by the following activities:

- Students may read the enrichment selections contained in the Reader. One selection, "The Rock Towns of Cappadocia," describes the cave-like rock houses located in Cappadocia, Turkey, as well as rock carvings on Easter Island. Another selection, "Violent Vesuvius," provides information on Mount Vesuvius and gives an account of what it was like to witness its largest, most devastating eruption in recorded history. The final selection, "A Deep-Sea Detective Story," dives into the subject of undersea investigation, telling of important expeditions and resulting discoveries. The Activity Book contains activity pages students can complete as they read these selections.
- Students may respond to any of the following writing prompts, conducting independent research necessary to support their response:
  - Describe the steps that would change igneous rock into sediments; sediments into sedimentary rock; sedimentary rock into metamorphic rock; metamorphic rock into igneous rock; metamorphic rock into sedimentary rock; and/or igneous rock into metamorphic rock.
  - If I witnessed a volcanic eruption, I would . . .
  - Compare and contrast what happens above and below Earth's surface to cause specific volcanic activity (formation of a volcano, a volcanic eruption, formation of an island chain, etc.) and how that specific volcanic activity is explained in a volcano myth.
  - Write a letter from the perspective of a scientist who is going on an underwater expedition to explore hydrothermal vents.
  - Write a myth about ancient ocean fossils on Mount Everest.
- Students may share, either with a small group or with the class, the writing they generated in this unit or in response to the writing prompts in this Enrichment section.

# Teacher Resources

## Unit 6: Geology

In this section, you will find:

- Core Connections Area of Study Cards
- Core Connections Earth Image Card
- Core Connections Geology Image Cards
- Pronunciation Guide for *The Changing Earth*
- Glossary for *The Changing Earth*
- Wiki Entry Rubric
- Wiki Entry Editing Checklist
- Resources for the Enrichment Selections in *The Changing Earth*
- Activity Book Answer Key

## Geography

the study of the characteristics of the earth's surface

## Ecology

the study of relationships between living things and their environment

## Archaeology

the study of past human life and activities by examining bones, tools, and other objects left behind

## Geology

the study of the earth's characteristics, what it is made of, and the forces and processes that change and shape it

## Pronunciation Guide for *The Changing Earth*

The following are pronunciations for unique words in the order they first appear in *The Changing Earth*, translated into Core Knowledge code. Syllables are divided with an asterisk (*).

| **Chapter 1** | |
|---|---|
| Shen Kua | /shen/ /kwə/ |
| Pangaea | /pan*jee*ə/ |

| **Chapter 2** | |
|---|---|
| Inge Lehmann | /ing*gə/ /lee*mon/ |

| **Chapter 3** | |
|---|---|
| Francesco Petrarch | /fran*ches*koe/ /pe*trark/ |
| Richter | /rik*ter/ |
| tsunami | /soo*no*mee/ |

| **Chapter 4** | |
|---|---|
| Kilauea | /kee*lə*wae*ə/ |
| Mauna Loa | /mon*ə/ /loe*ə/ |
| Paricutin | /par*ee*koo*teen/ |
| Krakatoa | /krak*ə*toe*ə/ |
| Molokai | /mol*o*chee/ |
| Maui | /mow*ee/ |
| Kauai | /koo*wie/ |
| Oahu | /oe*wo*hoo/ |
| Loihi | /loo*ee*hee/ |

| **Chapter 5** | |
|---|---|
| Pele | /pae*lae/ |
| Kilauea | /kee*lə*wae*ə/ |
| Na-maka-o-kaha'i | /no*mo*kə*oe*kə*hie/ |
| Hi'iaka | /hee*ie*ə*kə/ |
| Kauai | /koo*wie/ |
| Lohi'au | /loe*ee*o/ |
| Oahu | /oe*wo*hoo/ |
| Molokai | /mol*o*chee/ |
| Maui | /mow*ee/ |
| Monadalkni | /mon*ə*dok*nie/ |
| Sahale Tyee | /so*ho*lee/ /tie*ee/ |

| **Chapter 6** | |
|---|---|
| gneiss | /nees/ |
| Agnes Nyanhongo | /ag*nes/ /nie*an*hong*goe/ |
| Zimbabwe | /zim*bob*wae/ |

| **Chapter 7** | |
|---|---|
| Yunnan | /yoo*nan/ |
| Shilin | /shee*leen/ |

| **Chapter 8** | |
|---|---|
| Tethys Sea | /teth*ees/ /see/ |
| Eurasian | /yer*ae*zshən/ |
| Urals | /yer*əlz/ |
| Navajo | /nov*ə*hoe/ |
| Gutzon Borglum | /gootz*un/ /bor*glum/ |

| **Chapter 9** | |
|---|---|
| anemones | /ə*nem*o*nees/ |
| Jacques Piccard | /jok/ /pee*kar/ |
| *Trieste* | /treest/ |

| **Enrichment: The Rock Towns of Cappadocia** | |
|---|---|
| Cappadocia | /kap*ə*doe*shə/ |
| Mount Erciyes | /mount/ /er*sie*əs/ |
| Rapa Nui | /ro*po/ /noo*ee/ |
| moai | /moe*wie/ |

| **Enrichment: Violent Vesuvius** | |
|---|---|
| Pliny | /plin*ee/ |
| Misenum | /mis*en*um/ |

| **Enrichment: A Deep-Sea Detective Story** | |
|---|---|
| Galapagos | /gə*lop*ə*goes/ |

## Glossary for *The Changing Earth*

Words marked with an asterisk (*) are important bolded words in this Reader that are not part of the reading lessons.

### A

*__active volcano__, ***n.*** a type of volcano that has erupted in the past 10,000 years and is likely to erupt again (**active volcanoes**)

**aftershock**, ***n.*** a smaller, weaker earthquake that often follows a main earthquake event (**aftershocks**)

**altar**, ***n.*** a platform or table used as a center of worship in religious ceremonies or services (**altars**)

### B

**basalt**, ***n.*** heavy, dense rock formed from cooled, hardened lava

**basin**, ***n.*** a large area in the earth that is lower than the area around it (**basins**)

**bitter**, ***adj.*** **1.** resentful and angry because of unfair treatment; **2.** very cold

**bulge**, ***v.*** to stick out or swell

### C

**caldera**, ***n.*** a crater caused by the collapse of the top of a volcano

**canyon**, ***n.*** a deep valley with steep sides and often a stream or river flowing through it (**canyons**)

**catastrophe**, ***n.*** a terrible, sudden event (**catastrophes**)

*__chemical weathering__, ***n.*** a process that breaks down rocks by changing the minerals they contain

**climate**, ***n.*** the average weather conditions of a particular area

**clustered**, ***adj.*** grouped close together

*__coal__, ***n.*** a dark, solid substance in the earth formed from plant fossils and used as fuel

*__collide__, ***v.*** to crash together with strong force (**colliding**)

**compact**, ***v.*** to closely pack or press together (**compacts, compacting**)

**conclude**, ***v.*** to decide something or form an opinion based on information you have (**concluded, *n.* conclusion**)

**continental drift**, ***n.*** a process in which continents slowly move over time on the surface of the earth

**contract**, ***v.*** to shrink slightly or get smaller

**crater**, ***n.*** a bowl-shaped opening at the top of a volcano or geyser

*__crust__, ***n.*** Earth's outermost layer, featuring a rocky surface

### D

**dense**, ***adj.*** thick or heavy (**denser**)

**deposit**, **1. *v.*** to put or leave something in a particular place; **2. *n.*** material laid down or left by a natural process (***v.* deposited**, ***n.* deposits**)

**descend**, ***v.*** to move downward (**descends**)

**detective**, ***n.*** a person whose job is to find information about someone or something (**detectives**)

**dissolved**, ***adj.*** mixed with liquid so no solid pieces are visible anymore

**distant**, ***adj.*** far away in time

*__dome mountains__, ***n.*** mountains generally formed when magma pushes upward into Earth's crust from the mantle and cools into igneous rock underground, causing the crust above it to bulge; usually occur as isolated mountains on otherwise flat plains

*__dormant volcano__, ***n.*** a type of volcano that is considered active but hasn't erupted for a very long time

*__drift__, ***v.*** to slowly move with water, wind, or other natural processes (**drifted**)

**durable**, ***adj.*** able to last a long time in good condition

**dwelling**, ***n.*** a place where someone lives (**dwellings**)

### E

**elder**, ***n.*** a person who is older, respected, and often in a position of authority (**elders**)

**entomb**, ***v.*** to bury (**entombed**)

*__epicenter__, ***n.*** the point on Earth's surface directly above an earthquake's focus *__erosion__, ***n.*** any process or force that moves sediments to new locations

**erupt**, ***v.*** to send out rock, lava, and ash in a sudden explosion (**erupted**, ***n.*** **eruption**)

**eruption column**, ***n.*** an enormous cloud of ash, bits of rock, and toxic gas produced by a volcanic eruption that can travel hundreds of feet per second

**eternal**, ***adj.*** lasting forever, with no beginning and no end

**evacuate**, ***v.*** to remove people from a dangerous place

**evidence**, ***n.*** proof; information and facts that are helpful in forming a conclusion or supporting an idea

**excavation**, ***n.*** a hollowed-out place formed by digging or carving (**excavations**)

**exert**, ***v.*** to cause a force to be felt or have an effect (**exerts**)

**expand**, ***v.*** to get bigger

**experiment**, ***n.*** a scientific test to try out something in order to learn about it

*__extinct volcano__, ***n.*** a type of volcano that has not erupted for at least 10,000 years (**extinct volcanoes**)

**eyewitness**, ***n.*** a person who has seen something happen and is able to describe it

## F

**fault**, ***n.*** a crack in Earth's crust (**faults**)

*__fault-block mountains__, ***n.*** mountains formed when gigantic blocks of rock move up and down along faults

**fine**, ***adj.*** very small

**firsthand**, ***adv.*** coming directly from actually seeing or experiencing something

*__focus__, ***n.*** the place in Earth's crust where huge blocks of rock move along a fault, triggering an earthquake

*__fold mountains__, ***n.*** mountains formed when rocks are pushed up into huge folds by moving tectonic plates

*__force__, ***n.*** strength, power (**forces**)

**fossil**, ***n.*** the preserved remains of things that lived long ago (**fossils**)

**foundation**, ***n.*** the basis of something, the support upon which something else is built (**foundations**)

## G

**geologist**, ***n.*** a scientist who studies the makeup of the earth and the forces and processes that shape and change it (**geologists**)

*__geyser__, ***n.*** an underground hot spring that periodically erupts, shooting hot water and steam into the air (**geysers**)

**granite**, ***n.*** a common igneous rock that forms from magma that cooled within Earth's crust

## H

**heave**, ***v.*** **1.** to move up and down over and over; **2.** to lift, pull, push, or throw with a lot of effort

**hoodoo**, ***n.*** the tallest kind of pinnacle (**hoodoos**)

**hotspot**, ***n.*** a very hot region deep within Earth's mantle where a huge magma chamber forms (**hotspots**)

**hot spring**, ***n.*** a naturally flowing source of hot water (**hot springs**)

**hydrothermal vent**, ***n.*** a deep-sea geyser that forms as seawater sinks down through cracks in the oceanic crust and then releases extremely hot, mineral-rich water back up through cracks in the crust (**hydrothermal vents**)

**hypothesis**, ***n.*** an idea that has been suggested and may be true but has not yet been proven

## I

*__ice wedging__, ***n.*** a process in which water alternately freezes and thaws and breaks rocks apart

*__igneous rock__, ***n.*** rock that forms when magma cools and solidifies (**igneous rocks**)

*__inner core__, ***n.*** Earth's deepest layer, made of very hot, solid metal

## L

**lava**, ***n.*** red-hot melted rock that has erupted above Earth's crust from deep underground

*__limestone__, ***n.*** a sedimentary rock often packed with the fossilized skeletons and shells of tiny ocean creatures that is commonly used for building

**litter**, ***v.*** to scatter in disorder (**littered**)

**lofty**, ***adj.*** high up

## M

**magma**, ***n.*** melted rock in Earth's mantle

**magnitude**, ***n.*** an earthquake's strength

*__mantle__, ***n.*** Earth's largest and thickest layer that consists of very hot, very dense rock

*__metamorphic rock__, ***n.*** rock that forms when minerals in igneous, sedimentary, or older metamorphic rocks are changed due to extreme heat and pressure (**metamorphic rocks**)

**mineral**, ***n.*** a solid, nonliving substance found in the earth that makes up rocks (**minerals**)

**moai**, ***n.*** statues on Easter Island carved from tuff in the shape of partial human figures with large heads, high cheekbones, and heavy brows

## O

**observation**, ***n.*** **1.** the act of paying careful attention to gather information; **2.** a statement based on paying careful attention to something (**observations**)

**obsidian**, ***n.*** a dark rock or natural glass formed from lava that cooled very quickly

**ocean trench**, ***n.*** a narrow, extremely deep valley formed when the seafloor dips down as one tectonic plate slides under another (**ocean trenches**)

**offering**, ***n.*** something that is presented as an act of worship (**offerings**)

*__outer core__, ***n.*** the layer within Earth between the inner core and the mantle that is made of very hot, liquid metal

**outsmart**, ***v.*** to trick or defeat someone by being clever

## P

**panic**, ***v.*** to be fearful in a sudden and overpowering way (**panicked**)

**pepper**, ***v.*** to sprinkle or cover

*__physical weathering__, ***n.*** a process that breaks big rocks into smaller rocks without changing the minerals they contain

**pinnacle**, ***n.*** a slender, soaring rock formation made of tuff (**pinnacles**)

**pinpoint**, ***v.*** to figure out the exact location of something

**plate tectonics**, ***n.*** a theory that Earth's crust and the solid top part of the mantle are broken up into sections that fit together but move against each other

**plume**, ***n.*** a column of magma that rises from the mantle into a chamber beneath Earth's crust

**porthole**, ***n.*** a small, round window on the side of a ship, submersible, or aircraft (**portholes**)

**pressure**, ***n.*** the weight or force produced when something presses or pushes against something else

**pyroclastic flow**, ***n.*** a sort of avalanche of intensely hot ash, rock fragments, and volcanic gas that rolls quickly down the side of a volcano (**pyroclastic flows**)

## R

**revenge**, ***n.*** the act of getting even for a wrongdoing

*__rock cycle__, ***n.*** the continuous cycle in which rocks are created, destroyed, and recreated

**rugged**, ***adj.*** having a rough, uneven surface

## S

**scald**, ***v.*** to burn with very hot water or steam

**school**, ***n.*** a large number of ocean animals of one type swimming together (**schools**)

**sea level**, ***n.*** the average height of the ocean's surface

**seamount**, ***n.*** an underwater volcano that forms wherever magma is erupting through oceanic crust (**seamounts**)

*__sediment__, ***n.*** rock, sand, or dirt that has been carried to a place by water, wind, or other natural processes (**sediments**)

*__sedimentary rock__, ***n.*** rock that is made of sediments that have been naturally compacted and cemented together (**sedimentary rocks**)

**seismic wave**, ***n.*** a surge of energy traveling out from an earthquake's source through the earth (**seismic waves**)

*__seismogram__, ***n.*** the record a seismograph makes, showing seismic waves as jagged up-and-down lines *__seismograph__, ***n.*** an instrument used to track seismic waves traveling through the earth (**seismographs**)

**sensor**, ***n.*** an instrument that detects and measures changes, and then sends information to a controlling device (**sensors**)

**sheer**, ***adj.*** very steep, almost straight up and down

**sheet**, ***n.*** a broad stretch of something (**sheets**)

**silt**, ***n.*** very small sediments deposited by water

**solidify**, ***v.*** to make or become hard or solid (**solidifies**)

**state**, ***n.*** the condition of being a solid, liquid, or gas

**strong-willed**, ***adj.*** determined to do what you want even if other people tell you not to

*__subduction__, ***n.*** a process in which a heavier oceanic plate slides under a lighter continental plate

**subduction zone**, ***n.*** the place where one tectonic plate is sliding beneath another tectonic plate (**subduction zones**)

**submersible**, ***n.*** a small vehicle that can travel deep under water for research (**submersibles**)

**surge**, ***v.*** to move forward quickly, suddenly, and with force (**surges**)

## T

**texture**, ***n.*** the size, shape, and sorting of mineral grains in rocks

**theory**, ***n.*** an explanation for why something happens based on evidence

**trigger**, ***v.*** to cause something to start or happen (**triggered**)

**tsunami**, ***n.*** a gigantic wave of seawater caused by an earthquake in oceanic crust (**tsunamis**)

**tuff**, ***n.*** a type of volcanic rock formed from hardened volcanic ash

## U

**ultimately**, ***adv.*** finally; at the end of a process

**underlie**, ***v.*** to be located under something (**underlies**)

**undertaking**, ***n.*** something that someone takes on as a task or duty

## V

**volcano**, ***n.*** a hill or mountain that forms over a crack in Earth's crust from which lava erupts (**volcanoes**)

## W

*__weather__, ***v.*** to break down into smaller pieces (***n.*** **weathering**)

## Wiki Entry Rubric

| | Exemplary | Strong | Developing | Beginning |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Introduction** | Initial section(s) provide accurate, general information related to location and type of volcano | Initial section(s) provide accurate information related to either location or type of volcano, but not both | Initial section(s) provide information loosely related to location and/or type of volcano | Initial section(s) lack information related to location and type of volcano |
| **Body** | Additional sections provide increasingly specific information about the volcano | Additional sections provide more information about the volcano | Additional sections provide some information about the volcano | Additional sections provide little to no information about the volcano |
| **Conclusion** | A final statement provides a thought-provoking summative or closing reflection about the volcano | A final statement provides a summative or closing reflection about the volcano | The summative or closing nature of the final statement is unclear | No final statement is provided |
| **Structure of the Piece** | All sentences in sections are presented logically | Most sentences in sections are presented logically | Some sentences in sections are presented logically | Connections between sentences in sections are confusing |
| | All information has been paraphrased | Most information has been paraphrased | Some information has been paraphrased | Little information has been paraphrased |

*You may correct capitalization, punctuation, and grammar errors while you are revising. However, if you create a final copy of your writing to publish, you will use an editing checklist to address those types of mistakes after you revise.*

### *Guidance for Teacher Use of Rubrics*

Rubrics are provided for evaluation of the content and structure of student writing composed within each unit. The criteria within the descriptions correspond to what is taught in the writing lessons. “Exemplary” to “Beginning” performance columns provide graduated descriptions for each criterion. The columns for “Strong,” “Developing,” and “Beginning” performance are shaded to help students initially attend to the description for “Exemplary” performance. The rubrics allow teachers and students to identify graduated steps for improvement when aspects of the writing do not meet all the taught criteria. To do this, teachers (and students) may highlight the language from each row that best describes the student writing.

## Wiki Entry Editing Checklist

| Wiki Entry Editing Checklist | Notes |
|---|---|
| **Meaning** | |
| Is correct grammar used?<br>• Sentences are complete with subject and predicate.<br>• Sentences are appropriate length (no run-ons).<br>• The student has been supported with corrections for parts of speech, verb tense, and more complex sentence structure. | |
| **Format** | |
| Does the student use appropriate formatting for the piece of writing?<br>• The volcano name is the title at the top.<br>• Each section of the entry has a heading.<br>• Indenting is not used.<br>• If lists are included, they are bulleted or numbered.<br>• There is a reference list at the end in the appropriate format. | |
| **Capitals** | |
| Is capitalization appropriately applied?<br>• All sentences begin with a capital letter.<br>• All proper nouns are capitalized.<br>• Titles and headings have appropriate capital letters. | |
| **Spelling** | |
| Are all words spelled correctly?<br>• Words using Core Knowledge Code are spelled appropriately.<br>• Words from spelling and morphology lessons are spelled accurately.<br>• The student has been supported with identifying misspellings to be looked up in reference sources as needed. | |
| **Punctuation** | |
| Is punctuation appropriately applied?<br>• All sentences have appropriate ending punctuation.<br>• Commas and quotation marks are all used correctly for the ways they have been taught.<br>• The titles in the reference list are underlined or in italics. | |

### *Guidance for Teacher Use of Editing Checklists*

Editing checklists allow students and teachers to evaluate students' command of language conventions and writing mechanics within unit writing projects. They serve a different purpose than rubrics; rubrics measure the extent to which students apply specific instructional criteria they have been building toward across the unit whereas editing checklists measure the extent to which students apply English language conventions and general writing mechanics. With regard to expectations for accountability, we recommend using the editing checklist to measure students' command of language conventions and writing mechanics only when students have received the appropriate instructional support and specific opportunity to review their writing for that purpose.

### *Evaluating Student Writing*

Make enough copies of the rubric and editing checklist found in this section for evaluating each student's writing piece.

## Resources for the Enrichment Selections in *The Changing Earth*

The enrichment selections in *The Changing Earth* are intended to be used at your discretion. They are intended to be read by more advanced readers, as they are more difficult to read and include more challenging vocabulary than chapters 1–9. You may want to assign these chapters to students who need more challenging reading material. An introduction to the selections is provided here. Core vocabulary is also listed for each selection; these words are bolded in the Reader and appear in the glossary. Following the vocabulary chart, pronunciations are provided for words that may be challenging to decode.

### *Core Vocabulary for "The Rock Houses of Cappadocia"*

"The Rock Houses of Cappadocia" describes cave-like rock houses located in Cappadocia, Turkey, as well as rock carvings on Easter Island. A brief description of how the rock dwellings came to be is included, as is information about these dwellings today. Activity Page E1.1 corresponds to this enrichment selection.

The following core vocabulary words are bolded in the selection and appear in the glossary. Remind students they can look up a word in the glossary if needed.

1. **clustered**, ***adj.*** grouped close together (**90**)
2. **foundation**, ***n.*** the basis of something, the support upon which something else is built (**foundations**) (**90**)
3. **distant**, ***adj.*** far away in time (**92**)
4. **tuff**, ***n.*** a type of volcanic rock formed by hardened volcanic ash (**92**)
5. **pinnacle**, ***n.*** a slender, soaring rock formation made of tuff (**pinnacles**) (**92**)
6. **hoodoo**, ***n.*** the tallest kind of pinnacle (**hoodoos**) (**92**)
7. **dwelling**, ***n.*** a place where someone lives (**dwellings**) (**94**)
8. **excavation**, ***n.*** a hollowed-out place formed by digging or carving (**excavations**) (**95**)
9. **altar**, ***n.*** a platform or table used as a center of worship in religious ceremonies or services (**altars**) (**95**)
10. **moai**, ***n.*** statues on Easter Island carved from tuff in the shape of partial human figures with large heads, high cheekbones, and heavy brows (**98**)

| Vocabulary Chart for "The Rock Towns of Cappadocia" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3<br>Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2<br>General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | tuff<br>pinnacle<br>hoodoo<br>excavation<br>altar<br>moai | clustered<br>foundation<br>distant<br>dwelling |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | excavación<br>altar | |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | | foundation |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | | |

| Pronunciation Guide for "The Rock Towns of Cappadocia" | |
|---|---|
| Cappadocia | /kap*ə*doe*shə/ |
| Mount Erciyes | /mount/ /er*sie*əs/ |
| Rapa Nui | /ro*po/ /noo*ee/ |
| moai | /moe*wie/ |

### *Core Vocabulary for "Violent Vesuvius"*

"Violent Vesuvius" provides information about Mount Vesuvius and gives an account of what it was like to witness its largest, most devastating eruption in recorded history. The selection also includes information about what scientists have learned about this eruption from excavations of towns buried due to the eruption. Activity Page E2.1 corresponds to this enrichment selection.

The following core vocabulary words are bolded in the selection and appear in the glossary. Remind students they can look up a word in the glossary if needed.

1. **sensor**, ***n.*** an instrument that detects and measures changes, and then sends information to a controlling device (**sensors**) (**100**)
2. **evacuate**, ***v.*** to remove people from a dangerous place (**102**)
3. **panic**, ***v.*** to be fearful in a sudden and overpowering way (**panicked**) (**104**)
4. **sheet**, ***n.*** a broad stretch of something (**sheets**) (**104**)
5. **litter**, ***v.*** to scatter in disorder (**littered**) (**106**)
6. **entomb**, ***v.*** to bury (**entombed**) (**106**)
7. **pyroclastic flow**, ***n.*** a sort of avalanche of intensely hot ash, rock fragments, and volcanic gas that rolls quickly down the side of a volcano (**pyroclastic flows**) (**107**)
8. **eruption column**, ***n.*** an enormous cloud of ash, bits of rock, and toxic gas produced by a volcanic eruption that can travel hundreds of feet per second (**109**)

| Vocabulary Chart for "Violent Vesuvius" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3<br>Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2<br>General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | sensor<br>entomb<br>pyroclastic flow<br>eruption column | evacuate<br>panic<br>sheet<br>litter |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | columna eruptiva | evacuar<br>pánico |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | flujo piroclástico | sheet<br>litter |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | | |

| Pronunciation Guide for "Violent Vesuvius" | |
|---|---|
| Pliny | /plin*ee/ |
| Misenum | /mis*en*um/ |

### *Core Vocabulary for "A Deep-Sea Detective Story"*

"A Deep-Sea Detective Story" dives into the subject of undersea investigation, telling of important expeditions and resulting discoveries. Activity Page E3.1 corresponds to this enrichment selection.

The following core vocabulary words are bolded in the selection and appear in the glossary. Remind students they can look up a word in the glossary if needed.

1. **detective**, ***n.*** a person whose job is to find information about someone or something (**detectives**) (**111**)
2. **scald**, ***v.*** to burn with very hot water or steam (**111**)
3. **undertaking**, ***n.*** something that someone takes on as a task or duty (**113**)
4. **porthole**, ***n.*** a small, round window on the side of a ship, submersible, or aircraft (**portholes**) (**115**)

| Vocabulary Chart for "A Deep-Sea Detective Story" | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary Type** | **Tier 3 Domain-Specific Words** | **Tier 2 General Academic Words** |
| **Core Vocabulary** | porthole | detective<br>scald<br>undertaking |
| **Spanish Cognates for Core Vocabulary** | | escaldar |
| **Multiple-Meaning Core Vocabulary Words** | | |
| **Sayings and Phrases** | | |

| Pronunciation Guide for "A Deep-Sea Detective Story" | |
|---|---|
| Galapagos | /gə*lop*ə*goes/ |

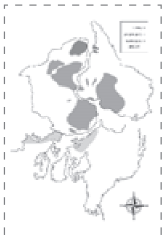
# Activity Book Answer Key

NAME:

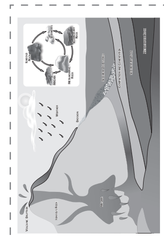
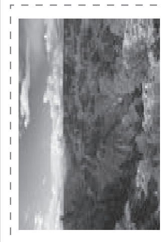
DATE:

**1.3** ACTIVITY PAGE

## Evidence Collector's Chart

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | At some point, Pangaea broke apart and the pieces slowly moved apart over a long period of time. |  similar rocks, fossils on different continents | N |
| 2 | Tectonic plates move very slowly due to the heat and pressure in Earth's mantle. |  continents rearranged over time | E |
| 3 | Material in the mantle moves beneath stuck rocks at a fault, causing pressure to build over time and then suddenly release as the rocks break and slip past each other, shaking the ground. |  rocks moving at a fault | E |



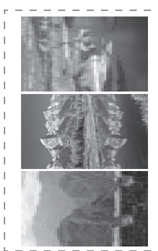
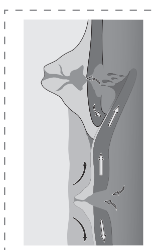
| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | Tremendous pressure and heat in the mantle force magma in a chamber below Earth's crust to move upward through a crack in Earth's surface. |  magma erupts as lava | D |
| 6 | Rocks are created, destroyed, and recreated in a continuous cycle. |  igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic rock | I |
| 7 | Over time, weathering breaks rocks into smaller pieces and erosion moves these pieces to new locations. |  processes reshape Earth's surface | C |



NAME:

DATE:

**1.3** CONTINUED ACTIVITY PAGE

| Chapter # | What is the cause? | What evidence is there? | Letter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | Tectonic plates subduct underneath one another and move up and down against each other, and magma pushes up into the crust. |  fold, fault-block, and dome mountains | E |
| 9 | Tectonic plates interact to create seafloor spreading and underwater subduction zones. |  deep ocean trenches, mid-ocean ridges, hydrothermal vents | V |

Riddle:

Answer:



NAME:

DATE:

**1.5** CONTINUED TAKE-HOME

*The following chart contains a statement about Alfred Wegener's continental drift hypothesis. Using information from the excerpt, write five pieces of evidence that support Wegener's hypothesis.*

| | |
|---|---|
| **Hypothesis** | Long ago, continents were joined as one supercontinent that broke apart and the pieces slowly drifted away from each other. |
| **Evidence** | 1. Rock layers along the northern and eastern coasts of South America match rock layers along Africa's western coast. |
| | 2. Deposits of coal and salt in eastern North America are similar to those in southern Europe. |
| | 3. Fossils of the ancient fern ***Glossopteris*** found in similar rock layers in Africa, India, Australia, South America, and Antarctica |
| | 4. Fossils of the ancient reptile ***Lystrosaurus*** found in southern Africa and India |
| | 5. Fossils of the ancient reptile ***Cynognathus*** found in South America and Africa |

Activity Book Answer Key

NAME: ______________________

DATE: ______________________

2.2 TAKE-HOME

## Practice Commas

*For each item, insert a comma or commas in the appropriate location(s).*

**Examples**: We went to Concord North Carolina to visit friends for spring break.
We went to Concord, North Carolina to visit friends for spring break.

I needed paper pencils erasers and a notebook for school.
I needed paper, pencils, erasers, and a notebook for school.

Seismologist Inge Lehmann was born on May 13 1888.
Seismologist Inge Lehmann was born on May 13, 1888.

1. When I was a child, my family moved from Chicago, Illinois to Madison, Wisconsin.
2. We have two dogs, three cats, a turtle, and a bunny.
3. 801 East High Street
Charlottesville, VA 22902
4. President Obama was elected the 44th President of the United States on November 4, 2008.
5. My dad cooked eggs, bacon, toast, and pancakes for breakfast.
6. We traveled from Boston, Massachusetts to San Diego, California on our cross-country trip.
7. Earth's layers are the inner core, the outer core, the mantle, and the crust.



8. 233 Broadway
New York, NY 10007
9. Her graduation date is scheduled for May 24, 2016.

*Write a sentence that includes a date or items in a series. Be sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation.*

Answers may vary.

*Write an address. Be sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation.*

Answers may vary.

**Challenge**: *Write a sentence that includes at least two of the following:*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| a date | a city and state | items in a series |

Answers may vary.



NAME: ______________________

DATE: ______________________

2.3 TAKE-HOME

## *-ly*: Suffix Meaning "in a ______ way"

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| easy | easily | loud |
| careful | carefully | temporary |
| speedy | accidentally | temporarily |

1. Even though his stay was only temporary, I got really attached to the neighbor's dog staying with us for a week while his owners were on vacation.
2. Amber's dad accidentally put his coffee in her thermos instead of his thermos.
3. I was careful not to wake up the baby while he was sleeping, so I listened to music quietly through headphones instead of speakers.
4. According to the continental drift hypothesis, continents move very slowly, which is definitely not a(n) speedy process.
5. The buzzer on my alarm clock is so loud that it wakes up everyone in the house.
6. The ground temporarily shakes during an earthquake, as seismic waves travel through Earth's crust and its interior.



*Write a sentence using one of the words left in the box.*

Answers may vary, but should include one of the following words: easy, easily, carefully.

*Write a sentence using one of the words left in the box.*

Answers may vary, but should include one of the following words and should not include the same word as used in the previous sentence: easy, easily, carefully.

# Activity Book Answer Key

NAME: ______________________________ **2.4** ACTIVITY PAGE

DATE: ______________________________

## Similes about Earth's Changes

*Reread the text on the page noted for each simile. Then, fill in the chart to explain what the simile is comparing and what it means.*

| Page | Simile from Text | What is the simile comparing? | What does the simile mean? |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9 | *What if continents were like enormous pieces of ice?* | Continents in oceans to pieces of ice floating in a drink. | Continents are less dense than rocks on the ocean bottom so they can float above those rocks just like ice floats in a drink, which is made with water, because ice is less dense than water. |
| 13 | *An earthquake is a bit like a rock plunking into water.* | An earthquake and a rock in water | Seismic waves travel out through the earth from the source of an earthquake just as a source of waves traveling out from the spot where it hit the water. |
| 16 | *The rift was like a seam in a pants leg, where two pieces of fabric come together.* | A rift in mid-ocean ridges and a seam in a pants leg | The seam in a pants leg dips down where the two pieces of fabric come together, so the seam lies a little bit lower than the pieces of fabric. The rift down the mid-ocean ridges dips down between the ridges; the rift lies a little bit lower than the ridges themselves. |

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 27

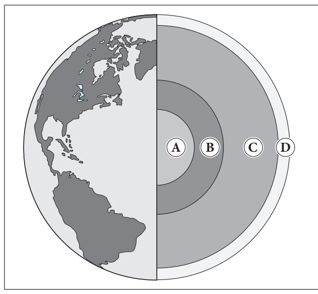
NAME: ______________________________ **3.1** TAKE-HOME

DATE: ______________________________

## Excerpt from "Earth's Layers and Moving Plates"

*Read the following excerpt and use it to label Earth's layers in the diagram that follows.*

Earth's deepest layer is a solid inner core of very hot metal. This metal may be nearly as hot as the sun's surface. The outer core is also made of hot metal, but it's liquid, not solid. The mantle surrounds the outer core. The mantle is Earth's largest and thickest layer and consists of very hot, very dense rock. The rock is solid in the lower and upper parts of the mantle. In between, however, is a region where the rock is neither liquid nor solid. The slow movement and behavior of this material, caused by heat and pressure, have an impact on Earth's surface. Above the mantle is Earth's outermost layer, the thin, rocky crust. There are two types of crust: oceanic crust and continental crust. Oceanic crust is covered by ocean water. Most of the continental crust is dry land, but some of the crust around the edges is covered by water. Oceanic crust is thinner but heavier than continental crust.




A. inner core

B. outer core

C. mantle

D. crust

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 29

*Use the correct word from the word bank to fill in each blank in the following paragraphs.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| trench | theory | plate | subduction |
| continental | tectonic | collide | |

Sam is excited to tell his family what he is reading and learning about geology at school. His cousins live in the South American country of Chile, and today he learned that there is a deep ocean ____trench____ along Chile's coast. He explained, "There are two ____tectonic____ plates that meet along the western coast of South America. One is a ____continental____ plate and one is an oceanic plate. The heavier oceanic plate is sliding beneath the lighter continental ____plate____. And, this process has a big name I learned today—it's called ____subduction____!"

"I think I know how the Andes Mountains of South America are formed," exclaimed Sam's dad. "When the plates ____collide____ at plate boundaries along the Pacific Coast, I bet the continental crust crumples and gets pushed higher and higher to form the mountains. I learned about the ____theory____ of plate tectonics when I was in school, too."

Sam's dad described an earthquake that the country of Chile had recently experienced. Sam said, "Hmmm . . . I wonder if earthquakes have anything to do with moving tectonic plates?"

What do you think?

34 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

NAME: ______________________________ **4.2** TAKE-HOME

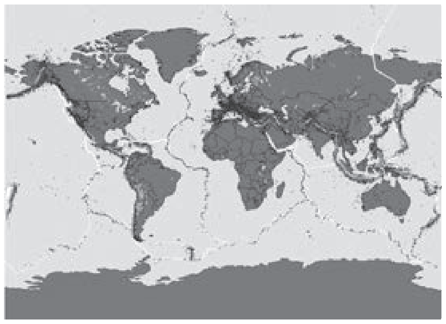
DATE: ______________________________

## Excerpt from "Earth's Shakes and Quakes"

*Read the first full paragraph of the following excerpt aloud to a family member and answer the questions that follow.*

objects tumble from shelves, and buildings may even collapse. In 1348 CE, people had no idea what caused earthquakes. Today we know that earthquakes are the result of powerful natural forces at work in Earth's crust and mantle.

As you read in Chapter 2, scientists developed the theory of plate tectonics in the 1960s. The theory explains how Earth's surface and interior change over very long periods of time. Some plates are pulling apart at their boundaries, other plates are colliding, and still others are sliding past each other. A lot happens at plate boundaries, including most earthquakes. In fact, one of the easiest ways to locate plate boundaries is to determine where earthquakes are occurring!



Locations of plate boundaries and past earthquake epicenters

23

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 37

Activity Book Answer Key

1. According to the excerpt, what does the theory of plate tectonics explain?

   The theory explains how Earth's surface and interior change over very long periods of time.

2. The last sentence of the excerpt states, "In fact, one of the easiest ways to locate plate boundaries is to determine where earthquakes are occurring!" How does the image on the page support this statement?

   The dots marking past earthquake epicenters all sit on or near plate boundaries.

38 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

NAME:
DATE:

4.3 TAKE-HOME

## Practice Commas

*For each item, insert a comma or commas in the appropriate location(s).*

1. My dad is from Austin, Texas and my mom is from Minneapolis, Minnesota.
2. She plays tennis, soccer, and basketball.
3. Opening night of his first play is scheduled for June 24, 2015.
4. Yellowstone National Park
   P.O. Box 168
   Yellowstone National Park, WY 82190

*Write a sentence for each of the following items. Be sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation. Each sentence should include at least one comma in its appropriate location.*

1. a date

   Answers may vary.

2. city and state or an address

   Answers may vary.

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 39

3. items in a series

   Answers may vary.

40 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

NAME:
DATE:

4.4 TAKE-HOME

## *–ly*: Suffix Meaning "in a ____ way"

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence.*

1. Even though earthquakes are only temporary (temporary, temporarily, accidental, accidentally), they can still cause significant and sometimes permanent damage.
2. The fire engine was so loud (loud, loudly, careful, carefully) that I had to cover my ears as it drove by my house.
3. Tsunamis are speedy (loud, loudly, speedy, speedily)—they travel as fast as 500 miles per hour.
4. He accidentally (easy, easily, accidental, accidentally) dropped a glass, spilling milk all over the floor.
5. Scientist Inge Lehmann was careful (careful, carefully, temporary, temporarily) to do lots of research and analysis before concluding that Earth's core has two parts—a liquid outer core and a solid inner core.
6. It was easy (temporary, temporarily, easy, easily) to see that he loved baseball because his face lit up every time he got to play.

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 41

# Activity Book Answer Key

Write a sentence using one of the –ly words.

Answers may vary.

Write a sentence using one of your own –ly words.

Answers may vary.

**Challenge**: *Write a sentence using one of the root words and its –ly word.*

Answers may vary.

42 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

NAME:
DATE:

5.1 ACTIVITY PAGE

## Earth's Shakes and Quakes

*Answer each question thoughtfully, citing the page number(s) where you found evidence for each question. Answer in complete sentences and restate the question in your answer whenever possible.*

1. Fill in the blank:

   Most earthquakes happen at plate boundaries.

   Page(s) 23

2. How much energy is released when blocks of rock that were stuck break and slip past each other?

   All the energy that accumulated in the rocks during the time they were stuck and couldn't move is released when the blocks of rock suddenly break and slip past each other.

   Page(s) 24

3. Circle the two answers that correctly complete the following statement.

   Surface waves cause ______________.

   A. the ground to shake, heave, sway, and lurch during an earthquake
   B. a fault to form in Earth's crust
   C. most tsunamis
   D. the most earthquake damage

   Page(s) 26

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 43

4. List one way in which the seismograph and the Richter scale are different. List one way in which they are similar.

   Different:

   A seismograph produces wiggly lines to show the energy of seismic waves while the Richter scale applies numbers to measure the magnitude of an earthquake based on the largest seismic wave recorded.

   Similar:

   Both a seismograph and the Richter scale are used by scientists to determine an earthquake's magnitude.

   Page(s) 27-28

5. Write two or three sentences that include one fact about a tsunami and at least two descriptive words from the text.

   Answers may vary.

   Page(s) 30

44 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

NAME:
DATE:

5.2 ACTIVITY PAGE

## Take Notes on Tsunamis

*Read through all the questions in the chart so you are clear about what information you should scan the Reader text for related to tsunamis. Take notes by paraphrasing the Reader text or writing information in your own words. Write key information in the shortest form possible.*

| Questions | Notes |
|---|---|
| What is a tsunami? | a gigantic wave of seawater |
| What causes a tsunami? | earthquakes that occur in the crust forming the ocean bottom |
| Why do tsunamis happen? | earthquakes can cause seafloor to shift, which causes seawater from the ocean bottom to its surface to suddenly start to move |
| How fast does a tsunami travel? | as fast as 500 miles per hour |
| Can we stop tsunamis from happening? | no |
| How can we prepare and protect ourselves? | know the tsunami warning signal where you live, quickly evacuate if tsunami approaches |

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 45

# Activity Book Answer Key

NAME:
DATE:

5.3 ACTIVITY PAGE

## Tsunami Pamphlet

*Draft your pamphlet by composing answers to the questions.*

**Question**: What was THAT?

**Answer**: A tsunami!

Tsunamis are caused by earthquakes in the oceanic crust.

**Question**: What is a tsunami?
**Answer**:
A tsunami is a giant wave of seawater.

**Question**: Why do tsunamis happen?
**Answer**:
Tsunamis happen because the seafloor shifts due to an earthquake occurring in the oceanic crust.

**Question**: How fast does a tsunami travel?
**Answer**:
A tsunami can travel as fast as 500 miles per hour.

**Question**: Can we stop tsunamis from happening?
**Answer**:
No, we cannot stop tsunamis.

**Question**: How can we prepare and protect ourselves?
**Answer**:
Scientists are able to give some warning for tsunamis. Know what the tsunami warning signal is for the area you live in. If a tsunami is approaching, you should evacuate as quickly as you can.



NAME:
DATE:

6.2 TAKE-HOME

## Commas and Quotation Marks

*Rewrite each sentence, inserting a comma or commas and quotation marks in the appropriate locations. Be sure to use correct capitalization and end punctuation.*

**Example**: The time he explained is 3:47 pm
"The time," he explained, "is 3:47 pm."

1. You don't have to look hard the teacher said to find rocks
   "You don't have to look hard," the teacher said, "to find rocks."
2. Students might ask what are rocks? before reading the text
   Students might ask, "What are rocks?" before reading the text.
3. Rocks are naturally occurring materials made of solid substances the author explains
   "Rocks are naturally occurring materials made of solid substances," the author explains.



4. The rock cycle according to the text has been going on for several billion years
   "The rock cycle," according to the text, "has been going on for several billion years."
5. Given enough time the text explains all rocks change
   "Given enough time," the text explains, "all rocks change."
6. There are three types of rocks the teacher explained igneous sedimentary and metamorphic
   "There are three types of rocks," the teacher explained, "igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic."



NAME:
DATE:

6.3 TAKE-HOME

## Root *rupt*

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence. You may need to add* –ed, –ing, *or* –s *to make the word correctly fit in the sentence.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| uninterrupted | erupt | disrupt |
| rupture | abrupt | eruption |

1. A volcanic eruption is usually sudden and violent.
2. When my friend lied to me, it caused a(n) rupture in our friendship.
3. My parents say it's bad for me to spend uninterrupted hours watching television, so they limit how much I can watch.
4. Old Faithful is a geyser in Yellowstone National Park that erupts several times a day.
5. Sometimes my dog disrupts my sleep when she barks in the middle of the night.
6. During an argument, my brother left the room in a(n) abrupt way instead of continuing the conversation.

Activity Book Answer Key

*Write a complete sentence for each of the following words. Be sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation.*

7. *disrupt*

   Answers may vary.

8. *abrupt*

   Answers may vary.

9. *eruption*

   Answers may vary.



NAME:

DATE:

6.5 TAKE-HOME

## Practice Spelling Words

*Sort the spelling words into categories based on the root in each word.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| uninterrupted | matriarch | hierarchy | abrupt |
| archrival | calligraphy | eruption | paragraph |
| autograph | rupture | anarchy | biographer |

| *arch* | *graph* | *rupt* |
|---|---|---|
| matriarch | calligraphy | uninterrupted |
| hierarchy | paragraph | abrupt |
| archrival | autograph | eruption |
| anarchy | biographer | rupture |
| | | |



*List the spelling words in alphabetical order. Remember to pronounce and spell the words syllable by syllable.*

1. abrupt
2. anarchy
3. archrival
4. autograph
5. biographer
6. calligraphy
7. eruption
8. hierarchy
9. matriarch
10. paragraph
11. rupture
12. uninterrupted



NAME:

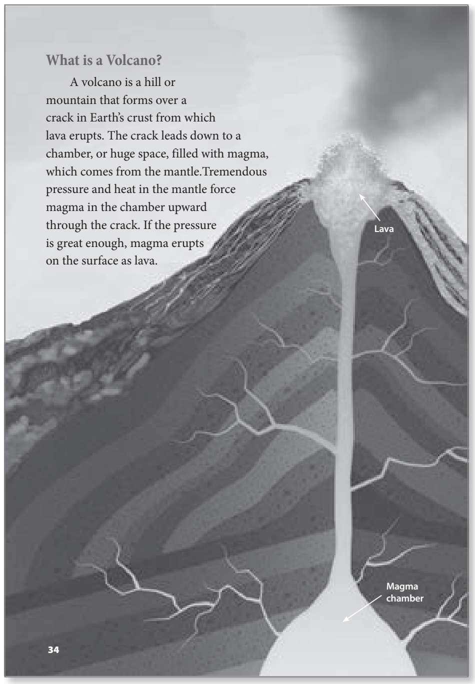
DATE:

7.3 TAKE-HOME

## Excerpts from *The Changing Earth*

*Read the following excerpts and use them to complete the activity that follows.*

### Earth's Fiery Volcanoes



Activity Book Answer Key

*Using information from the excerpts, make notes on how volcanic activity is explained in the excerpts. Shaded cells indicate that no information is needed there.*

| Volcanic Activity | "Earth's Fiery Volcanoes" | "Mythic Volcano Spirits: Hawaii's Goddess of Fire" | "Mythic Volcano Spirits: The Origin of Crater Lake" |
|---|---|---|---|
| creation of volcanoes on an island chain | underwater volcano creates island, plate movement moves island and a new island starts | Pele tried to get away from her sister | |
| eruptions | pressure in mantle causes magma to erupt as lava | Pele gets mad and sends out lava rivers | Monadalkni was angry Loha refused him |
| formation of a caldera | | Pele's sister dug into the volcano side, eventually collapsing the top | Sahale Tyee caused the top of mountain to collapse |

1. What similarities do you notice across excerpts?
   Answers may vary.

2. What differences do you notice across excerpts?
   Answers may vary.



NAME:
DATE:

8.2 ACTIVITY PAGE

## Earth's Building Blocks

*Answer each question thoughtfully, citing the page number(s) where you found evidence for each question. Answer in complete sentences and restate the question in your answer whenever possible.*

1. How might rocks differ from each other?
   Answers may vary, but should include one or more of the following: colors, textures, stripes vs. layers, hard vs. crumbly, grain size
   Page(s) 53

2. How does igneous rock form?
   Igneous rock forms when magma cools and solidifies.
   Page(s) 54



3. Which statement distinguishes between the two basic types of igneous rock?
   A. Two igneous rocks are granite and basalt.
   B. Different rocks have different size grains and different textures.
   C. One type forms on Earth's surface and the other forms below Earth's surface.
   D. The slower the rock cools and hardens, the larger its mineral grains will be.
   Page(s) 54

4. How does sedimentary rock form?
   Sedimentary rock forms when, over time, sediments collect in layers, are bound together by solid minerals, and are compacted and cemented together.
   Page(s) 56

5. How does metamorphic rock form?
   Metamorphic rock forms when igneous or sedimentary rocks (or even older metamorphic rocks) are exposed to extreme heat and pressure.
   Page(s) 58



NAME:
DATE:

8.2 CONTINUED ACTIVITY PAGE

6. What is the rock cycle?
   A. the continuous process of volcanoes erupting
   B. the continuous process of change in which rocks are created, destroyed, and recreated
   C. the continuous process of sedimentary rock changing to become igneous rock
   D. the continuous process of mineral grains making rocks smooth and shiny
   Page(s) 60

*Complete the following items after you have finished reading the chapter. Match the following words with the correct definitions and examples. You may use some words more than once. Try to think of the answer to each item first from memory and then check back in the text to verify your answer before filling in the blank.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| minerals | limestone | erosion |
| sedimentary rock | igneous rock | metamorphic rock |

7. **Word**: erosion
   **Definition**: any process or force that moves sediments to new locations
   Page(s) 60

8. **Word**: igneous rock
   **Definition**: rock that forms when magma cools and solidifies; the most abundant class of rocks
   Page(s) 54

9. **Word**: minerals
   **Definition**: the building blocks of rocks that consist of solid, nonliving substances
   Page(s) 53

## Activity Book Answer Key

10. **Word**: limestone
**Definition**: a type of sedimentary rock that often has many fossils and shells of tiny ocean creatures
Page(s) 56

11. **Word**: metamorphic rock
**Definition**: a type of rock that forms when either igneous or sedimentary rock is changed due to extreme heat and pressure
Page(s) 58

12. **Word**: sedimentary rock
**Definition**: a type of rock made of tiny bits of rock and sand mixed with small pieces of things that were once alive
Page(s) 56

13. **Word**: igneous rock
**Examples**: basalt, granite, and obsidian are examples of this class of rock
Page(s) 54

14. **Word**: metamorphic rock
**Examples**: serpentine, marble, and gneiss are examples of this class of rock
Page(s) 58

15. **Word**: sedimentary rock
**Examples**: sandstone, limestone, and mudstone are examples of this class of rock
Page(s) 56



NAME: ______
DATE: ______

**9.1** CONTINUED TAKE-HOME

*Write the correct word or phrase to complete each sentence. Each of the words/phrases will be used once.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| compacted | erosion | magma | igneous | metamorphic |
| obsidian | rock cycle | sedimentary | solidified | texture |

1. Lava flowed down the volcano's side and quickly hardened to form a glassy type of igneous rock.
2. Tiny flakes of obsidian fell on the ground as an ancient tool maker worked to create a sharp blade for cutting.
3. The tiny flakes of rock were washed into a nearby stream, where they joined other sediments created by the erosion of rock from the nearby mountains.
4. The sediments formed layers on the stream bed, which compacted over time as the weight of the layers squeezed out the air and water.
5. The sediments cemented together and solidified into rock.
6. Sedimentary rock was buried by even more layers of sediments over millions of years.
7. The heat and pressure from the weight of the overlying rock changed the texture of the minerals in the rock.
8. New metamorphic rock formed and lay buried in the earth for millions of years.



9. Heat from magma below the rock melted it, turning it into igneous rock.
10. As part of its journey through the rock cycle, this piece of rock might someday be found on a beach in Maine or a mountaintop in Tennessee!



NAME: ______
DATE: ______

**9.2** ACTIVITY PAGE

### Commas and Quotation Marks

*For each item, insert commas and quotation marks in the appropriate places.*

**Example**: He said my favorite board game is checkers.
He said, "My favorite board game is checkers."

1. Just then, my dad asked, "What would you like to eat for dinner?"
2. I replied, "I would like to have grilled chicken."
3. "I want spaghetti and meatballs," exclaimed my sister.
4. "How about," my mom asked, "we make sandwiches?"
5. "What if we . . ." Dad paused, and then said, "order pizza?"
6. My sister and I both cried, "Yes!" in response.

*Read the following passages from Chapter 5 "Mythic Volcano Spirits." Rewrite the sentences marked in bold so they include dialogue. Make sure at least one sentence is rewritten as a split quotation. Be sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation.*

**Example**: Loha refused.
Loha said, "No."

Activity Book Answer Key

1. *One day Monadalkni spotted the daughter of the Klamath chief, Loha. Monadalkni thought Loha was the most beautiful woman he had ever seen. Immediately he wanted her to be his wife. He came down from the mountaintop and proposed to Loha.* ***He promised her eternal life if she would agree to marry him.*** *Loha refused.*

   Answers may vary.

2. ***She ran to her father and asked for help.*** *The chief of the Klamath people called the tribal elders together. They all agreed that Loha should try to hide from Monadalkni, so she did.*

   Answers may vary.

3. *Monadalkni was very angry when he found out that Loha had refused him yet again. He raged inside his mountain, making it shake and rumble. He threw lightning bolts and spewed fireballs from his mouth. The top of the mountain exploded, which sent hot lava and choking clouds of ash raining down on the land. The Klamath people waded into streams and lakes trying to escape Monadalkni's fiery revenge.* ***They cried out to Sahale Tyee for help.***

   Answers may vary.

94 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

NAME:
DATE:

9.3 ACTIVITY PAGE

## Root *rupt*

*Write a complete sentence for each of the following words. Be sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation.*

1. *erupt*

   Answers may vary.

2. *uninterrupted*

   Answers may vary.

3. *rupture*

   Answers may vary.

*Choose the correct word to complete the sentence and write it on the line.*

4. The science lesson was ___interrupted___ (erupting, uninterrupted, interrupted, erupted) when the fire alarm went off and we all had to quickly walk outside.

5. They ___disrupted___ (erupted, uninterrupted, disrupted, ruptured) a serious discussion by making jokes and acting silly, causing everyone to lose focus.

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 95

6. An ___eruption___ (interruption, interrupt, erupt, eruption) of a geyser releases hot water and steam.

**Challenge**: Write a complete sentence using two words with the root *rupt*. Be sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation.

Answers may vary, but should include two words with the root *rupt*.

96 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

NAME:
DATE:

9.4 ACTIVITY PAGE

## Practice Spelling Words

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence. Words will not be used more than once; some words will not be used.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| abrupt | autograph | matriarch | paragraph |
| eruption | archrival | uninterrupted | hierarchy |
| calligraphy | biographer | rupture | anarchy |

1. He left in a(n) ___abrupt___ way without even saying goodbye.
2. My grandma has a(n) ___autograph___ book that includes the signatures of noteworthy actors, sports players, and political figures.
3. A volcanic ___eruption___ can add new land to Earth's surface but can also cause a large amount of destruction.
4. A man from North Carolina won a world record for jumping rope for a(n) ___uninterrupted___ period of time—33 hours straight.
5. The ___biographer___ conducted a series of interviews to collect the information he needed to write a book about the baseball player's life.
6. The tennis player finally defeated his ___archrival___ in a heated match.
7. She wrote a(n) ___paragraph___ focusing on how earthquakes occur.
8. The queen is the ___matriarch___ of her kingdom and government.

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 97

Activity Book Answer Key

NAME: _______________
DATE: _______________

11.1 TAKE-HOME

## Sequencing Multiple Adjectives

| Article | Adjective(s) | | | | | Noun |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | General → Specific | | | | | |
| | Opinion/ Observation | Physical Description (size, shape, age, color) | Material | Origin | Purpose | |

*Reorder the words in the sentence so they are ordered correctly. Be sure to use proper capitalization and punctuation.*

**Example**: wears she pretty a green dress
She wears a pretty, green dress

1. the underwater round data little vessel collects
   The little, round, underwater vessel collects data.
2. big red a round apple fell
   A big, round, red apple fell.
3. we farm old visited a small
   We visited a small, old farm.



4. old the erupted Hawaiian tall volcano
   The tall, old, Hawaiian volcano erupted.

*Write a sentence using at least two adjectives and an article. Be sure to order the words appropriately and to use proper capitalization and punctuation.*

Answers may vary, but should include at least two adjectives and an article.



NAME: _______________
DATE: _______________

11.2 TAKE-HOME

## Review Suffixes –*ly* and –*y* and Roots *graph* and *rupt*

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence. Words will not be used more than once.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| messy | taste | interrupt | mess |
| kindly | biography | tasty | busily |
| abruptly | busy | kind | photograph |

1. It was ___kind___ of the stranger to pick up the money I dropped and return it to me.
2. Scientists received warning of a tsunami wave far out in the ocean, so they were ___busily___ working to warn people before it reached land.
3. She didn't want to ___interrupt___ the discussion but it was time for her to leave, so she said they would talk again later.
4. Someone wanted to write a(n) ___biography___ about the geologist, but he declined because he was writing his own life story in an autobiography.
5. My dad and my sister do not like the ___taste___ of tomatoes but my mom and I love it.
6. They had to leave the soccer game ___abruptly___ and seek shelter when an announcement was made of an approaching storm.
7. She ___kindly___ agreed to take care of our dog while we went on vacation.
8. My favorite ___photograph___ from the slideshow was the one that showed the Grand Canyon.



9. The bookshelf at the library was so ___messy___ and disorganized that I couldn't find the book I wanted to check out.
10. Her dinner was very ___tasty___, so she ate it all and even asked for more.

*For each word remaining in the word bank, write a sentence using the word.*

1. Answers may vary, but should include the word *busy* or *mess.*
2. Answers may vary, but should include the word not used in the previous sentence: *busy* or *mess.*

Activity Book
Answer Key

NAME:
DATE:

**11.4** TAKE-HOME

## Practice Spelling Words

*Write each spelling word under its definition. Then identify the word's part of speech.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| epicenter | tsunami | seismograph | glacier | geyser |
| conclusion | molten | erosion | fault | tectonic |

1. an underground hot spring that periodically erupts, shooting hot water and steam into the air
   *Spelling Word:* geyser
   *Part of Speech:* noun
2. melted
   *Spelling Word:* molten
   *Part of Speech:* adjective
3. any process or force that moves sediments to new locations
   *Spelling Word:* erosion
   *Part of Speech:* noun
4. the point on Earth's surface directly above an earthquake's focus
   *Spelling Word:* epicenter
   *Part of Speech:* noun
5. relating to the process of plate movement on Earth's surface
   *Spelling Word:* tectonic
   *Part of Speech:* adjective



6. a crack in Earth's crust
   *Spelling Word:* fault
   *Part of Speech:* noun
7. an instrument used to track seismic waves traveling through the earth
   *Spelling Word:* seismograph
   *Part of Speech:* noun
8. an enormous, slow-moving mass of ice found in polar regions or near tops of tall mountains
   *Spelling Word:* glacier
   *Part of Speech:* noun
9. a decision or opinion formed based on information you have
   *Spelling Word:* conclusion
   *Part of Speech:* noun
10. a gigantic wave of seawater caused by an earthquake in oceanic crust
   *Spelling Word:* tsunami
   *Part of Speech:* noun



NAME:
DATE:

**12.2** ACTIVITY PAGE

## Earth's Mighty Mountains

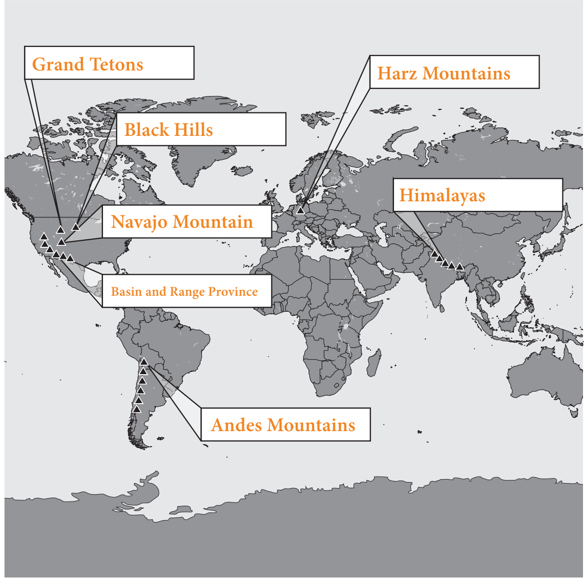
*Answer each question thoughtfully, citing the page number(s) where you found evidence for each question. Answer in complete sentences and restate the question in your answer whenever possible.*

| | Fold Mountains | Fault-Block Mountains | Dome Mountains |
|---|---|---|---|
| **How are they formed?** | tectonic places collide, pressure crumples the crust and then crust gets pushed upward, creating folds | gigantic blocks of rock move up and down along faults | magma pushes upward into Earth's crust, cools into igneous rock, causes a bulge |
| **Page(s)** | 75 | 78 | 80 |
| **What are common features or characteristics?** | sedimentary rock looks like folds | one steep side, with a high cliff, and one sloping side | look like humps of rock with rounded tops, usually isolated on flat plains |
| **Page(s)** | 76 | 78 | 80 |
| **What are some examples and where are they located?** | Himalayas between India and China in Asia, Andes Mountains in South America | Harz Mountains in Germany; the Grand Tetons in Wyoming; and the Basin and Range Province of Utah, Nevada, and Arizona | Navajo Mountain in Utah, the Black Hills in South Dakota |
| **Page(s)** | 75, 77 | 78 | 80, 81 |



*Use the following word bank to correctly label the map.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Himalayas | Harz Mountains | Black Hills | Andes Mountains |
| Grand Tetons | Navajo Mountain | Basin and Range Province | |



# Activity Book Answer Key

NAME:
DATE:

**13.2** CONTINUED TAKE-HOME

1. What clues tell you that you are close to a vent?
   A plume of black smoke appears.

2. How would you get close enough to observe the vent?
   A robot vehicle would get closer to the vent and take pictures to send back to scientists.

3. What would you discover on the seafloor near the vent?
   One might discover amazing and unusual sea creatures, like giant tube worms, white crabs, football-sized clams, and blind shrimp.

4. Why is it important to conduct your underwater mission?
   Hydrothermal vents are a great place to discover interesting species as well as to gain understanding of the makeup of the earth.



NAME:
DATE:

**14.1** ACTIVITY PAGE

## Earth's Undersea World

*As you and your partner read Chapter 9, "Earth's Undersea World," answer the following questions.*

1. Seafloor spreading explains which of the following?
   A. the presence of mid-ocean ridges on the seafloor
   B. Wegener's theory of continental drift
   C. the formation of hydrothermal vents
   D. All of the above
   E. A and B only
   Page(s) 84-86

2. Which phrase describes the Mid-Atlantic Ridge?
   A. a warm, dark area on the sea floor
   B. a long, rugged underwater mountain range
   C. a cluster of seamounts
   D. a cluster of hydrothermal vents
   Page(s) 83



*The following question has two parts. Answer Part A and then answer Part B.*

3. **Part A**: Fill in the following chart to indicate which seafloor feature the animals live around, hydrothermal vents or seamounts.

| Animals | Where they live |
|---|---|
| white crabs | hydrothermal vents |
| brittle stars | seamounts |
| schools of fish | seamounts |
| pale, blind shrimp | hydrothermal vents |
| sponges | seamounts |
| deep-sea corals | seamounts |
| giant tube worms | hydrothermal vents |
| anemones | seamounts |
| football-sized clams | hydrothermal vents |

Page(s) 86, 88

**Part B**: Why might these animals live near these particular seafloor features?
Answers may vary, but should include: animals may live near these features because of the tiny, single-celled organisms that grow there as a result of the nutrients brought up by seamounts



NAME:
DATE:

**14.1** CONTINUED ACTIVITY PAGE

4. Match each cause to its effect by writing the correct letter for the effect next to the correct cause.

| Causes | Effects |
|---|---|
| c Seamount emerges from the ocean's surface | a. continental drift |
| d One tectonic plate slides under another | b. seafloor spreading |
| b Tectonic plates move apart very slowly | c. islands are formed |
| a Seafloor spreading | d. a trench is formed |
| f Water seeps into the earth's crust and is heated by magma | e. mountains are formed |
| e Tectonic plates collide | f. hydrothermal vents are formed |

5. On page 84, the author uses a simile when describing the mountain chain formed by mid-ocean ridges, saying it is *like the stitching on a baseball.* Explain what this simile means.
   Answers may vary, but should include that stitching on a baseball goes all around the baseball with no starting point or stopping point, meaning it is continuous. By comparing the mountain chain formed by mid-ocean ridges to stitching on a baseball, the author is saying that the mountain chain goes all over the earth without a starting or stopping point, meaning it is continuous.

Activity Book Answer Key

NAME:
DATE:

14.2 ACTIVITY PAGE

## Sequencing Multiple Adjectives

*Complete each sentence by choosing two adjectives from the ones provided and writing them in the correct order in the blanks. Underline the article(s) in each sentence.*

**Example**: **Adjectives**: strong, young, gray, Italian
A strong, gray horse galloped in the field.

1. **Adjectives**: new, Japanese, fast
The fast, new, Japanese race car zipped around the track.

2. **Adjectives**: hardcover, good, old, science
She looked at a good, old, hardcover, science book about volcanoes.

3. **Adjectives**: canvas, blue, comfortable, walking
He loves the comfortable, blue, canvas, walking shoes he tried on.

1. Answers may vary but correct order is: fast, new, Japanese.
2. Answers may vary but correct order is: good, old, hardcover, science.
3. Answer may vary but correct order is: comfortable, blue, canvas, walking.

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 129

*Circle the phrase with the adjectives in the correct order.*

**Example**: a black, large, clever cat
clever, a large black cat
a clever, large, black cat

1. the tall, rocky mountain
the rocky, tall mountain
rocky, tall, the mountain

2. a sharp, wooden pencil
wooden, a sharp pencil
a wooden, sharp, pencil

3. old, an bicycle, orange
an old, orange bicycle
an orange, old bicycle

*Write a sentence using at least two adjectives. Be sure to order the adjectives correctly and to use proper capitalization and punctuation.*

Answers may vary.

130 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

NAME:
DATE:

15.2 CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

## *Questions*

1. What causes earthquakes in Japan every year?
   A. Namazu, the giant catfish
   B. weather patterns
   C. the Richter scale
   D. plate movements

*The following question has two parts. Answer Part A and then answer Part B.*

2. **Part A**: Using the numbers 1–3, rank the three major earthquakes Japan has experienced in the past hundred years or so in order of strength, numbering the strongest earthquake with the number 1.
   A. 1923, earthquake badly damaged the cities of Tokyo and Yokohama 2
   B. 2011, the Great Tohoku earthquake 1
   C. 1995, earthquake devastated the port city of Kobe 3

   **Part B**: Why was the earthquake you labeled as the strongest in Part A also the most destructive earthquake?
   It was one of the strongest earthquakes known to hit Japan in recorded history, causing violent shaking and much destruction and because it triggered an enormous tsunami that caused the worst damage, with towering waves crashing ashore and surging for inland.

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 139

3. In paragraph 5, what does the word *advanced* mean in the following sentence?

   It has one of the most advanced earthquake early warning systems in the world.

   A. traditional
   B. out-of-date
   C. highly developed
   D. simple

4. How does Japan's earthquake early warning system detect movements in the earth?
   A. When people feel the earth shake, they tell others around them.
   B. Seismographs across Japan send information about the slightest movements to a central location.
   C. Scientists wait to see if a tsunami forms off the coast as a result of an earthquake.
   D. Scientists look for earthquake epicenters on the ocean floor of the coast of Japan.

5. Why did Japan's earthquake early warning system only give 15 seconds of warning to people in the city of Sendai before the 2011 earthquake?
   Earthquakes almost always strike suddenly and happen very quickly. This makes it very difficult to warn people about an earthquake far in advance. Even though Sendai was close to the epicenter, the earthquake early warning system was only able to give people 15 seconds of warning that an earthquake was coming.

140 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

Activity Book Answer Key

NAME: ______________________
DATE: ______________________

15.2 CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

6. How is the volcano on the island of Niishima off Japan's coast acting as a creative force?
   A. The volcano is causing terrible destruction in Japan, just like earthquakes.
   B. The volcano continues to erupt, creating new rock that makes the island bigger.
   C. The volcano creates new minerals, gases, and seafloor sediments.
   D. The volcano has stopped erupting.

7. In paragraph 8, the author says that the world's youngest island is a volcanic work in progress. What does *volcanic work in progress* mean?
   A. The island is getting smaller due to volcanic activity.
   B. The island is a dangerous place to visit due to volcanic activity.
   C. The island is not done growing due to volcanic activity.
   D. The island is no longer close to Japan due to volcanic activity.

*Informational Text Comprehension Score: ______ / 7 points*

*To receive a point for a two-part question (i.e., 2) students must correctly answer both parts of the question.*



NAME: ______________________
DATE: ______________________

15.2 CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

### *Questions*

8. What does the word *tremble* mean in the following sentence from paragraph 2?

   > The myths tell of times when these animals moved or fought, making the earth tremble.

   A. remain still
   B. be afraid
   C. shake
   D. sink

*The following question has two parts. Answer Part A and then answer Part B.*

9. **Part A**: In paragraph 7, the author says the turtle was true to his word. What does this mean about the turtle?
   A. The turtle swam away and never returned.
   B. The turtle did what he said he would do.
   C. The turtle told the truth to the Great Spirit.
   D. The turtle didn't listen to the Great Spirit.

   **Part B**: How was the turtle true to his word?

   **He was true to his word by bringing several other turtles to the Great Spirit, which is what he said he would do.**



10. Why did the Great Spirit tell the turtles not to move?
    A. If the turtles moved, they would destroy the land the Great Spirit created.
    B. If the turtles moved, they would get angry.
    C. If the turtles moved, their legs would get stiff and their minds would get bored.
    D. If the turtles moved, they would help the Great Spirit create land.

*The following question has two parts. Answer Part A and then answer Part B.*

11. **Part A**: Why did the turtles get angry?
    A. Their legs got stiff and their minds got bored.
    B. The Great Spirit told them not to move.
    C. They wanted to swim.
    D. They couldn't agree on which direction to go.

    **Part B**: What happened when they got angry?

    **Some swam in one direction and the rest in another, causing the land on their backs to rumble and shake and make big cracks appear in the soil.**

12. What causes earthquakes according to this Gabrielino Indian myth?
    A. The Great Spirit creates land on turtle shells.
    B. The turtles start moving in different directions.
    C. The Great Spirit tells the turtles not to move.
    D. The turtles agree on which direction to swim in.



NAME: ______________________
DATE: ______________________

15.2 CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

13. In the Hoh myth, why does Thunderbird grab Whale out of the water?
    A. Whale provided food and oil for the Hoh people.
    B. Whale got along well with the other whales in the ocean, which helped the Hoh people.
    C. The Hoh people were suffering because Whale was destroying the other whales they depended on.
    D. Thunderbird wanted Whale to live on land instead of in the ocean to help the Hoh people.

14. What caused earthquakes according to this Hoh myth?
    A. Thunderbird grabbed Whale and yanked him out of the water.
    B. Thunderbird stayed high in her mountaintop nest while Whale stayed in the ocean.
    C. Whale grabbed Thunderbird and yanked her into the water.
    D. Whale and Thunderbird fought as Thunderbird tried to keep her claws gripped around Whale.

*Literary Text Comprehension Score: ______ /7 points*

*To receive a point for a two-part question (i.e., 9 and 11) students must correctly answer both parts of the question.*

*Reading Comprehension total______ /14 points*

NAME:
DATE:

**15.2** CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

## Grammar

*For each item, insert a comma or commas in the appropriate location(s). When applicable, insert quotation marks in the appropriate locations.*

1. The first expedition to the bottom of the Mariana Trench took place on January 23, 1960.
2. The text states, "Earth's tectonic plates have been slowly moving and interacting for billions of years."
3. Mount Rushmore National Memorial
   13000 S Dakota 244
   Keystone, SD 57751
4. "What if," wondered Wegener, "continents were like enormous pieces of ice?"
5. Geologists found fossils of an ancient fern in similar rock layers in Africa, India, Australia, and South America.

*Circle the phrase with the adjectives in the correct order.*

6. old, large, Hawaiian, a volcano
   a large, old, Hawaiian volcano
   a Hawaiian, old, large volcano
7. smooth, shiny the obsidian rock
   the smooth, shiny, obsidian rock
   the smooth rock, shiny obsidian



8. a powerful, giant tsunami
   powerful, giant a tsunami
   tsunami a giant, powerful

*Grammar Score: ______ /8 points*



NAME:
DATE:

**15.2** CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

## Morphology

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence.*

1. An earthquake can seem to happen ___abruptly___ (loudly, carefully, abruptly, accidentally), but it actually happens because pressure has been building up for some time.
2. A volcanic ___eruption___ (rupture, eruption, disruption, interruption) can be calm and quiet or sudden and violent.
3. Tsunamis can be very ___speedy___ (tasty, easy, temporary, speedy), moving up to 500 miles per hour.
4. It would be interesting to read a(n) ___biography___ (photograph, biography, rupture, eruption) about Alfred Wegener.
5. A mid-ocean ridge can form along a huge ___rupture___ (photograph, biography, rupture, eruption), or crack, in Earth's crust.
6. Scientists make conclusions after ___carefully___ (careful, carefully, busily, busy) examining evidence.

*Morphology Score: ______ /6 points*



NAME:
DATE:

**PP.1** ASSESSMENT

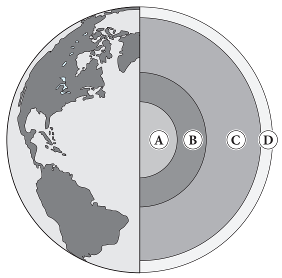
## Mid-Unit Content Assessment

1. The study of the makeup of the earth and the processes that change and shape it is called ______________.
   A. archaeology
   B. geology
   C. ecology
   D. geography
2. Which statement best explains the theory of plate tectonics?
   A. Earth's tectonic plates have been slowly moving and interacting for billions of years.
   B. Earth's tectonic plates are far apart and are fixed in place.
   C. Earth's tectonic plates are far apart but are slowly moving closer to one another.
   D. Earth's tectonic plates fit tightly together and are fixed in place.
3. Which of the following is the most accurate statement about myths?
   A. Myths are told to teach important life lessons.
   B. Myths help explain unpredictable natural events.
   C. Myths are told to make children laugh.
   D. Myths are historically accurate accounts of past events.

# Activity Book Answer Key

*This question has two parts. Answer Part A and then answer Part B.*

4. **Part A**: Place the following labels on the diagram in the appropriate locations: *inner core*, *outer core*, *mantle*, and *crust*.




A. inner core

B. outer core

C. mantle

D. crust

**Part B**: Write the name of each of Earth's layers next to its characteristics in the following chart.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| inner core | outer core | mantle | crust |

| Earth's Layer | Characteristics |
|---|---|
| mantle | Earth's largest and thickest layer; consists of very hot, very dense rock |
| inner core | solid; made of very hot metal; may be nearly as hot as the sun's surface; innermost layer |
| crust | thin; rocky; outermost layer; two types: oceanic and continental |
| outer core | liquid; made of very hot metal |



NAME: ______________________

DATE: ______________________

**PP.1** CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

5. Place a check mark next to each item in the chart that is a characteristic of tsunamis.

| Characteristics of Tsunamis | Yes or No? |
|---|---|
| Tsunamis form when earthquakes occur in oceanic crust, causing the seafloor to shift. | ✓ |
| Tsunamis travel fast—as much as 500 miles per hour. | ✓ |
| Tsunamis are easy to stop as long as scientists have enough warning when they begin to form. | |
| Tsunamis can grow to become as tall as a three- or four-story building. | ✓ |

6. Read the statement in the "What is the cause?" column. Choose the statement that best relates to the information in the "What is the cause?" column and write the letter of the statement in the "What evidence is there?" column.

| What is the cause? | What evidence is there? |
|---|---|
| Tremendous pressure and heat in the mantle force magma in a chamber below Earth's crust to move upward through a crack in Earth's surface. | C |

A. A fault-block mountain forms.

B. Glaciers deposit sediments on Earth's surface.

C. Magma erupts from a volcano's top onto Earth's surface as lava.

D. A tectonic plate subducts beneath another plate.

7. Volcano myths often explain volcanic activity by ________________.

A. describing how gods and goddesses cause volcano-related occurrences

B. providing scientific evidence showing how volcano-related events occur

C. telling how occurrences above Earth's surface cause volcanic activity

D. telling how occurrences below Earth's surface cause volcanic activity



8. Label each of the following volcano descriptions with the appropriate word: *active*, *dormant*, or *extinct*.

A. extinct a volcano that has not erupted for at least 10,000 years and is not likely to erupt again

B. active a volcano that has erupted in the past 10,000 years and is likely to erupt again

C. dormant a volcano that hasn't erupted for a long time but could erupt again

9. Which of the statements best explains the relationship between earthquakes and faults?

A. Earthquakes cause faults to form along plate boundaries.

B. Faults are cracks in Earth's crust that form when earthquakes occur.

C. *Faults* and *earthquakes* are two words to describe the same geological process.

D. Earthquakes begin with huge blocks of rock moving along faults.

10. Place a check mark next to each item in the chart that Alfred Wegener's continental drift hypothesis helped explain.

| Continental drift hypothesis explained that... | Yes or No? |
|---|---|
| long ago, Earth had one huge landmass called Pangaea | ✓ |
| as continents moved apart, their climates changed | ✓ |
| drifting continents actually moved due to tectonic plates | |
| groups of plants and animals that once lived together were separated as the continents moved apart | ✓ |



NAME: ______________________

DATE: ______________________

**PP.1** CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

11. Read the statement in the "What is the cause?" column. Choose the statement that best relates to the information in the "What is the cause?" column and write the letter of the statement in the "What evidence is there?" column.

| What is the cause? | What evidence is there? |
|---|---|
| Water drains down into openings in the ground above a magma chamber. Heat from the magma turns the water scalding hot. As the hot water rises back up through the openings below Earth's surface, it turns into steam, which increases the pressure, forcing the mixture of steam and hot water rushing and bubbling upward. | B |

A. A tsunami forms and grows as it moves toward land.

B. A geyser explodes above Earth's surface as a hissing fountain of hot water and steam.

C. An igneous rock breaks down into sediments, later forming sedimentary rock.

D. A crater forms at the top of a volcano.

12. Which of the following word pairs completes the statements?

> Seafloor spreading is the process of oceanic plates moving apart very slowly. When the seafloor dips down as one tectonic plate slides under another, a narrow, extremely deep valley called a(n) ________________ is created. When oceanic plates move away from one another and form cracks in Earth's crust, an underwater mountain called a(n) ________________ is created.

A. geyser; hotspot

B. hotspot; geyser

C. ocean trench; mid-ocean ridge

D. mid-ocean ridge; ocean trench

Activity Book Answer Key

13. Moving apart, colliding, and sliding sideways past one another are three ways in which ________________ move.
   A. continents
   B. tectonic plates
   C. faults
   D. mid-ocean ridges

14. Label the following statements with the appropriate term related to how scientists measure earthquake intensity: *seismograph* or *Richter scale*.
   A. Richter scale Numbers describe the intensity of earthquakes based on the largest seismic wave recorded.
   B. seismograph Jagged up-and-down lines show the energy of seismic waves.

15. Scientists observed that ________________, which provided evidence of changes over time on Earth's surface.
   A. land never moved or changed
   B. the same types of rocks and fossils were found in different places
   C. the climate of Antarctica was extremely cold
   D. animals that once lived on land later lived under water

16. Which of the following do geysers, volcanoes, and hot springs have in common?
   A. They form along faults.
   B. Scientists know when they will erupt.
   C. They form both along plate boundaries and above hotspots.
   D. They only form along plate boundaries.

______ */16 points*



NAME: ________________

DATE: ________________

PP.2 ASSESSMENT

## End-of-Unit Content Assessment

1. Geysers, volcanoes, and hot springs all share which of the following?
   A. They form along faults.
   B. Scientists can predict when they will erupt.
   C. They form both along plate boundaries and above hotspots.
   D. They form only along plate boundaries.

2. In which of the following sentences is *conclusion* used correctly?
   A. Inge Lehmann suspected that Earth might have more than three layers, so she came to the conclusion that it did.
   B. In his conclusion, the scientist proposed different possibilities of how earthquakes might occur.
   C. The researcher reached a conclusion after years of collecting evidence.
   D. Once you reach a conclusion, it is set in stone and no other evidence can be examined.

3. Label each of the following rock descriptions with the appropriate word: *igneous*, *metamorphic*, or *sedimentary*.
   sedimentary a rock that is made of sediments that have been naturally compacted and cemented together
   igneous a rock that forms when magma cools and solidifies
   metamorphic a rock that forms when minerals in other types of rocks are altered due to extreme heat and pressure

4. What is geology?
   A. the study of relationships between living things and their environment
   B. the study of the makeup of the earth and the processes that change and shape it
   C. the study of the characteristics of the earth's surface
   D. the study of past human life and activities by examining bones, tools, and other objects left behind



5. The theory of plate tectonics states that ________________.
   A. Earth's continents were once all joined together as one supercontinent
   B. Earth's continents stay still and do not move
   C. Earth's crust, mantle, and core all form tectonic plates that change very slowly
   D. Earth's crust and part of the mantle are broken up into sections that slowly move

6. Label each of the following descriptions with the appropriate term: *physical weathering*, *chemical weathering*, or *erosion*.
   erosion a process that moves sediments to new locations
   physical weathering a process that breaks big rocks into smaller rocks without changing the minerals they contain
   chemical weathering a process that breaks down rocks by changing the minerals they contain

*Match the item from the column on the left with the description on the right. Write the letter on the line.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 7. c tsunami | a. a deep-sea geyser that forms as seawater sinks down through cracks in the oceanic crust and then releases extremely hot, mineral-rich water back up through cracks in the crust |
| 8. a hydrothermal vent | b. an underwater volcano that forms wherever magma is erupting through oceanic crust |
| 9. b seamount | c. a gigantic wave of seawater caused by an earthquake in oceanic crust |

10. A mid-ocean ridge is ______________; an ocean trench is ________________.
   A. an underwater mountain; a narrow, extremely deep valley
   B. a deep-sea geyser; an underwater volcano
   C. a geyser; an underwater mountain
   D. a narrow, extremely deep valley; a deep-sea geyser



NAME: ________________

DATE: ________________

PP.2 CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

11. Seafloor spreading can cause a mid-ocean ridge and an ocean trench to form. Label each of the following causes with the appropriate effect: *mid-ocean ridge* or *ocean trench*.
   A. The seafloor dips down as one tectonic plate slides under another. ocean trench
   B. Magma erupts through huge cracks in Earth's crust as lava. mid-ocean ridge

12. Circle the answer that best supports the following statement.

   The rock cycle explains the changes that occur in rocks over very long periods of time.

   A. Rocks are created and then destroyed in a long process that occurs slowly over time.
   B. Rocks are created, destroyed, and recreated in a continuous cycle.
   C. Weathering and erosion change rocks in a long process that occurs slowly over time.
   D. Rocks are solidified from sediments in a continuous cycle.

13. Fill in the "Type of Volcano" column in the chart with the appropriate type being described: *active volcano*, *dormant volcano*, or *extinct volcano*.

| Type of Volcano | Description |
|---|---|
| extinct volcano | a type of volcano that has not erupted for at least 10,000 years and is not likely to erupt again |
| active volcano | a type of volcano that has erupted in the past 10,000 years and is likely to erupt again |
| dormant volcano | a type of volcano that is considered active but hasn't erupted for a very long time |

Activity Book Answer Key

14. What evidence suggested that the continents' locations were once very different than they are today?
    - A. the same types of rocks and fossils were discovered in different parts of the world
    - B. maps from long ago showed that the continents were once closer together
    - C. ancient records were found describing the climate of Antarctica as being warm
    - D. Alfred Wegener introduced the continental drift hypothesis

15. Moving apart, colliding, and sliding sideways past one another are the three different ways in which ________________ interact.
    - A. faults
    - B. mid-ocean ridges
    - C. continents
    - D. tectonic plates

16. The continental drift hypothesis explains that ________________.
    - A. all the continents exist on plates
    - B. all of the continents were once joined as Pangaea until they broke apart and slowly moved away from each other
    - C. hot water under the earth explodes on the surface
    - D. climates change and animals evolve over long periods of time



NAME: ______________________________

DATE: ______________________________

PP.2 CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

17. Which of the words in the following sentence provides the best clue as to the meaning of the word *fossil*?

> Geologists found fossils of an ancient fern in similar rock layers in Africa, India, Australia, and South America.

    - A. geologists found
    - B. similar rock layers
    - C. in Africa, India, Australia, and South America
    - D. ancient fern

18. Weathering is the process in which ________________; erosion is the process in which ________________.
    - A. rocks are mixed with liquid and completely broken down; rocks are packed together tightly
    - B. rocks are broken down into smaller pieces; sediments are moved from place to place
    - C. sediments are moved from place to place; rocks are broken down into smaller pieces
    - D. large amounts of rocks move down the side of a mountain; rocks are broken down and the minerals they contain change



*Match the item from the column on the left with the description on the right. Write the letter on the line.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 19. __d__ geyser | a. a hill or mountain that forms over a crack in Earth's crust from which lava erupts |
| 20. __e__ hotspot | b. a crack in Earth's crust |
| 21. __b__ fault | c. the violent shaking of the ground caused by huge blocks of rock moving along a fault |
| 22. __f__ rock | d. an underground hot spring that periodically erupts, shooting hot water and steam into the air |
| 23. __a__ volcano | e. a very hot region deep within Earth's mantle where a huge magma chamber forms |
| 24. __c__ earthquake | f. a naturally occurring nonliving solid made of minerals |



NAME: ______________________________

DATE: ______________________________

PP.2 CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

25. Read the description and examples in each row and write the correct letter in the "Type of Mountain" column.
    - A. fold mountains
    - B. fault-block mountains
    - C. dome mountains

| Type of Mountain | Description | Examples |
|---|---|---|
| A | mountains formed when rocks are pushed up into huge folds by moving tectonic plates; often contain quite a bit of sedimentary rock | Himalayas between India and China; Alps in Europe; Appalachians of North America; Urals in Russia |
| C | mountains generally formed when magma pushes upward into Earth's crust from the mantle and cools into igneous rock underground, causing the crust above it to bulge; usually occur as isolated mountains on otherwise flat plains | Utah's Navajo Mountain; Black Hills of South Dakota |
| B | mountains formed when gigantic blocks of rock move up and down along faults | Germany's Harz Mountains; Grand Tetons in Wyoming; Basin and Range Province of Utah, Nevada, and Arizona |

26. What natural occurrence does the following myth passage explain?

> The Chief of the Above World came to the aid of his people. He fought Monadalkni and the two spirits waged a violent, fiery battle. Sahale Tyee eventually gained the upper hand and forced Monadalkni back down into his mountain. Sahale Tyee caused the top of the mountain to collapse, forever shutting off this entrance to the Below World.

A. an earthquake
B. a volcanic crater being formed
C. a tsunami
D. a volcanic eruption

27. The ________________ produces lines to show the energy of seismic waves while the ________________ applies numbers to measure the magnitude of an earthquake based on the largest seismic wave recorded.

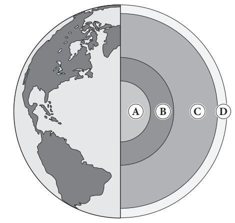
A. Modified Mercalli Intensity Scale; seismograph
B. seismograph; Richter scale
C. Modified Mercalli Intensity Scale; Richter scale
D. Richter scale; seismograph



NAME: ______________________________
DATE: ______________________________

**PP.2** CONTINUED ASSESSMENT

28. Place the following labels on the diagram in the appropriate locations: *inner core*, *outer core*, *mantle*, and *crust*.




| | |
|---|---|
| A. | inner core |
| B. | outer core |
| C. | mantle |
| D. | crust |

29. Select the most appropriate answer to the following question.

> What do myths help explain?

A. everyday occurrences
B. unpredictable natural events
C. cultural customs
D. why people tell stories

30. Which of the following provides evidence of weathering and erosion?

A. Volcanoes like Mount Fuji
B. Geysers like Old Faithful in Yellowstone
C. Island chains like the Hawaiian Island chain
D. Large canyons like the Grand Canyon

______ */30 points*



NAME: ______________________________
DATE: ______________________________

**PP.3** ACTIVITY PAGE

## Commas

*For each item, insert a comma or commas in the appropriate location(s).*

**Examples:** I flew to Santa Fe New Mexico on my first plane ride.
I flew to Santa Fe, New Mexico on my first plane ride.

He couldn't choose between vanilla chocolate or peach ice cream.
He couldn't choose between vanilla, chocolate, or peach ice cream.

The Olympic Games in Rio de Janeiro will begin on August 5 2016.
The Olympic Games in Rio de Janeiro will begin on August 5, 2016.

1. The three types of rocks are igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic.
2. Willis Tower
   233 S Wacker Drive
   Chicago, IL 60606
3. Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay reached the top of Mount Everest on May 29, 1953.
4. We visited New Orleans, Louisiana on our trip.
5. My favorite fruits are apples, peaches, and blackberries.
6. One of the worst earthquakes in American history took place in San Francisco on April 18, 1906.
7. On February 17, 1977, scientists located a hydrothermal vent along a mid-ocean ridge for the first time.
8. Mount Rushmore National Memorial is located in Keystone, South Dakota.



9. We learned about fold mountains, fault-block mountains, and dome mountains.

*Write sentences for each of the following items. Be sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation. Each sentence should include at least one comma in its appropriate location.*

1. a date
   Answers may vary.
2. a location
   Answers may vary.
3. items in a series
   Answers may vary.

# Activity Book Answer Key

NAME: ____________________ **PP.4** ACTIVITY PAGE
DATE: ____________________

### Commas and Quotation Marks

*For each item, insert commas and quotation marks in the appropriate locations.*

**Example**: She told me I'll be back by 5pm before she left.
She told me, "I'll be back by 5pm," before she left.

1. The text states, "The discovery of seafloor spreading at mid-ocean ridges was a turning point in geology."
2. "I wonder," he said, "if we'll get to play outside today."
3. "You're out!" shouted the umpire to the baseball player.
4. "What do you think," she asked, "about seeing a movie this weekend?"
5. "A volcano," according to the text, "is a hill or mountain that forms over a crack in Earth's crust from which lava erupts."
6. They asked, "Do you need anything from the grocery store?"
7. "Mountains," says the author, "are some of Earth's most magnificent features."
8. We both said, "Chocolate!" at the same time when asked what kind of ice cream we wanted.



*Read the following passage from Chapter 5, "Mythic Volcano Spirits." Rewrite the sentences marked in bold so they include dialogue. Be sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation.*

> ***Pele was pleased with her new home. She sent Hi'iaka to fetch her husband-to-be from Kauai. She told her little sister to be back in less than 40 days. She also warned Hi'iaka not to fall in love with Lohi'au herself. In turn, Hi'iaka made Pele promise to protect a grove of beautiful trees that grew on Kilauea.*** *Hi'iaka adored the trees. She was afraid that if Pele lost her temper, she would send out rivers of lava to burn them down.*

Answers may vary.



NAME: ____________________ **PP.5** ACTIVITY PAGE
DATE: ____________________

### Sequencing Adjectives

*Complete each sentence by choosing two adjectives from the ones provided and writing them in the correct order in the blanks.*

**Example**: **Adjectives**: wooden, big, play, fun
We stay in the **big**, **wooden** cabin during the summer.

1. **Adjectives**: office, brick, new, tall
We climbed up the stairs of the tall, new, brick, office building.
2. **Adjectives**: American, long, huge, crowded
We boarded a crowded, huge, long, American airplane.
3. **Adjectives**: enormous, Italian, attractive, ancient
It was an attractive, enormous, ancient, Italian city.

1. Answers may vary but correct order is: tall, new, brick, office.

2. Answers may vary but correct order is: crowded, huge, long, American.

3. Answer may vary but correct order is: attractive, enormous, ancient, Italian.



*Circle the phrase with the adjectives in the correct order.*

**Example**: a purple, new, umbrella
a new, purple umbrella
new, a purple umbrella

1. the fluffy, little, German dog
little, the German fluffy dog
the German, little, fluffy dog
2. a blue, long fishing boat
a long, blue, fishing boat
a fishing, long, blue boat
3. an oval, ordinary desk
ordinary, an oval desk
an ordinary, oval desk

*Write a sentence using at least two adjectives and an article. Be sure to order the words appropriately and to use proper capitalization and punctuation.*

Answers may vary.

Activity Book Answer Key

NAME:

DATE:

**PP.6** ACTIVITY PAGE

## *–ly*: Suffix Meaning "in a _____ way"

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence.*

1. She did not mean to forget her homework; it was purely accidental that she forget. (accidental, accidentally, careful, carefully)
2. Mountain building is not a speedy process; it takes many years for mountains to form. (speedy, speedily, loud, loudly)
3. My cat only weighs 7 pounds, so I can easily pick him up and carry him around with me. (temporary, temporarily, easy, easily)

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| easy | easily | careful | carefully |
| speedy | speedily | loud | loudly |

4. In looking at a world map, it's pretty easy to see how the eastern edge of South America fits into the western edge of Africa like pieces of a puzzle.
5. He loudly walked across the room thanks to his squeaky shoes.
6. Seismic waves move more slowly through liquids and more speedily through solids.

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 175

*Write a sentence using one of the words left in the box.*

Answers may vary, but should include one of the following words: *easily, careful, carefully, speedy,* or *loud.*

*Write a sentence using one of your own –ly words.*

Answers may vary but should include a work with *–ly*.

*Write a sentence using one of the root words and the same root word with –ly added to the end.*

Answers may vary but should include a root word and that word with *–ly* added to it.

176 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

NAME:

DATE:

**PP.7** ACTIVITY PAGE

## Root *rupt*

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| uninterrupted | erupt | disrupt |
| rupture | abrupt | eruption |

1. If a nearby volcano begins to erupt, people who live around the Bay of Naples are encouraged to evacuate.
2. It was clear my brother was studying for an assessment, so I tried not to disrupt his concentration.
3. A seamount does not become an island in a(n) abrupt way; it is a long, slow process.

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence.*

4. The classroom erupted in laughter as a student read a funny story. (erupted, disrupted)
5. Mid-ocean ridges form an almost uninterrupted chain of underwater mountains around the earth. (abrupt, uninterrupted)
6. My father had to go to the hospital because of a rupture in a blood vessel. (rupture, eruption)

Core Knowledge Language Arts | Grade 4 Activity Book | Unit 6 177

*Write a complete sentence for each of the following words. Make sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation.*

1. *erupt*
   Answers may vary.
2. *eruption*
   Answers may vary.
3. *abrupt*
   Answers may vary.
4. *disrupt*
   Answers may vary.
5. *uninterrupted*
   Answers may vary.
6. *rupture*
   Answers may vary.

178 Unit 6 | Activity Book Grade 4 | Core Knowledge Language Arts

Activity Book Answer Key

NAME: ______________________

DATE: ______________________

**PP.8** ACTIVITY PAGE

## Suffixes *–ly* and *–y* and Roots *graph* and *rupt*

*Write the correct word to complete each sentence. Words will not be used more than once. Some words will not be used.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| messy | taste | interrupt | mess |
| kindly | biography | tasty | busily |
| abruptly | busy | kind | photograph |

1. The meal my grandfather prepared for us was very ___tasty___.
2. I'm sorry to ___interrupt___ you while you are writing, but I have a question.
3. It's helpful to see a(n) ___photograph___ of each of the different types of mountains to compare them.
4. Our dog is a(n) ___messy___ eater and always gets his food all over the floor.
5. We had guests coming over for dinner, so we ___busily___ cleaned our rooms that afternoon before they arrived.
6. The group members had to ___abruptly___ stop working on the project when the building started shaking due to an earthquake.
7. Would you ___kindly___ hand me the biography of Edmund Hillary?
8. It was ___kind___ of them to send me a birthday card.



*Write a complete sentence for each of the following words. Be sure to use correct capitalization and punctuation.*

1. *interrupt*
   Answers may vary.
2. *messy*
   Answers may vary.
3. *busily*
   Answers may vary.
4. *abruptly*
   Answers may vary.
5. *biography*
   Answers may vary.



NAME: ______________________

DATE: ______________________

**E1.1** ACTIVITY PAGE

## The Rock Towns of Cappadocia

| Word(s) from the Chapter | Pronunciation | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Cappadocia | /kap*ə*doe*shə/ | 90 |
| Mount Erciyes | /mount/ /er*sie*əs/ | 92 |
| Rapa Nui | /ro*po/ /noo*ee/ | 98 |
| moai | /moe*wie/ | 98 |

*As you read the enrichment selection, "The Rock Towns of Cappadocia," answer the following questions using complete sentences.*

1. How are most hoodoos formed?
   Hoodoos are formed when wind and water slowly carve tuff into ridges, mounds, and sharp pinnacles.
2. Why wasn't it difficult for people to create caves and rock houses in Cappadocia's rock formations?
   Before it is exposed to air, tuff is very soft. Once people scraped away the hard outer surface, they had only to cut away the soft tuff underneath.
3. Why did early Christians settle in Cappadocia?
   Christians were religious refugees, and wanted to settle in a place that was isolated so they could practice their religion safely and in peace.



4. What features might you find in the rock dwellings in Cappadocia?
   Answers may vary, but should include: rooms for eating and sleeping, animal stables, food storage areas, staircases, towers with windows, ventilation systems, and monasteries.
5. Why do you think people wanted to live in these rock dwellings? What were some of the advantages of these unique houses?
   Answers may vary, but should explain that these dwellings provided protection from invaders and the environment. They were easy to make and lasted a long time.

*The following question has two parts. Answer Part A first and then answer Part B.*

6. **Part A**: What are the moai?
   Moai are huge statues that are partial human figures with large heads, high cheekbones, and heavy brows. The Rapa Nui people carved them on Easter Island out of tuff.

   **Part B**: How did the Rapa Nui move them once they were finished?
   No one is sure how the Rapa Nui people moved them because many weighed over 80 tons.

# Activity Book Answer Key

NAME:

DATE:

**E2.1** ACTIVITY PAGE

## Violent Vesuvius

| Word(s) from the Chapter | Pronunciation | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Pliny | /plin*ee/ | 102 |
| Misenum | /mis*en*um/ | 103 |

*As you read the enrichment selection, "Violent Vesuvius," answer the following questions using complete sentences.*

1. Why do scientists monitor Vesuvius so closely?

   Scientists monitor Vesuvius so closely because it has been one of Europe's most active volcanoes.

   Page(s) 100

2. What are some signs that might indicate Vesuvius is on the verge of erupting?

   The slightest movement or any unusual shaking, as well as changes in the hot gases from the crater can indicate Vesuvius is on the verge of erupting.

   Page(s) 100



3. Complete the following chart.

| Geological Term | Definition |
|---|---|
| eruption column | an enormous cloud of ash, bits of rock, and toxic gas that shoots skyward from an erupting volcano at hundreds of feet per second |
| Plinian eruption | an eruption during which the top of the eruption column spreads outward |
| pyroclastic flow | a sort of avalanche of intensely hot ash, rock fragments, and volcanic gas that rolls down the side of a volcano |

   Page(s) 107, 109

4. How do we know so much about the eruption of Vesuvius in 79 CE?

   We know about the 79 CE eruption of Vesuvius because a Roman named Pliny lived through the disaster and wrote about it in a letter.

   Page(s) 102



NAME:

DATE:

**E3.1** ACTIVITY PAGE

## A Deep-Sea Detective Story

| Word(s) from the Chapter | Pronunciation | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Galapagos | /gə*lop*ə*goes/ | 113 |

*As you read the enrichment selection, "A Deep-Sea Detective Story," answer the following questions using complete sentences.*

1. Name two discoveries that changed how people thought about geology.

   The discovery of seafloor spreading and the discovery of mid-ocean ridges changed how scientists thought about continents and their movement.

   Page(s) ~~110~~

2. What are some clues scientists look for when searching for hydrothermal vents?

   Heat deep in the ocean and brightly colored rocks are both clues that scientists look for, as they indicate a nearby hydrothermal vent.

   Page(s) ~~111~~

3. Why do unique animals live near hydrothermal vents but not on most other areas of the deep seafloor?

   The animals survive thanks to bacteria. Vents are home to unusual types of bacteria that use chemicals in hot vent water—instead of sunlight—to make food. Some vent animals eat the bacteria directly. Others eat the bacteria-eaters.

   Page(s) 117



4. Why do you think this chapter is titled "A Deep-Sea Detective Story?"

   Answers may vary, but should explain that a detective uses clues to solve a mystery, which is what scientists were doing: they used evidence to search for new undersea discoveries.

   Page(s) Answers may vary.

Core Knowledge®

# Core Knowledge Language Arts®

**Series Editor-In-Chief**
E.D. Hirsch, Jr.

**President**
Linda Bevilacqua

## Editorial Staff

Khara Turnbull, Editorial Director
Sarah Zelinke, Lesson Development Director
Rosie McCormick, Content Director
Deborah Samley, Managing Editor

Sara Hunt, Senior Editor
Erin Kist, Senior Editor

Angelica Blanchette, Associate Editor
Laura Drummond, Associate Editor
Liz Pettit, Associate Editor
Kate Stephenson, Associate Editor
Cate Whittington, Associate Editor

## Editorial-Design Coordination

Robin Blackshire, Director, Editorial-Design Coordination

Mick Anderson, Senior Copy Editor
Nathan Baker, Copy Editor
Maggie Buchanan, Copy Editor
Emma Earnst, Web Content Manager
Lucinda Ewing, Copy Editor
James Kendley, Revisions and Documentation Specialist

## Design and Graphics Staff

Scott Ritchie, Creative Director

Liza Greene, Art Coordinator
Liz Loewenstein, Print Production Artist
Bridget Moriarty, Content Designer
Lauren Pack, Content Designer
Amy Siever, Print Production Artist

## Consulting Project Management Services

ScribeConcepts.com

## Reader Author

Rebecca L. Johnson

## Expert Reviewer

Terri L. Woods

## Illustration and Photo Credits

age fotostock / age fotostock / SuperStock: Cover/Title Page, 148, 249/309/333, 268

Art Archive, The / Art Archive, The / SuperStock: 24

Arthur S. Aubry / Exactostock / SuperStock: 85/105

Avi Katz : 142, 143, 144, 145, 146-147, 149, 150, 151

Biosphoto / Biosphoto / SuperStock: 168/184, 201/221, 251

Blend Images / Blend Images / SuperStock: 167/183

Brian Jannsen / age fotostock / SuperStock: 204-205/224-225

Cartesia / Exactostock / SuperStock: 244

Clover / Clover / SuperStock: 26-27/303

CnApTaK / Shutterstock: 9/311

Core Knowledge Staff: 22/333, 25, 38-39/60-61, 40-41/62-63, 42-43/64-65, 46/66, 82/102, 83/103, 122-123, 170, 172/186, 174-175/188-189/333, 244, 248, 263/333, 265, 335/352/355

Cusp / Cusp / SuperStock: 267

EastVillage Images /ShutterStock: 305

Ed Darack / Ed Darack / SuperStock: 120

Everett Collection / Everett Collection / SuperStock: 74/84/92/104/333, 84/104

First page from the Journal of HMS Challenger, a personal diary by Pelham Aldrich, 1872 (pen & ink and w/c on paper), Aldrich, Admiral Pelham (1844-1930) / Royal Geographical Society, London, UK / Bridgeman Images: 24

Fotosearch / Fotosearch / SuperStock: 166/182

Frank Krahmer / Exactostock / SuperStock: 168/184

FRANS LANTING, MINT IMAGES / SCIENCE PHOTO LIBRARY: 206/226

Gary Crabbe / age fotostock / SuperStock: 124-125

GERARD LODRIGUSS/SCIENCE PHOTO LIBRARY: 169/185

Gilbert, G.K. / U.S. Geological Survey: 81/101

Gordon Wiltsie / Exactostock / SuperStock: 124

Hillary and Tenzing on the slopes of Mount Everest, Tacconi, Ferdinando (1922-2006) / Private Collection / Look and Learn / Bridgeman Images: 243

Iberfoto / Iberfoto / SuperStock: 18

imagebroker.net / imagebroker.net / SuperStock: 168/184, 208-209/228-229/315/333

Iñaki Caperochipi / age fotostock / SuperStock: 80/100

Ivan Vdovin / age fotostock / SuperStock: 246/317

J.W. Alker / imagebroker / imagebroker.net / SuperStock: 262-263

Jim Sugar / Jim Sugar / SuperStock: 123/137/154/313

Joel Boyer: 118-119/340, 124

Jon Arnold Images / Jon Arnold Images / SuperStock: 245

Jonathan Irish / National Geographic / SuperStock: 247/333

JTB Photo / JTB Photo / SuperStock: 202-203/222-223

Julien Capmeil / Exactostock: 64-65

khd / ShutterStock: 307

Logan S. Kline: 21, 47/67, 147

Lucas Vallecillos / age fotostock / SuperStock: 121

Micha Rosenwirth / Shutterstock: 9/311

Minden Pictures / Minden Pictures / SuperStock: 201/221, 268

Movementway / imagebroker.net / imagebroker.net / SuperStock: 168/184

Naturbild / Naturbild / Superstock: 201/221

NOAA/SCIENCE PHOTO LIBRARY: 269

NOAA; Image courtesy of Monika Bright - University of Vienna, Austria: 266

On the top of Everest, English School, (20th century) / Private Collection / Look and Learn / Bridgeman Images: 242

Ortahisar Rock Castle, Cappadocia, Turkey (photo) / Samuel Magal, Sites & Photos Ltd. / Bridgeman Images: 319

Pacific Stock - Design Pics / Pacific Stock - Design Pics / SuperStock: 86-87/106-107/111/338

Pantheon / Pantheon / SuperStock: 23

Peebles / Mauritius / SuperStock: 116-117/333

Peter Eastland / age fotostock / SuperStock: 166/182

Photo by Braden Coolidge / Superstock: 173/187

Radius / Radius / SuperStock: 171

RICHARD BIZLEY/SCIENCE PHOTO LIBRARY: 266

RUSSELL D. CURTIS/SCIENCE PHOTO LIBRARY: 83/103

Science and Society / Science and Society / SuperStock: 84/104

Siede Preis / Exactostock / SuperStock: 246

STEPHEN J. KRASEMANN/SCIENCE PHOTO LIBRARY: 169/185

Stock Connection / Stock Connection / SuperStock: 200/220

Stock Montage / Stock Montage / SuperStock: 78/98

SuperStock / SuperStock: 121

Tom Till / Tom Till / SuperStock: 250/333

Universal Images Group / Universal Images Group / SuperStock: 20, 122

Visual & Written / Visual & Written / SuperStock: 122

Westend61 / Westend61 / SuperStock: 121

Yoshio Tomii / Yoshio Tomii / SuperStock: 251

Amplify.

# Unit 6
# Geology
## Teacher Guide

GRADE 4

Core Knowledge®

ISBN: 978-1-942010-01-2